



# 第一部分 语音



## 第一章 语音

### 考试要点

1. 掌握英语音素。
2. 掌握英语字母的基本读音。
3. 掌握开音节和闭音节的读音规则。
4. 掌握常见字母组合的拼读规则。
5. 掌握名词复数、动词过去式等的读音。
6. 注意一些词的特殊读音。
7. 了解英语的基本语调以及使用语调的规则。
8. 能在简单日常生活中比较自然地使用语音和音调。

### 复习内容



#### 一、英语音素

音素是音的最小单位，例如 [bi:] 就是由 [b] 和 [i:] 两个音素构成的。音素有区别意义的作用，例如 bed [bed] “床”，bad [bæd] “坏”这两个词中各有一个不同的音素 [e] 和 [æ]，它们的意义也就不同。

音素有元音和辅音之分：发音时声带振动，气流通过口腔不受阻碍的叫元音；气流通过口腔或鼻腔受到阻碍的叫辅音。辅音又分两类：发音时声带振动的叫浊辅音，声带不振动的叫清辅音。

#### （一）元音音素

元音音素由单元音和双元音两部分组成。单元音在发音时唇形和舌位不变。双元音由两个元音组成，发音时由一个元音向另一个元音滑动，唇形及舌位要做相应的变化。英语共有 20 个元音，其中单元音 12 个，双元音 8 个。

单元音有：

前元音：[i:] [ɪ] [e] [æ]

中元音：[ɜ:] [ə] [ʌ]



后元音: [ɑ:] [ɒ] [ɔ:] [ʊ] [u:]

双元音: [eɪ] [aɪ] [ɔɪ] [əʊ] [aʊ] [ɪə] [εə] [ʊə]

发音要领: 前重后轻, 前长后短。

## (二) 辅音音素

辅音共有 28 个, 其中清辅音 11 个, 浊辅音 17 个。清浊辅音成对的有 10 对:

清 [p] [t] [k] [f] [θ] [s] [ʃ] [tʃ] [tr] [ts]  
 浊 [b] [d] [g] [v] [ð] [z] [ʒ] [dʒ] [dr] [dz]

清浊辅音成对的意思是, 发音时每一对音素的唇形和舌位相同, 只是清辅音声带不振动, 浊辅音声带振动。

清辅音还有 [h], 浊辅音还有 [m]、[n]、[ŋ]、[l]、[r]、[w]、[j], 其中 [w]、[j] 既具有元音的性质, 又具有辅音的性质, 所以又叫半元音。

## 二、掌握英语字母的基本读音

字母是语言的书写形式。英语中共有 26 个字母: a、b、c、d、e、f、g、h、i、j、k、l、m、n、o、p、q、r、s、t、u、v、w、x、y 和 z。其中元音字母有 5 个: a、e、i、o、u。字母 y 有时作元音字母。辅音字母有 21 个。字母比音素少, 这说明有时一个字母有好几种读音。

### (一) 元音字母的基本读音

1. 元音字母 a、e、i、o、u 的基本读音是: a 读作 [eɪ]、[ɑ:]、[æ]; e 读作 [i:]、[e]; i 读作 [aɪ]、[ɪ]; o 读作 [əʊ]、[ɒ]; u 读作 [ju:]、[u:]、[ʌ]。y 作元音字母时读作 [aɪ]、[ɪ]。
2. 在开音节中元音字母分别读作 a [eɪ], e [i:], i [aɪ], o [əʊ], u [ju:]。
3. 在闭音节中它们分别读作 a [æ], e [e], i [ɪ], o [ɒ], u [ʌ]。

### (二) 辅音字母的基本读音

辅音字母的基本读音是: b [b]; c [k] [s]; d [d]; f [f]; g [g] [dʒ]; h [h]; j [dʒ]; k [k]; l [l]; m [m]; n [n]; p [p]; q [kw]; r [r]; s [s] [z]; t [t]; v [v]; w [w]; x [ks]; y [aɪ] [j] [ɪ] 和 z [z]。

## 三、开音节和闭音节的读音规则

在英语中元音特别响亮, 一个元音可以构成一个音节。例如 I [aɪ], 一个元音和一个或几个辅音结合也可以构成一个音节, 例如 lamp [læmp]。含有一个音节的单词叫作单音节, 两个音节叫作双音节, 三个音节或三个音节以上叫作多音节。

在英语中, 每一个词都有一个读得特别响亮的音节, 叫作重读音节, 其他读得不特别响亮的音节叫作非重读音节。一般说来, 除了一些复合词外, 每一个词只有一个重读音节。

### (一) 开音节

有两种开音节, 一种叫作绝对开音节, 就是在元音字母后面没有辅音字母, 例如 no[nəʊ], me[mɪ:]。另外一种叫作相对开音节, 就是在元音字母后面有辅音字母以外, 还有一个无声的字母 e。在重读开音节中, 元音字母 a、e、i、o、u 都读它们字母表音名。即 a[eɪ], e[i:], i[aɪ], o[əʊ], u[ju:] [u:]。

### (二) 闭音节

元音字母后面有辅音字母 (r 除外) 时, 这个元音字母构成的音节叫作闭音节。在重读闭



音节中, 元音字母 a 读 [æ], e 读 [e], i、y 读 [ɪ], o 读 [ɔ], u 读 [ʌ] [ʊ]。

#### 四、常见字母组合的拼读规则

熟记常见的字母组合, 并掌握其读音, 这不仅有助于正确读音, 而且能迅速正确地拼写单词。下面所列表格中的字母组合是初高中课本所学过的, 务必加以熟记。

| 字母组合 | 读音            | 字母组合 | 读音        | 字母组合 | 读音           |
|------|---------------|------|-----------|------|--------------|
| ir   | [ɜ:]          | ou   | [aʊ] [ɔ:] | qu   | [kw]         |
| er   | [ɜ:]          | ow   | [aʊ] [əʊ] | oo   | [ʊ] [u:] [ʌ] |
| ai   | [eɪ]          | our  | [aʊə]     | sh   | [ʃ]          |
| oi   | [ɔɪ]          | tr   | [tr]      | tion | [ʃn] [tʃn]   |
| ay   | [eɪ]          | ts   | [ts]      | th   | [θ] [ð]      |
| oy   | [ɔɪ]          | tw   | [tw]      | wh   | [w] [h]      |
| ar   | [ɑ:]          | dr   | [dr]      | wr   | [r]          |
| ass  | [ɑ:s]         | ds   | [dz]      | ew   | [ju:]        |
| oa   | [əʊ]          | dge  | [dʒ]      | kn   | [n]          |
| old  | [əʊld]        | ng   | [ŋ]       | tch  | [tʃ]         |
| ee   | [i:]          | nk   | [ŋk]      | ch   | [tʃ] [k]     |
| ie   | [i:]          | ph   | [f]       | ture | [tʃə]        |
| ea   | [i:] [eɪ] [e] | gh   | [f]       | ur   | [ɜ:]         |
| ure  | [ʊə]          | ck   | [k]       | ear  | [ɪə] [ɜ:]    |
| oor  | [ɔ:] [ʊə]     | ore  | [ɔ:]      | air  | [ɛə]         |
| are  | [ɛə]          | ind  | [aɪnd]    | or   | [ɔ:]         |
| ere  | [ɛə] [ɪə]     | ire  | [aɪə]     | au   | [ɔ:]         |
| igh  | [aɪ]          | al   | [ɔ:]      | ough | [ɔ:]         |

#### 五、名词复数、动词过去式等的读音

名词变成复数词尾加-s, -es, 规则动词的过去式, 过去分词词尾加-ed 的读音, 有一定的规则可循。掌握这些规则, 无论是记单词还是读单词, 都可以起到事半功倍的效果。

##### (一) 名词变成复数词尾加-s, -es 时的读音

###### 1. 加-s:

- (1) 在清辅音后读 [s]: books [bʊks], maps [mæps], rocks [rɒks]。
- (2) 在浊辅音及元音后读 [z]: terms [tɜ:mz], balls [bɔ:lz], seas [si:z]。
- (3) 在 t 后与 t 一起读 [ts]: students ['stju:dənts], wallets ['wɒlɪts]。
- (4) 在 d 后与 d 一起读 [dz]: beds [bedz], cards [kɑ:dz], landlords ['lændlə:dz]。
- (5) 在 ce, se, ge 结尾的名词后读 [ɪz]: places ['pleɪsɪz], horses ['hɔ:sɪz], oranges



['brɪndʒɪz]。

(6) 在 o 结尾的名词后读 [z]: photos [fəʊtəʊz], radios ['reɪdɪəʊz]。

2. 加-es:

(1) 在 s, x, ch, sh 结尾的名词后读 [ɪz]: boxes ['bɒksɪz], watches ['wɒtʃɪz]。

(2) 在 o 结尾的名词后读 [z]: tomatoes [tə'mɑ:təʊz], potatoes [pə'teɪtəʊz]。

(3) 以辅音字母加 y 结尾的名词, 把 y 变 i 后加-es 读 [z]: countries ['kʌntrɪz], stories ['stɔ:ri:z]。

(4) 以 f 或 fe 结尾的名词, 把 f 或 fe 变-v 加 es 读 [vz]: knives [naɪvz], selves [selvz]。

## (二) 规则动词的过去式, 过去分词词尾加-ed 的读音

1. 在浊辅音后面读 [d]: used [ju:zd], called [kɔ:ld], learned [lɜ:nd]。

2. 在元音后面读 [d]: played [pleɪd], answered ['ɑ:nsəd], tried [traɪd]。

3. 在清辅音后面读 [t]: helped [helpt], stopped [stɒpt], talked [tɔ:kt]。

4. 在 t, d 后面读 [ɪd]: wanted ['wɒntɪd], needed ['ni:ɪd], planted ['plɑ:ntɪd]。

## (三) 其他

1. 动词一般现在时词尾加-s, -es 的读音与名词复数读法相同。

例如: walks [wɒks], runs [rʌnz], wants [wɒnts], uses [ju:zɪz]。

2. 动名词, 现在分词中的 ing 读 [ɪŋ]。

## 六、注意一些词的特殊读音

我们所接触到的词汇中, 常有在读音上比较特殊的记号, 数量虽不多, 但常是考察的热点。要求学生平时学习时要注意识别, 归纳牢记。

### (一) 字母组合-tion 常读作 [ʃn]

nation ['neiʃn], operation [ɒpə'reɪʃn], pollution [pə'lu:ʃn] 等。但-tion 也可读作 [tʃn]。读 [tʃn] 的单词一般有两个: suggestion 和 question。

### (二) 字母组合-sion 常读作 [ʃn]

impression [ɪm'preʃn], version ['vɜ:ʃn], aggression [ə'greʃn]。但当-sion 的前面是元音字母时, 读 [ʒn]。例如: vision ['vɪʒn], decision [dɪ'sɪʒn], occasion [ə'keɪʒn]。

### (三) 按照名词单数变复数加-s 的读音规则

house [haʊs] 变复数后 houses 读 [haʊsɪz], 但这读音是错误的, 正确读法为 [haʊzɪz]。即原词中的清辅音 [s] 变成相对应的浊辅音 [z], 这是同化现象, 像这样变化的单词一般有 5 个: house [haʊs] —houses [haʊzɪz], mouth [maʊθ] —mouths [maʊðz], youth [ju:θ] —youths [ju:ðz], path [pɑ:θ] —paths [pɑ:ðz] 和 bath [bɑ:θ] —baths [bɑ:ðz]。这 5 个单词可用一句话串联起来, 特别有利于记忆。

A youth living in a house opened his mouth, "I'll have a bath and walk along the path."

一个住在房子里的年轻人张开他的嘴(说): "我要去冲个澡, 然后沿着小路去散步。"(直译)



(四) 下列单词的发音没有按照读音规则发音，它们是特殊的、重要的，必须加以熟记

come [kʌm], prove [pru:v], to [tu:], do [du:], shoe [ʃu:], who [hu:], move [mu:v], improve [im'pru:v], have [hæv], give [gɪv], live [lɪv].

在英语的说话和朗读中，不但要注意句子的重读，音的长度，音的变化，而且更重要的是要注意一个句子（或一个短语）的语调。英语的语调就是说话时声调的上升或下降，声音的高亢或低沉。语调和句子重读一样，影响到说话人所要表达的意图。语调虽不在书面考察之内，但在日常会话中作用很大。所以了解英语的基本语调以及使用语调的规则是非常必要的。英语语调大体可分为升调和降调两种。

### (I) 升调

下面的各种类型的句子用升调：

1. 一般疑问句：

Did you have a good time last ↑ night?

2. 反意疑问句：

You are not a student, are ↑ you?

但当反意疑问句部分的意思是肯定的，就要用降调。对比下面两个句子：

You are Tom, aren't ↑ you?

So you are Tom, aren't ↓ you?

3. 祈使句：常常在语气很婉转、很客气的问句中用升调。

例如：Take a ↑ seat. 请坐吧。

Don't go back just ↑ yet. 现在不要回去吧。

(上面两句子都不是命令，命令用降调)

4. 陈述句：有一些陈述句包含不肯定、疑惑、安慰、抱歉、无能为力、轻蔑、不耐烦，以及其他一些在说话中还没有直截了当地表达出来的情绪时用升调。

例如：I thought everything would be all ↑ right.

I can't wait that ↑ long.

### (II) 降调

下面几种类型的句子用降调：

1. 陈述句：

例如：Thank ↓ you.

I'm sorry I must be off ↓ now.

2. 特殊疑问句：这种疑问句是以疑问词 what, who, when, where, why, how, which 等开头的，在通常情况下用降调。

例如：What ↓ time is ↓ it?

Why didn't you tell me the ↓ truth?

3. 祈使句：表示命令的或一般请求的祈使句用降调。

例如：Come ↓ in! 进来!

Close the ↓ door. 关上门。



## 4. 感叹句:

例如: What a hot ↓ day!

How fast he ↓ runs!

## (Ⅲ) 升调、降调混合情况

## 1. 选择疑问句: 前升后降。

例如: Are you a ↑ student or a ↓ teacher?

Do you ↑ prefer ↑ tea or ↓ coffee?

## 2. 计数或者点东西时, 用 ↑ ↑ ... ↓

例如: ↑ one, ↑ two, ↑ three, ↓ and four.

## 3. 有多个并列谓语动作, 用 ↓ ↓ ... ↓

例如: She laid the table, ↓ put the kettle on and ↓ then cut the bread for tea ↓.

## 4. 有多个并列宾语、表语, 用 ↑ ↑ ... ↓

例如: We have ↑ Chinese, ↑ maths, ↑ physics and ↓ chemistry.

## 5. and, but 引起的并列句, 用 ↓ ↓

例如: We need and love peace, ↓ but will not beg for it. ↓

We will do our best, ↓ and I think we will succeed. ↓

但 and 引起的并列句表示递进关系时, 用 ↑ ... ↓。

例如: You can share me ↑ and I can share you. ↓

## 6. 当从句(时间、原因、地点、条件)在前, 而主句在后时, 从句用 ↑, 主句用 ↓。

例如: Wherever you ↑ go, he will follow you. ↓

If there is anything you are not clear about ↑, just ask me. ↓

## 7. 当从句在后, 主句在前时, 主句用 ↑, 从句用 ↓。或者用 ↓ ↓。多用 ↓ ↓, 主要看语气如何。

例如: We mustn't pretend to know ↑ when we do not know ↓.

Very often he punished the girl ↓, because she was very lazy. ↓

## 8. 在含有让步状语, 非限制性定语从句的主从复合句和以 than 引起的比较句, 都用 ↓ ↓。

例如: I am not tired ↓ though I've worked all day long ↓.

I wouldn't lose courage ↓ even if I should fail ten times ↓.

He said something more ↓, which I didn't catch ↓.

### 例题解析

例 1. A. paths                      B. months                      C. mouths                      D. houses

解析: 按照名词单数变复数加-s, 或-es 的发音规则。A、B、C 三项中的 s 都发清辅音 [s]。D 项发 [ɪz], 学生可能一下子就填 D 了, 这就大错特错了。A 和 C 项及 D 项中第一个 s 的发音都发生了同化现象, s 发 [z], 即 paths [pɑːðz], mouths [maʊðz], houses [haʊzɪz], 而 B 项没有发生变化, 故本题答案为 B。

例 2. A. day                      B. say                      C. says                      D. way

解析: 本题考查元音字母 a 的发音情况。元音字母 a 在开音节中发字母表音 [eɪ], day [deɪ], say [seɪ], way [weɪ]。say 加 s 以后, a 发音发生变化, 发 [e] 即 says [sez]。say 的过去分词及过去式 said 中的 ai 也发 [e] 这一点应引起重视。本题答案是 C。



例 3. A. gain                      B. again                      C. against                      D. rain

解析: 本题考查字母组合 ai 的发音。ai 在重读音节中发 [eɪ]。gain [geɪn], against [ə'geɪnst], rain [reɪn], 但 again 中的 ai 发 [e] 即 [ə'gen], 所以本题答案是 B。

例 4. A. large                      B. star                      C. park                      D. warm

解析: 本题考查字母组合 ar 或 -r 音节的发音情况。元音字母与辅音字母 -r 结合, 构成 ar, er, ir, or, ur 音节。在重读音节中, ar 发 [ɑ:], or 发 [ɔ:], ir, er, ur 都发 [ɜ:]。选项 A、B、C、中的 ar 都发 [ɑ:], 而选项 D 中的 ar 发 [ɔ:], ar 发 [ɔ:] 的单词还有 warp, war, 本题答案为 D。

例 5. A. autumn                      B. lamb                      C. honour                      D. window

解析: 考查发音不发音情况。字母组合 mn 读 [m] 时, n 不发音如 autumn, solemn。字母 b 在词尾, b 前有 m 时, b 不发音。如 comb, lamb, tomb, climb。字母 h 有时不发音, 如 hour, honour, exhibit。故本题答案为 D。

### 自我测试

- |                       |                   |                   |                   |
|-----------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. A. <u>past</u>     | B. <u>grass</u>   | C. <u>father</u>  | D. <u>fat</u>     |
| 2. A. <u>honest</u>   | B. <u>present</u> | C. <u>absent</u>  | D. <u>kitchen</u> |
| 3. A. <u>walk</u>     | B. <u>talk</u>    | C. <u>fall</u>    | D. <u>calm</u>    |
| 4. A. <u>coat</u>     | B. <u>boat</u>    | C. <u>roar</u>    | D. <u>road</u>    |
| 5. A. <u>breathe</u>  | B. <u>bleak</u>   | C. <u>break</u>   | D. <u>plea</u>    |
| 6. A. <u>art</u>      | B. <u>large</u>   | C. <u>warm</u>    | D. <u>apart</u>   |
| 7. A. <u>were</u>     | B. <u>there</u>   | C. <u>nowhere</u> | D. <u>where</u>   |
| 8. A. <u>praise</u>   | B. <u>phrase</u>  | C. <u>base</u>    | D. <u>raise</u>   |
| 9. A. <u>where</u>    | B. <u>what</u>    | C. <u>who</u>     | D. <u>when</u>    |
| 10. A. <u>changes</u> | B. <u>praises</u> | C. <u>gives</u>   | D. <u>touches</u> |



## 第二部分 词汇与语法



### 第二章 词汇

#### 考试要点

1. 掌握基本的构词法知识。
2. 掌握一些常用词（近义或反义）的用法及区别。

#### 复习内容



#### 构词法

词的构成有一定的规律，这种规律称为构词法。英语主要有三种构词法：转化，派生和合成。

#### (一) 转化 (换)

由一种词类转换为另一种词类。

1. 动词→名词，例如：

Let me have a try. (*v.* → *n.*)

This is winter wear, don't make it too tight. (*v.* → *n.*)

I like a quiet rest after supper. (*v.* → *n.*)

再如：have a look /chat/talk/wash/bath/swim/rest/smoke/dream/fight/walk/run etc.

2. 名词→动词，例如：

Have you booked your ticket?

Who chaired the meeting?

It can seat a thousand people.

It pictures the life of the poor.

He penciled the time on the paper.

再如：hand *v.* 交                      back *v.* 支持，后盾  
head *v.* 担任                      ear *v.* 抽穗，向上长  
nose *v.* 试探                      eye *v.* 看，注视  
X-ray *v.* 透视                      stage *v.* 上演  
machine-gun *v.* 用机关枪扫射



## 3. 形容词→动词, 例如:

The train slowed down.

This will help you warm up.

The room quieted down.

Wrongs must be righted when they are discovered.

Don't idle away your time.

She busied herself with household work.

Don't dirty your clothes/hands.

We can better the life of the people.

He felt himself wronged.

Her hair is beginning to grey.

## 4. 副词→动词, 例如:

further *v.* 促进      down *v.* 放下, 击落

forward *v.* 转到

## 5. 形容词→名词, 例如:

dear *n.* 招人喜欢之人

right and wrong *n.* 是与非

final *n.* 决赛    the wounded *n.* 伤员

the rich *n.* 富人    the poor *n.* 穷人

the beautiful *n.* 美人    the blind *n.* 盲人

## 6. 词形不变, 但重音变化。较常见的为双音节词。作动词是重音在后, 作名词时重音在前。(前名后动)

| 名词                   |      | 动词                   |       |
|----------------------|------|----------------------|-------|
| combine ['kɒmbaɪn]   | 康拜因  | combine ['kɒm'baɪn]  | 合并    |
| compress ['kɒmpres]  | 止血垫布 | compress ['kɒm'pres] | 压紧    |
| contest ['kɒntest]   | 比赛   | contest ['kɒn'test]  | 竞争    |
| export ['eksɜ:pɪt]   | 出口   | export ['ɪk'spɜ:t]   | 输出    |
| import ['ɪmpɜ:t]     | 进口   | import ['ɪm'pɜ:t]    | 输入    |
| increase ['ɪnkri:s]  | 增加   | increase ['ɪn'kri:s] | 增加    |
| present ['prezent]   | 礼物   | present ['prezent]   | 赠送    |
| progress ['prəʊgres] | 进步   | progress ['prə'gres] | 前进    |
| record ['rekɔ:d]     | 唱片   | record ['rɪ:kɔ:d]    | 记录、录音 |
| refuse ['refju:s]    | 垃圾   | refuse ['rɪ'fju:z]   | 拒绝    |

## 7. 个别词形变, 音也变, 例如:

| 名词    |        | 动词    |         |
|-------|--------|-------|---------|
| bath  | [bɑ:θ] | bathe | [beɪð]  |
| blood | [blʌd] | bleed | [bli:d] |
| food  | [fu:d] | feed  | [fi:d]  |



|        |          |       |         |
|--------|----------|-------|---------|
| gold   | [gəʊld]  | gild  | [ɡɪld]  |
| proof  | [pru:f]  | prove | [pru:v] |
| speech | [spi:tʃ] | speak | [spi:k] |
| tale   | [teɪl]   | tell  | [tel]   |

8. 词形不变, 读音变。例如:

|       |                     |                   |
|-------|---------------------|-------------------|
| close | [kləʊs] <i>adj.</i> | [kləʊz] <i>v.</i> |
| live  | [laɪv] <i>adj.</i>  | [lɪv] <i>v.</i>   |

## (二) 派生

在一个单词的前后加上词缀变成一个新词, 词缀有前缀、后缀, 派生词多数由词根加后缀构成。

### 1. 前缀:

除少数前缀外, 前缀一般只改变词的意义, 不引起词类的转化。常用前缀如下:

(1) 用于形容词、副词或名词之前表示相反意义, 可以表示为“不”、“非”:

|      |             |               |
|------|-------------|---------------|
| un-  | unknown     | uncommon      |
|      | unfair      | unexpected    |
| dis- | dishonest   | discontent    |
|      | disorderly  | discouraging  |
| non- | nonstop     | nonsense      |
|      | nonsmoker   | nonmetal      |
| in-  | incorrect   | incomplete    |
|      | inexpensive | inactive      |
| im-  | impossible  | impolite      |
| ir-  | irregular   | irresponsible |
| il-  | illegal     | illogical     |

**注意:** invaluable 并不表示否定意义, 而意为“非常宝贵的, 无法估价的”。

(2) 用于动词前表示相反的动作:

|            |           |            |
|------------|-----------|------------|
| un-解开      | undress   | unwrap     |
|            | untie     | uncover    |
| dis-分离, 剥夺 | disclose  | disconnect |
| 除去         | disarm    | discourage |
| 不, 非       | disappear | disagree   |

(3) 用于动词前表示“错”、“误”的行为:

|      |         |               |
|------|---------|---------------|
| mis- | mistake | misspell      |
|      | mislead | misunderstand |

(4) 用于名词前表示程度和大小:

|             |              |                |
|-------------|--------------|----------------|
| super-超级, 超 | supermarket  | superpower     |
|             | superhighway | superconductor |
| mini-小      | minibus      | miniskirt      |
|             | minicab      | minimum        |



|                      |              |                 |
|----------------------|--------------|-----------------|
| micro-小, 微量          | microphone   | microfilm       |
|                      | microscope   | microwave       |
| (5) 用于动词或名词前表示时间和顺序: |              |                 |
| re-重, 再              | remarry      | rebuild         |
|                      | reunite      | retell          |
| pre-预先               | precede      | predict         |
| 在……前                 | prehistory   | pre-liberation  |
| post-在……后            | postwar      | postpone        |
|                      | postgraduate | post-liberation |

(6) 用于名词前表示其他各种意义:

|          |               |              |
|----------|---------------|--------------|
| tele-远距离 | telephone     | television   |
|          | telegraph     | telescope    |
| auto-自动  | automobile    | automatic    |
| inter-相互 | international | interphone   |
| semi-半   | semicircle    | semifinal    |
| kilo-千   | kilometre     | kilogramme   |
| self-自我  | self-control  | self-taught  |
|          | self-service  | self-defence |

另外有少数前缀可以改变词类:

en-构成动词“使……处于某境地”

endanger    enrich    enable

a-构成形容词或副词

asleep    abroad    aside    awake    alight    afloat

2. 后缀:

后缀一般只改变词类, 不引起词义变化。常用后缀主要有:

(1) 由动词构成名词表示人或器具:

|             |            |            |           |
|-------------|------------|------------|-----------|
| -er ……的人, 者 | foreigner  | swimmer    |           |
|             | traveller  | worker     |           |
|             | writer     | footballer |           |
|             | researcher | geographer |           |
|             | astronomer | villager   |           |
|             | southerner | Londoner   |           |
| -or ……者     | inventor   | operator   | author    |
| -ist ……专业人员 | geologist  | pianist    | physicist |
| ……主义者       | Marxist    | socialist  | communist |
| -ian 人      | musician   | technician |           |
|             | magician   | physician  |           |
|             | Christian  | Russian    |           |
|             | Asian      | Egyptian   |           |



-ess 阴性

hostess

actress

waitress

lioness

empress

princess

Goddess

-er 器具

cooker

washer

speaker

-or 器具

tractor

translator

calculator

(2) 由形容词构成名词表示性质或状态:

-ness

kindness

happiness

sadness

-ship

hardship

friendship

scholarship

-y

difficulty

honesty

jealousy

-ty

safety

cruelty

anxiety

-th

wealth

truth

warmth

-ce

difference

independence

importance

arrogance

-dom

freedom

wisdom

(3) 由动词构成名词表示动作、过程或结果:

-tion

pollution

suggestion

invitation

expectation

- (s) ion

discussion

decision

impression

-ment

development

agreement

government

movement

-age

passage

marriage

carriage

**注意:** 下面的词构成名词时词形变化:

explain—explanation

repeat—repetition

pronounce—pronunciation

(4) 由名词构成名词表示身份、时代、资格:

-hood

childhood

womanhood

boyhood

-ship

professorship

kingship

citizenship

(5) 由名词构成形容词表示“具有……性质”或“与……有关”:

-ful

useful

helpful

cheerful

-ous

poisonous

famous

dangerous

-ly

friendly

lonely

orderly

-al

national

practical

educational

-ary

secondary

revolutionary

-y

rainy

healthy

sleepy

-some

troublesome

tiresome

quarrelsome



|                              |            |             |            |
|------------------------------|------------|-------------|------------|
| -an                          | European   | Indian      | Canadian   |
| -en                          | wooden     | woolen      | golden     |
| (6) 由动词构成形容词表示“可……的”或“能……的”: |            |             |            |
| -able                        | suitable   | reliable    | believable |
| -ible                        | impossible | responsible | invisible  |

(7) 由名词构成形容词表示否定意义:

|       |          |         |          |
|-------|----------|---------|----------|
| -less | careless | useless | fearless |
|-------|----------|---------|----------|

但 priceless (宝贵的, 无价的), countless (无数的) 并不表示否定意义。“无价值的”应该是 valueless 或 worthless。

(8) 由形容词构成副词:

|             |          |          |
|-------------|----------|----------|
| -ly 表示方式、程度 | freely   | terribly |
|             | clearly  | truly    |
| -ward 表示方向  | backward | eastward |
|             | forward  | westward |

(9) 由形容词构成动词, 表示“使……化”、“使……成为”、“变得”:

|      |          |           |           |
|------|----------|-----------|-----------|
| -ize | realize  | modernize |           |
| -ify | beautify | simplify  | electrify |
| -en  | sharpen  | harden    | soften    |

(10) 由数词构成数词:

|                  |           |          |           |
|------------------|-----------|----------|-----------|
| -teen 表示 13 至 19 | nineteen  | thirteen |           |
|                  | seventeen | fifteen  |           |
| -ty 表示整十数        | forty     | twenty   |           |
|                  | thirty    | fifty    |           |
| -th 表示序数词        | ninth     | sixth    | fifteenth |

### (三) 合成

就是由两个或两个以上的词合成一个词。

1. 合成名词的主要构成方式:

|             |                |              |
|-------------|----------------|--------------|
| (1) 名词+名词   | airport        | basketball   |
|             | classroom      | silkworm     |
| (2) 形容词+名词  | blackboard     | briefcase    |
|             | green-house    | shorthand    |
| (3) 动词+名词   | playground     | springboard  |
|             | pickpocket     | break-water  |
| (4) 名词+动词   | sunshine       | sunset       |
| (5) 动名词+名词  | reading-room   | living-room  |
|             | sleeping-pills | waiting-room |
| (6) 名词+现在分词 | handwriting    | sightseeing  |
| (7) 动词+副词   | lookout        | setup        |
|             | get-together   | walkout      |
| (8) 副词+名词   | background     | downtown     |



## (9) 名词+介词短语

editor-in-chief  
father-in-law  
comrade-in-arms/chief

**注意:** good-for-nothing 无用之人  
go-between 中间人、媒人  
touch-me-not 水仙花

## 2. 合成副词最常见的构成方式:

(1) 副词+副词 furthermore however  
(2) 代词+副词 somehow anywhere  
(3) 副词+名词 overhead downstairs  
(4) 形容词+名词 anyway meanwhile

## 3. 合形成形容词最常见的构成方式:

(1) 形容词+现在分词 good-looking slow-moving easy-going  
(2) 名词+现在分词 man-eating peace-loving  
(3) 副词+现在分词 forthcoming outstanding  
(4) 名词+过去分词 air-conditioned man-made  
(5) 形容词+过去分词 grey-haired middle-aged  
(6) 形容词+名词 first-rate second-hand  
bare-foot high-class  
(7) 副词+副词 faraway

## 4. 合成代词的主要构成方式:

(1) 人称代词宾格 him/her+self, them+selves  
物主代词 (一、二人称)+self/selves  
(2) 不定代词 some, any, no, every+body/one/thing

## (四) 其他次要的构词法

## 1. 截短法:

(1) 截头。如: aeroplane—plane telephone—phone  
(2) 去尾。如: mathematics—maths  
laboratory—lab examination—exam  
photograph—photo kilogramme—kilo  
(3) 截头又去尾。如: refrigerator—fridge influenza—flu

2. 缩合法: 将一个词中的几个字母缩合成一个词, 或者将专有名词的各个组成词的第一个字母缩合成一个词。例如:

|                                |        |
|--------------------------------|--------|
| television—TV                  | 电视     |
| the United States—US           | 美利坚合众国 |
| the United Nations—UN          | 联合国    |
| video cassette recorder—VCR    | 录像机    |
| compact disc—CD                | 激光唱片   |
| fire hydrant—FH                | 消防龙头   |
| extra large—XL                 | 特大号    |
| Unidentified Flying Object—UFO | 不明飞行物  |



## 例题 析

- 例 1. The speaker raised his \_\_\_\_\_ in order to be heard by the people at the back.  
A. voice                      B. cry                      C. sound                      D. noise

解析: noise 意为“喧闹声”、“噪声”、“响声”,指混杂在一起或单一大、令人讨厌的声音。sound “声音”,该词含义广泛,指各种有意义或无意义的声音。cry “哭叫声”、“喊声”。voice “声音”,只指人说话或唱歌的声音。根据句意及这 4 个词的意思及固定短语 raise one's voice, 本题答案为 A。

- 例 2. All the leading newspapers \_\_\_\_\_ the trade talks between China and the United States.  
A. reported                      B. printed                      C. announced                      D. published

解析: 根据句意,报纸只能“报道 (report)”某件事,而不可能“印刷 (print)”、“宣布 (announce)”或“出版 (publish)”某件事。故 A 为正确答案。

- 例 3. I can hardly hear the radio, would you please \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. turn it on                      B. turn it down                      C. turn it up                      D. turn it off

解析: turn on “打开”, turn off “关掉”, turn up “开大点”, turn down “开小点”。第一个句意说明,说话人乐意听收音机,但觉得声音太小,所以在第二个句子中应要求对方将声音开大些,故本题答案为 C。

- 例 4. It's nearly seven o'clock, Jack \_\_\_\_\_ be here at any moment.  
A. must                      B. need                      C. should                      D. can

解析: 本题考查对四个情态动词 must, need, should 和 can 的掌握情况。题干中句子含义为“快七点了, Jack 随时都可能到”。由此看来,空缺处需要的是一个表示推测的情态动词。must 可以表示揣测,但不用于肯定, need 和 can 一个表示需要,一个表示能力,都没有揣测的含义, should 表示不太肯定的揣测,与本题意思相符,故 C 为正确答案。

- 例 5. They went to a \_\_\_\_\_ village to visit a farmer.  
A. near                      B. nearby                      C. next                      D. close

解析: near 和 nearby 都可作前置定语,意为“近”, nearby 为“附近的”, near 是“亲近的”。例如: a near relative, nearby 常用来表示距离近,如 a nearby village 或 a village nearby。而 near 一般用作介词,如 near the bus stop 等,故 A 应排除。next 应与定冠词连用, close 指“亲密紧密,亲近”等,都不符合题意,故本题答案为 B。

## 自我测试

- The tailor made him a new \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. clothes                      B. suit                      C. dress                      D. wear
- I watched a boxing \_\_\_\_\_ on TV last night.  
A. fight                      B. game                      C. match                      D. sport
- Keep quiet! Don't make any \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. sound                      B. noise                      C. voice                      D. cry



4. He is \_\_\_\_\_ because he has won the prize.  
A. nervous                      B. satisfying                      C. excited                      D. exciting
5. Mary is being \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. unhappy                      B. helpful                      C. delighted                      D. beautiful
6. Though normally I can walk for miles without taking any rest, I found today's walk to Tai Shan very \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. tired                      B. tiring                      C. tire                      D. tiresome
7. It is a \_\_\_\_\_ difficult exam.  
A. fairly                      B. too                      C. rather                      D. enough
8. That milk has \_\_\_\_\_ sour.  
A. turned                      B. come                      C. got                      D. become
9. When did you \_\_\_\_\_ my letter?  
A. receive                      B. accept                      C. got                      D. gain
10. She said that she \_\_\_\_\_ Japan.  
A. had never gone to                      B. was never to  
C. had never been to                      D. has never gone to
11. 用给定单词的正确形式填空, 完成句子。  
(1) You must be very \_\_\_\_\_ (care) and not say anything to Paul.  
(2) In \_\_\_\_\_ (add) to English, you'd better learn another foreign language.  
(3) It's much cheaper to buy a \_\_\_\_\_ (use) car than a new one.  
(4) She is young and \_\_\_\_\_ (experience), but she is good at learning.  
(5) \_\_\_\_\_ (fortune), the damage to the car was not very serious.  
(6) The news of victory \_\_\_\_\_ (excite) everybody.  
(7) The weather this summer has been \_\_\_\_\_ (disappoint). We have had too much rain.  
(8) They failed to convince her of his \_\_\_\_\_ (honest).  
(9) It is \_\_\_\_\_ (child) to run into danger for nothing.  
(10) Since you tend to be \_\_\_\_\_ (sick, sea); we'd better go to Nanjing by train.



## 第三章 名词

### 考试要点

1. 掌握名词的种类和主要形式。
2. 掌握名词的数。
3. 掌握名词的格。
4. 掌握名词的句法功能。

### 复习内容

#### 一、名词的种类和主要形式

1. 名词是表示人、物和抽象概念的词。根据名词本身表达的意义，名词可分成：

(1) 专有名词：表示特定的人名、地名和组织机构。

例如：John, the United States, Young Pioneer 等。

(2) 普通名词：表示一类人和物的。普通名词又分为：

① 个体名词：表示可以个别存在的事物。

例如：ruler, farmer, envelope 等。

② 集体名词：表示同一类许多个体的总称。

例如：police, team, clothing, machinery 等。

③ 物质名词：表示不可以个别存在的物质。

例如：air, sugar, flour 等。

④ 抽象名词：表示某种抽象概念，如情感、心理等。

例如：health, courage, peace 等。

2. 名词又可以根据其可数性分为可数名词与不可数名词。个体名词和集体名词一般是可数名词。物质名词、抽象名词及专有名词是不可数名词。

3. 名词还可以根据其形式分为简单名词与复合名词。

(1) 简单名词由单个名词组成。例如：mother, society, vase, wine, work 等。复合名词由单个名词加一个或一个以上的名词或其他词类组成。例如：raincoat, airman, sight-seeing, walking stick 等。复合名词在英语中很常见，而且不断有新词出现，它由名词、动词、副词、形容词及介词组合而成，一般包括两部分。例如：bedroom, chairman, earthquake, letter-box, railway, sea-bird。有时包含三个部分，其中一部分是介词。例如：commander-in-chief, daughter-in-law, mother-of-pearl (珍珠母), good-for-nothing (废物)。

(2) 复合名词的构成大致有以下几种：

① 名词 + 名词，例如：

daylight, goldfish, handbag, nightdress, oilwell, snowball, teapot, warhorse.



②名词+动词, 例如:

rainfall, haircut, book-keeping

horse-riding 骑马

③名词+副词, 例如:

passer-by 过路人 hunger-on 食客

④动词+名词, 例如:

turn-table 转台, washing machine, chewing gum, swimming-pool, writing desk.

⑤动词+副词, 例如:

break-in 闯入 make-up 组成

take-off 起飞 warm-up 热身动作

⑥形容词+名词, 例如:

shorthand 速记 blueprint 蓝图

⑦副词+名词, 例如:

onlooker, bystander 旁观者

⑧副词+动词, 例如:

offset 分支 outlet 出口

income 收入 downturn 向下

⑨形容词+动词, 例如:

dry-cleaning 干洗

## 二、可数名词的数

数是名词的语法范畴之一。英语名词的数即指名词的单、复数形式。英语名词的最基本类别是可数名词和不可数名词。可数名词通常有单数和复数形式; 不可数名词一般没有单复数之分, 但有时也以复数形式出现, 表示不同的意义。

名词的数(作主语时)决定谓语动词的数(用 is 还是 are, 用 have 还是 has, 加 s 还是不加 s)。

### (一) 可数名词的构成

可数名词有单数、复数之分。其复数的构成方式如下:

1. 一般在词尾加-s, 其读音在清辅音后为 [s], 在浊辅音和元音后为 [z]。

例如: books, dogs, days, friends

2. 在以 s, sh, ch, x 结尾的名词后加-es 其读音为 [ɪz]。

例如: buses, brushes, watches, boxes

3. 以辅音字母+y 结尾的名词须改 y 为 i; 再加-es, 其读音为 [z]。

例如: story—stories, baby—babies, lady—ladies, factory—factories

4. 以 f 或 fe 结尾的名词须改 f 或 fe 为 v, 再加-es, -ves 读 [vz]。

例如: knife—knives, wife—wives, life—lives, leaf—leaves, thief—thieves, calf—calves, half—halves, loaf—loaves, self—selves, shelf—shelves, wolf—wolves

但下面的名词直接加-s: belief (s), chief (s), gulf (s), handkerchief (s), roof (s), proof (s), safe (s) (保险箱), serf (s)



5. 以 o 结尾的名词, 有的加-es, 读 [z]

例如: tomatoes, heroes, Negroes, potatoes, tobaccos. 但下面以 o 结尾的名词直接加-s: photos, pianos, kilos, autos, radios, bamboos, zoos

6. 采用改变元音等方法构成复数形式的名词有 man—men, woman—women, foot—feet, goose—geese, tooth—teeth, mouse—mice, ox—oxen, child—children

7. 单复数同形的名词有: deer, fish, people, sheep, aircraft, species (种类), works (工厂), jin (斤), yuan (元)

8. 表示“某国人”的名词构成复数时须考虑具体情况:

(1) 加-s: Russian—Russians

German—Germans

American—Americans

Roman—Romans

(2) 以-ese 结尾的不变: Chinese, Japanese

(3) 以 man 和 woman 结尾的复合名词, 变 man 为 men:

Englishman—Englishmen, Frenchwoman—Frenchwomen

(4) 单复数相同: Swiss (瑞士人)

9. 复合名词的复数形式有如下几种情况:

(1) 将复合词中的主体词改为复数。例如: sons-in-law, daughters-in-law, sisters-in-law, brothers-in-law, lookers-on (旁观者), step-sons (继子)

(2) 没有主体名词的, 在词尾加-s:

grown-ups 成年人, go-betweens 中间人

(3) man 和 woman 作为性别标志修饰的名词:

man teacher—men teachers, woman doctor—women doctors

10. 不规则复数形式的构成:

(1) 内部元音发生变化:

foot [fʊt] —feet [fi:t]

tooth [tu:θ] —teeth [ti:θ]

man [mæn] —men [men]

goose [gu:s] —geese [gi:s]

mouse [maʊs] —mice [maɪs]

woman ['wʊmən] —women ['wɪmɪn]

(2) 加-en, ren

child [tʃaɪld] —children ['tʃɪldrən]

## (二) 单数名词与复数名词

英语可数名词的规则复数形式是在词尾加-s 或-es, 但是有一些以-s 结尾的名词并不是可数名词。它们当中有的作单数用, 有的作复数用, 有的既可作单数用也可作复数用, 这样就往往造成使用上的困难, 因此值得注意。

1. 常作单数用的-s 结尾的名词包括某些疾病名称、游戏名称、学科名称及某些地理名称词和其他专有名词。某些疾病名称通常作单数用。例如:

Phlebitis (静脉炎) is a swollen condition of the blood vessels.

Arthritis (关节炎) is a disease causing pain and swelling in the joints of the body.

但也有一些疾病名称既可作单数用也可作复数用。例如:

Generally Measles (麻疹) occurs in children.

Measles are sometimes caused by a tapeworm.

表示游戏名称的名词通常作单数用。例如:

Darts (投镖游戏) is a free and easy game.



Marbles (打弹子游戏) is one of the oldest games and was not confined to children.

但也有个别表示游戏名称的名词作复数用。例如:

Cards are not allowed here.

当 darts, marbles 等是指作这些游戏所用的镖或弹子时, 其复数形式仍作复数用。例如:

Five darts (五只镖) are thrown at each turn.

Marbles (各种弹子) vary in kind and quality.

表示学科名称等以-ics 结尾的名词常作单数用。例如:

Economics (经济学) is an important subject.

Acoustics (声学) is the science of sound and is a factor which must be considered when building a theatre or a cinema.

Mathematics (数学) is one of the required courses.

但当上述这类名词作“学科”以外解释时常作复数用。例如:

The economics of the project are still being considered. (指经济情况)

His mathematics are weak. (指数学实践能力)

2. 某些以-s 结尾指单一物体的专有名词通常用作单数。例如:

The United States is a country of people with varied origins.

The New York Times is published daily.

但表示群岛、山脉、瀑布等以-s 结尾的专有名词往往作复数用。例如:

The Niagara Falls are perhaps the most famous waterfall in the world.

The Philippines lie to the southeast of China.

The Andes (安第斯山脉) are rich in minerals, especially copper, gold and silver.

3. 某些表示由两个部分构成的物体的名词常用复数形式, 如 scissors, trousers, spectacles, shears, tongs 等; 某些以-ings 结尾的名词, 如 belongings, earnings, filings, lodgings, surroundings, sweepings 等。

4. 某些名词通常以复数形式出现, 如 alarms, arms, archives, clothes, fireworks, goods, outskirts, soapsuds, stairs, thanks, wages, the Middle Ages, threads 等。例如:

Tom's new trousers are black and white.

The iron filings (铁屑) are to be collected.

High wages make Bill very happy.

Fireworks are banned in most states.

表示由两个部分构成的物体的名词, 如果前面用了 a pair of 之类的单位词, 其后动词单复数形式往往取决于 pair 的单复数形式。例如:

One pair of scissors isn't enough.

Two pairs of trousers are missing.

### (三) 集体名词的数

集体名词在句中的使用有以下三种情况:

有一些集体名词如 police, cattle, vermin, poultry 等通常用作复数。例如:

Such vermin as bugs and rats are hard to get rid of.

Domestic cattle provide us with milk, beef and hides.

但也有一些集体名词如 merchandise, machinery 等通常用作单数。例如:

The merchandise has arrived undamaged.

All the machinery in the factory is made in China.



还有一些集体名词如 audience, class, couple, crew, committee, family, firm, government, jury, party, public 等既可用于单数也可用作复数。用作单数时, 在意义上是把集体名词看成一个整体; 用作复数时, 是指该集体的各个成员。例如:

- { My family is a large one.
- { My family all love music.
- { The team the boys want to meet are Germans.
- { The team is at the bottom of the third division.

#### (四) 物质名词、抽象名词和专有名词的数

1. 物质名词一般是不可数名词, 没有复数形式。可是有些物质名词有时也以复数形式出现。但表示的意义不同。比较:

- A tobacconist is a person who deals with tobacco (烟草).
- Some of the best tobaccoes are grown in Turkey (不同种类的烟叶).
- They were given some bread and water (水).
- They were not allowed to fish in our territorial waters (领海).
- I'd like some coffee and lemonade (咖啡和柠檬水).
- I'd like two coffees and three lemonades (两杯咖啡, 三瓶柠檬水).

2. 抽象名词一般是不可数的, 因而没有复数形式。例如:

- Honesty is the best policy.
- Knowledge is strength.
- 也有些抽象名词既可用于不可数名词也可用作可数名词, 但有时意义不同。比较:
- The teachers met to exchange experience (经验).
- My life in England was an unforgettable experience (经历).

3. 专有名词通常以单数形式出现, 但以复数形式出现时, 其意思不同。例如:

- Have you invited the Browns (指姓布朗的一家人)?
- There are two Miss Smiths in the class (指两个同姓 Smith 的女子).

4. 注意事项:

(1) 物质名词作可数名词时意义发生变化, 这时候的物质名词表示种类或具体事物, 例如:

|                    |            |              |        |
|--------------------|------------|--------------|--------|
| tea—teas           | 各种各样的茶     | sand—sands   | 沙滩, 沙地 |
| metal—a rare metal | 一种稀有金属     | fruit—fruits | 各种水果   |
| hair—a hair        | 一根头发       | food—foods   | 多种食品   |
| glass—a glass      | 玻璃杯        | cloth—cloths | 各种布    |
| iron—an iron       | 熨斗         | chalk—chalks | 多种粉笔   |
| paper—papers       | 试卷; 论文; 报纸 |              |        |

(2) 抽象名词具体化时也可以成为可数名词, 不仅可以和不定冠词连用, 而且有复数形式。例如: He's a success.

|            |                         |
|------------|-------------------------|
| success    | [UN] 成功; [CN] 成功 (的人或事) |
| failure    | [UN] 失败; [CN] 失败 (的人或事) |
| experience | [UN] 经验; [CN] 经历        |
| difficulty | [UN] 困难; [CN] 难事        |
| beauty     | [UN] 美; [CN] 美人         |
| pleasure   | [UN] 快乐; [CN] 乐事        |
| youth      | [UN] 青春; [CN] 青年        |



industry [UN] 工业; [CN] 产业

(3) 表示具体事物的可数名词用来表示抽象或物质意义时就成为不可数名数, 当然意义也就不同。例如:

|                      |                 |
|----------------------|-----------------|
| a room 房间            | [UN] room 空间    |
| a talk 谈话            | [UN] talk 空谈    |
| a chicken 鸡          | [UN] chicken 鸡肉 |
| a lamb 羊羔            | [UN] lamb 羊肉    |
| an evening dress 晚礼服 | [UN] dress 服装   |

change, leaf, war, hope 等不少常见词都可能用作不可数名词。另外, 在 go to bed/school/church, be in prison, at college 等大量的短语中, 名词大都表示与该事物有关的一种行为, 因而带有抽象色彩, 前面都不用冠词。

(4) 专有名词“普通化”时也可用作可数名词。例如:

a Mr Green 一位格林先生。

### (五) 名词的量化表示法

单位词名词的量化表示必须借助单位词, 单位词是表示事物个体性的词语。英语的可数名词与单位词搭配表示“一群”、“一帮”等意义; 不可数名词一般没有单复数形式, 不可以个数计算, 要表示这类名词的个体性也得用单位词。由于汉英两种语言在可数名词与不可数名词的划分上存在差异, 表示事物的个体性就往往使学生感到困难。例如:

|              |                   |
|--------------|-------------------|
| 一张课桌 a desk  | 二张课桌 two desks    |
| 一把椅子 a chair | 三把椅子 three chairs |

这对学生没有困难, 因为“课桌”“椅子”在英语和汉语中都是可数名词。但学生往往会把“一块面包”、“一张纸”、“一条新闻”、“一项建议”说成 a bread, a paper, a news, an advice。学生之所以会产生这类问题, 是因为 bread, paper, news, advice 是英语不可数名词, 学生往往受母语名词分类习惯所干扰。要把这类名词个体化就得用单位词:

|                                  |                                     |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| a piece of bread/a loaf of bread | a piece of paper/a sheet of paper   |
| a piece of news/an item of news  | a piece of advice/an item of advice |

汉语也有类似的“单位词”, 如上面讲的“一张”、“一把”、“一条”等都是表示个体性的词语, 有了这类词语就可表示一个以上的个数, 使不可数名词能以“个数”计算。但是汉语的“单位词”和英语的单位词既有相通之处, 也有不同之点。要使自己的英语表达符合英语习惯, 就得注意某些固定的搭配关系。例如:

|      |                     |      |                     |
|------|---------------------|------|---------------------|
| 一群人  | a group of people   | 一群鱼  | a school of fish    |
| 一群蚂蚁 | a swarm of ants     | 一群歹徒 | a gang of hooligans |
| 一群鸡  | a flock of chickens | 一群牛  | a herd of cattle    |
| 一群狼  | a pack of wolves    |      |                     |

### 三、名词的格

格是一个语法范畴, 它表示名词或代词与其他词在句中的关系。英语名词有两个格, 普通格和所有格。当名词在句中充当主语、宾语或补语时, 词形没有变化, 这就是普通格; 当名词与其他名词之间存在着所有关系、主谓关系、动宾关系或表示类别等意义时, 该名词就采用所有格。



## (一) 名词所有格的构成

### 1. -s 所有格的构成

(1) 通常在名词后加 's。例如：

Tom's book, the boy's computer, man's duty, the girl's toy. -s 在词尾是清辅音后发 [s], 在词尾是元音或浊辅音后读 [z]。

(2) 以-s 或-es 结尾的复数名词, 在词尾加 (')。例如：

the lawyers' car, the poets' club, the ladies' party, 不规则变化的复数名词的所有格仍是词尾 's 形式。例如：

the children's books

(3) 以-s 结尾的专有名词后加 's 或撇号。例如：

Engels' works/Engels's works

Evans' restaurant/Evans's restaurant

Dickens' novels/Dickens's novels

(4) 作为一个整体词组, 一般放在最后一个词加 's。例如：

an hour and a half's walk

Karl and Charles' book (两人共有的书)

Karl's and Charles' books (Karl 的书和 Charles 的书)

(5) 复合名词只在最后一个词的词尾加-s, 例如：

his sister-in-law's bike (他嫂子的自行车)

### 2. of 所有格

of 所有格即 “of+名词” 结构作定语, 通常用于无生命的名词, 例如：

the window of the house, the front gate of the palace

## (二) 使用名词所有格应注意之处

一般地说, 's 所有格多用于有生命的东西, of 所有格多用于无生命的东西, 但实际上, 两种结构既有区别之处, 又有相通之处。

### 1. 可以使用两种结构的情况：

(1) 表示有生命的名词 (人或动物)。例如：

{ Roy's farm                  Roy 的农场  
  the farm of Roy

{ the elephant's trunk                  大象的鼻子  
  the trunk of the elephant

{ the store keeper's son                  店主的儿子  
  the son of the store keeper

(2) 表示天体的名词。例如：

{ the sun's heat                  太阳的热  
  the heat of the sun

{ the moon's surface                  月球表面  
  the surface of the moon

(3) 表示地区、机构的名词。例如：

{ China's future                  中国的未来  
  the future of China

{ the world's population                  世界人口  
  the population of the world

{ the city's development                  城市的发展  
  the development of the city

{ the government's plan                  政府的计划  
  the plan of the government



(4) 某些无生命的名词, 例如 body, science, book, car, life 等。例如:

|                         |        |                         |      |
|-------------------------|--------|-------------------------|------|
| { the car's engine      | 汽车的发动机 | { the book's title      | 书的标题 |
| { the engine of the car |        | { the title of the book |      |

2. 只能用 of 所有格的情况

(1) 表示“有关……”不表示所有关系。例如:

Stories of Mark Twain 有关 Mark Twain 的故事, 而 Mark Twain's stories 是 Mark Twain 写的故事

|                                     |
|-------------------------------------|
| { a portrait of the teacher (教师本人的) |
| { the teacher's portrait (属于教师的)    |

(2) 表示同位关系。例如:

the city of New York, the city of Pisa

(3) 表示部分或全部。例如:

the bottom of the sea, the whole of China

(4) 表示抽象概念。例如:

the cost of living, the news of success

3. 只能用 's 所有格的情况:

's 所有格用来表示事物类别或属性, 例如:

children's picture 儿童画报

men's clothing 男式服装

a doctor's degree 博士学位

另外, 在某些习语中如 at one's wit's end, at the sword's points, a hair's breadth, a wolf in sheep's clothing, in life's struggle, in one's mind's eye, to one's heart's content 等中也只能用 's 所有格。

### (三) 's 所有格的省略

下列情况可以将 's 所有格中被修饰的名词省略:

1. 被修饰的名词在前面的句子已提到过。例如:

This note book is not mine, nor John's, nor Peter's. (省略了 notebook)

The house I bought the other day is more modern than my neighbour's. (省略了 house)

2. 表示处所或店铺。例如:

his uncle's=his uncle's house

the teachers'=the teachers' office

the tailor's/chemist's=the tailor's shop/the chemist's shop

the doctor's/dentist's=the doctor's office/the dentist's office

### (四) 双重所有格

“of+'s 所有格”或“of+名词性物主代词”叫作双重所有格。表示整体中的一个或部分, 例如: a friend of his father's=one of his father's friends 他父亲的一个朋友

some students of mine 我的一些学生

双重所有格所修饰的名词可以和 a, any, some 等限定词连用, 但不可以和定冠词连用。

例如: 可以说: a daughter of Mrs Green's

some daughters of Mrs Green's

不可说: the daughter of Mrs Green's

由双重所有格修饰的名词和 this, that 等连用, 带有爱憎褒贬等感情色彩。例如:



that little boy of your brother's

this brilliant idea of yours

of 所有格和双重所有格有时可以交替使用，意义无甚区别。例如：

a friend of my brother/a friend of my brother's 但若 of 所有格的介词宾语为专有名词，通常只用双重所有格。例如：

a car of Mary's 通常不可说成：a car of Mary

### 例题 析

例 1. In this strange village, there are many small flags on their \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. roof                      B. roofs                      C. rooves                      D. roofes

解析：本题考查名词以-f 或-fe 结尾单数变复数的情况。一般情况下是把-f 或-fe 变 v 再加 es。可有些名词，如 roof, belief, chief, gulf, proof, safe, serf 是直接在此之后加-s 的。所以选项 B 是正确答案。

例 2. He gained his \_\_\_\_\_ by printing \_\_\_\_\_ of famous writers.

- A. wealth; work                      B. wealths; works  
C. wealths; work                      D. wealth; works

解析：本题考查学生对句义的理解及对 wealth, work 和 works 三词的掌握情况。wealth 是不可数名词；work 作名词，当意思是“工作”时，是不可数名词，但此处的 works 意思是“著作”，是可数名词；所以选项 D 为正确选项。

例 3. “Where's your brother?”

“At \_\_\_\_\_.”

- A. Mr Green's                      B. Mr Green  
C. the Mr Green's                      D. the Mr Green

解析：本题考查名词的普通格和所有格及在人姓名前冠词的使用情况。根据上文的意思，询问的是人所在的地方，下文是一种省略。普通格是没有省略的。所以首先排除 B、D 项，而 C 项的结构是错误的，如果把 the 变 a 此项也可以选择。本题的正确答案是 A。

例 4. One day Cruose walked along \_\_\_\_\_ towards his boat.

- A. the sand                      B. the sands                      C. sand                      D. sands

解析：根据句子意思，该填空选项应为“沙滩”，并须特指，故 B 合题意。sand 为物质名词，不可数。加复数之后，意义有了变化，译为“沙滩”。选项 A 和 C 都指“沙子”，且 C 未特指，均不合题意。物质名词加复数的情况再如：skies（广阔的天空），waters（海域，大水），hopes and fears（种种希望和忧虑），steels and silks（多种钢材和丝绸），the rains（雨季）。

例 5. Towards evening, \_\_\_\_\_ came, which made things even worse.

- A. cold rain                      B. cold rains                      C. the cold rain                      D. a cold rain

解析：有些不可数名词，特别是表示自然现象的名词，常可以和不定冠词和形容词连用，表示单数概念。例如：a heavy rain 一场大雨，a heavy snow 一场大雪，a heavy smoke 一阵浓烟，a good sweat 一身大汗，a thick fog 一阵浓雾，a good light 一道亮光，a clear sky 一片晴空。故本题答案为 D。



## 自我测试

I. 将下列各句括号中的短语翻译成英语。

1. That is \_\_\_\_\_ (我父亲的房子). It looks beautiful from outside.
2. My wife has taken my daughter to \_\_\_\_\_ (儿童公园).
3. After \_\_\_\_\_ (两小时的会谈) they came to an agreement.
4. Please don't put \_\_\_\_\_ (狗的食物) under the kitchen table.
5. She woke up at \_\_\_\_\_ (夜半时分) and couldn't go to sleep.
6. They forgot \_\_\_\_\_ (街名) and had to refer to a map.

II. 选择题。

1. The king had a large \_\_\_\_\_ to defend his country.  
A. group                      B. family                      C. troop                      D. army
2. He is going there not for fun but for \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. helps                      B. knowledge                      C. advices                      D. informations
3. I forgot their \_\_\_\_\_, or I would have telephoned them.  
A. telephone's number                      B. telephones numbers  
C. telephone numbers                      D. telephones' numbers
4. Here's my card. Let's keep in \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. touch                      B. relation                      C. connection                      D. friendship
5. — Whose car is this?  
— \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. Tom's and Jack's                      B. Tom's and Jack  
C. Kate, Tom and John's                      D. Mr Roses'
6. — Is your school far from here?  
— Yes, it's \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. a day or two's ride                      B. a stone's throw  
C. about 300 miles' away                      D. 40 minutes' walk
7. — Does this house belong to Brown?  
— No, it's \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. someone's else                      B. anyone else's  
C. somebody else's                      D. someone else



## 第四章 冠词

### 考试要点

1. 掌握冠词的种类。
2. 掌握冠词的基本用法。

### 复习内容

#### 一、冠词的种类

冠词是一种虚词，主要用于名词之前，对名词起限定作用。英语冠词有三种：

##### (一) 不定冠词 a/an

不定冠词 a/an 只能与单数可数名词连用。a 用于以辅音音素前，包括半元音 [w]、[j] 开头的词，读作 [ə]，只有强调时才读作 [eɪ]。an 用于以元音音素（注意不是元音字母）开头的词前，一般读作 [ən]，只有强调时才读作 [æn]。例如：

{ a university [ə ju:nɪ'vɜ:sɪtɪ]  
 { an umbrella [ən ʌm'brelə]  
 { a hot dog [ə 'hɒt dɒg]  
 { an hour [ən 'aʊə]

{ a European [ə jʊərə'piən]  
 { an ear [ən iə]  
 { a B [ə bi:]  
 { an S [ən es]

##### (二) 定冠词 the

定冠词 the 可以用于任何名词前。在辅音音素开头的词前读作 [ðə]，在元音音素开头的词前读作 [ði]，只有在强调时才读作 [ði:]。例如：

{ the house [ðə haʊs]  
 { the honour [ði 'ɒnə]

{ the one-way street [ðə'wʌn'weɪ stri:t]  
 { the onion [ði'ʌnjən]

##### (三) 零冠词

零冠词是名词之前的一种无形的冠词，亦即一般所谓的不用冠词（定冠词或不定冠词）的场合。零冠词一般只与复数名词和不可数名词连用。例如：

Usually boys like balls, and girls prefer dolls.

Water is necessary to life.

Beijing is the capital of China.



## 二、冠词的基本用法

### (一) 不定冠词的用法

#### 1. 用于类名词前:

不定冠词常用于单数形式的类名词前, 表示单数概念。例如:

Give me a post-card .

A girl wants to see you.

When I entered the room, I saw a man standing at the window.

不定冠词也可用于一些常用复数形式的类名词前, 也表示单数概念。例如:

A crossroads is a place where roads cross.

My father works at a gas works (煤气厂).

#### 2. 用于集体名词前:

不定冠词可用于单数形式集体名词之前。例如:

I was put in a large class .

The Shaws were naturally a musical family .

#### 3. 用于物质名词前:

不定冠词可用于单数形式的物质名词之前, 表示单数概念。例如:

It's a very good cheese . (表类别)

A heavy dew fell last night. (表类别)

#### 4. 用于抽象名词前:

(1) 用于由动词转化来的抽象名词前。例如:

Can you give me a lift , please?

Let's have a try at it.

(2) 用于已转化为类名词的抽象名词前。例如:

She's quite a beauty .

As a youth , he was on the school team.

(3) 用于复数形式抽象名词前, 表示单数概念。例如:

The first batsman had a short innings .

(第一击球员的一局很短。)

We have just moved in, so we're in a bit of a shambles (杂乱).

#### 5. 用于名词化的词前:

(1) 用于名词化的动名词前。例如:

A knocking at the door was heard. (a knocking 表单数概念)

By 1980, her work was beginning to attract a following . (a following 表复数概念)

(2) 用于名词化的形容词前。例如:

He is such a dear . (表单数概念)

I'll take this one for want of a better. (a better 表单数概念, 后省略了 one)

(3) 用于名词化的过去分词前。例如:

The onetime star became an outcast. (表单数概念)

He is busy administering a deceased's estate. (a deceased 表单数概念)



(4) 用于名词化的序数词前。例如:

He got a first in mathematics. (表示单数概念)

Hey, we need a fourth in the game. (a fourth 表单数概念)

6. 用于专有名词前:

(1) 用于人名前, 表示“一个叫某名字的人”或“具有某名人特色的人”。例如:

There wasn't a single Janes in the village.

A professor Green is waiting outside.

He is a Shakespeare in his dramatic skill.

(2) 用于带有修饰语的国名前。

The book is entitled the Making of A New Canada.

They built a new democratic South Africa.

(3) 用于其他专有名词前。

I'm going to buy a Kodak.

They came on a Sunday and went away on the Monday.

7. 用于固定习语前:

(1) 介词短语。例如:

all of a sudden 突然

as a rule 通常

as a matter of fact 事实上

at a loss 不知所措

with a vengeance 猛烈地

with a will 带劲

as a result 因此

as a whole 一般地说

at a disadvantage 处于不利地位

in a hurry 匆忙地

in a word 总之

(2) 动词短语。例如:

come to an end 结束

have a good time 过得愉快

have a rest 休息一下

have a cold/cough 感冒

have a gallop 快马加鞭

keep an eye on 注意着

lend a hand 帮忙

make a living 谋生

make a fire 生火

make a fool of 愚弄

make a study of 研究

take a walk 散步

take a break 暂停一下, 休息一下

take a bow 谢幕

take an interest in 对……感兴趣

make a fuss 大惊小怪

make a racket 大声喧闹

beat a retreat 撤退

get a grip of 掌握

## (二) 定冠词的用法

1. 用于名词前:

(1) 用于单数形式的名词前, 表示特定的人或事物。例如:

The book he bought yesterday is very interesting.

My company waited for me at the end of the street.

Stars were sparking out there over the river.



(2) 用于复数形式的名词前, 表复数概念。例如:

This was July, and the fields were green.

Give me a list of the students.

The flowers in Joan's garden are very beautiful.

2. 用于集体名词前:

定冠词可用于集体名词前, 不论单数形式或复数形式, 都表示复数概念。例如:

The museum is open to the public.

Members of the press weren't allowed into the meeting.

He identified himself with the super classes of society.

3. 用于物质名词前:

定冠词可用于单数、复数形式的物质名词前, 一般无单数概念或复数概念。例如:

Milk from which the cream has been taken is called skim-milk.

Suddenly all the lights went out.

4. 用于名词化的词前:

定冠词可用于名词化的动名词、形容词、过去分词、序数词等, 表示特指的(一类)人或(一类)物。

(1) 用于名词化的动名词。例如:

Hang the washing out to dry. (单数形式表复数概念“洗好之物”)

Where is the doings to open this with? (复数形式表单数概念“开启之物”)

(2) 用于名词化的形容词。例如:

The beautiful can never die.

The older took the younger by the hand. (单数形式表单数概念)

I asked one of the locals which way to go. (复数形式表复数概念)

(3) 用于名词化的过去分词。例如:

She said she was just afraid of the unknown. (未知之事)

The accused was acquitted. (单形表单数概念“被告”)

The handicapped need our help. (单形表复数概念“残疾人”)

(4) 用于名词化的序数词。例如:

He was the second to be chosen. (单形表单数概念)

He was one of the first to collect Picasso paintings. (单数形式表复数概念)

5. 用于专有名词(含有普通名词的)前:

(1) 用于表人名的专有名词前。例如:

the Emperor Napoleon

the Judge Harries

the young Shakespeare

the late Premier Zhou

the Browns

the Misses Shaw

(2) 用于表地名的专有名词前。例如:

the Thames

the Suez Canal

the English Channel

the Pacific Ocean

the Sahara

the United States

(3) 用于表机关、团体等的专有名词前。例如:

the National People's Congress

the House of Representatives

the House of Lords

the House of Commons



the Democratic Party

the London Zoo

(4) 用于表报刊书籍及其他专有名词前。例如：

the Times

the Washington Post

the Lord

the Republic Party

the Louvre (Palace)

the New York Times

the Bible

the sun, the moon, the universe.

6. 用于西洋乐器名称前。例如：

The boy is now playing the piano/the violin/the guitar.

7. 用于下列结构之中：

(1) hit sb. in the face

(2) pat sb. on the head

(3) take sb. by the hand

8. 用于固定习语：

(1) 用于介词短语中。例如：

by the pound 以磅计

by the metre/the foot

in the distance

in the morning/afternoon/evening

in the way 挡道

on the left/on the right

on the spot 当场

out of the question 不可能

at the bottom of

(2) 用于动词短语中。例如：

keep the house 居家不外出

take the consequences 自食其果

tell the truth 说实话

break the ice 打破沉默

pick up the pieces 收拾残局

pass the buck 推卸责任

by the hour/the week/the month

by the way

in the future

in the end, in the open

on the contrary, on the increase

on the rise/fall 增长/下降

on the whole 总的来说

in the middle of

play the fool 做傻事

put the blame on sb. 归咎于……

go to the theatre 去剧院

keep the peace 维持治安

burn the midnight oil 开夜车

put the cart before the horse 本末倒置

9. 注意定冠词与不定冠词的区别：

定冠词的基本意义为“定指”，而不定冠词的基本意义为“不定指”，因此，首次提到某人（事物）时要用不定冠词，再次提到该人（事物）时则要用定冠词。如：

One day a man went to see a doctor and said that he had swallowed (吞) a horse. The doctor told him to lie down on the bed and gave him an injection (注射). The man went to sleep.

### (三) 不用冠词的情况

1. 用于表示泛指的可数名词前。例如：



Beauty is truth, truth beauty.

Blood is thicker than water.

2. 用于表示类属的复数可数名词前。例如:

Horses are useful animals.

3. 用于专有名词前。例如:

China, Japan, Asia.

Hyde Park, ZhongShan Park

Beijing University

(注意: the University of Beijing)

Shanghai Railway Station

(注意: the Railway Station of Shanghai)

4. 用于三餐等名词前。例如:

She went out without breakfast.

Let's go out to dinner.

They invited us to tea yesterday.

5. 用于表季节、星期几、月份名称前。例如:

The shed was hot in summer and cold in winter.

She came here on Tuesday.

July passed into August, August into September.

He works not only on weekdays but on Sundays as well.

6. 用于节日名称前。例如:

National Day      Women's Day

New Year's Day      Teachers' Day

但是, 中国传统节日名称前要用 the, 例如:

the Spring Festival      春节

the Lantern Festival      元宵节

7. 用于学科名称前。例如:

Maths is more important than history, isn't it?

8. 用于球类运动和棋类游戏前。例如:

play football/basketball

play bridge /chess 打桥牌/下棋

但: The boy is playing with a basketball.

9. 用于语言名称前。例如:

English is the most widely used language in the world.

但: the English language.

What's the English for “书”?

10. 当由一个人担任的职务名称用作表语, 补语或同位语时, 不用冠词, 例如:

In 1860, Abraham was elected president of the United States.



He became king .

John is captain of the team.

That man was more animal than man.

11. 在口语中,说话人在谈到自己的 father, mother, cook, nurse, teacher 等相熟的人时,不用冠词。例如:

Teacher was very pleased with my work.

Father seems to be excited this morning.

12. 用于意义相对、关系密切的一组名词前。例如:

They became husband and wife .

Father and son are teachers.

比较: The father and the son could not agree on this matter.

13. 用于介词连接的前后重复的同一名词前。例如:

She did experiment after experiment.

She searched shop after shop for Jim's present.

day by day, step by step

shoulder to shoulder, face to face

heart to heart, hand in hand

from door to door

14. 某些固定习语中不用冠词:

(1) 某些介词短语。例如:

after dark, after class

at first/last

by chance/accident/mistake

by air/water/land/car/bus/plane

in charge of 负责 (注意 in the charge of 由……负责)

in spite of 不管

in future 今后 (注意 in the future)

in debt/trouble

on fire, on foot

on account of 因为

out of question 毫无疑问 (注意 out of the question)

out of date 过时

under cover of 在……掩护下

(2) 某些动词短语。例如:

catch cold/fire

keep house 管理家务

pay attention to

take part in/take an active part in 参加/积极参加

at daybreak/dawn/noon/midnight

at home/school/desk (办公)/table (吃饭)

by day/night

in common, in bed, in class

in fact, in fear 恐惧

in place of 代替

in hospital 住院

in sight of 看见

on hand 在手头

out of work/control/reach

with child 怀孕

go to school/bed

keep in mind, learn by heart

send word 捎信, set sail 启航



take place 发生 (注意 take the place of)

make way 前进 lose heart 丧失信心

change course 改变方向

delay sentence 推迟判决

catch sight of, make use of

find fault with 挑剔

take exception to 反对

take root 扎根

mount guard 上岗

cast anchor 抛锚

change gear 换挡

do duty for... 当……用

take hold of 抓住

### 例题 析

例 1. What \_\_\_\_\_ wonderful time we had yesterday!

A. a B. the C. / D. an

解析: have a good/wonderful time 为固定习语。另外 have a rest, have a try, take an active part in, with a smile in a hurry, play an important part in, a little now and a little then 等都是固定习语。本题答案为 A。

例 2. Tom is \_\_\_\_\_ 8-year-old boy.

A. the B. a C. / D. an

解析: 不定冠词 a/an, 表泛指, a 用在辅音音素前, an 用在元音音素 (不是元音字母) 前。8-year-old 中的 8 发 [eɪt], 所以要填 an。选项 A 表特指, 在此处不合题意, 本题答案为 D。

例 3. You must take the medicine three times \_\_\_\_\_ day.

A. the B. one C. every D. a

解析: 不定冠词可指事物的单位或发生频率每日、每次等。例如: three times a week, eight hours a day. 本题答案为 D。

例 4. Lincoln said that \_\_\_\_\_ living must finished the work of those dead.

A. the B. every C. a D. all

解析: 定冠词常与形容词如 weak, poor, strong, rich, old young, wounded, living, defeated 等连用, 使其成为表示一类事物或人的名词, 具有复数意义, 本题答案为 A。

例 5. When we study a globe, we can see \_\_\_\_\_ is the largest ocean and \_\_\_\_\_ the largest continent.

A. the Pacific; Asia B. Pacific; the Asia  
C. the Pacific; the Asia D. Pacific; Asia

解析: 世界上七大洲都不加冠词, 而江河、海洋、山脉、群岛、沙漠是要加定冠词的。故本题答案为 A。

### 自我测试

1. As we know, \_\_\_\_\_ most dangerous enemies are those who pretend to be \_\_\_\_\_ friends.

A. /; / B. the; the C. the; / D. /; the



2. \_\_\_\_\_ film includes some recently discovered newsreels of \_\_\_\_\_ World War II .  
A. The; the      B. A; the      C. The; /      D. A; /
3. May I have \_\_\_\_\_ look at \_\_\_\_\_ dictionary you brought at the bookstore?  
A. /; the      B. a; the      C. a; /      D. the; a
4. Foreign language teaching is \_\_\_\_\_ art as well as \_\_\_\_\_ science.  
A. the; the      B. an; a      C. an; /      D. the; /
5. He walked \_\_\_\_\_ whole day , but by 5 : 30 he had only covered \_\_\_\_\_ quarter of the distance.  
A. the; a      B. a; the      C. the; the      D. a; a
6. We often go to \_\_\_\_\_ playground to play \_\_\_\_\_ football in \_\_\_\_\_ afternoon.  
A. a; the; the      B. the; /; the      C. /; /; an      D. the; the; an
7. \_\_\_\_\_ United States of America lies between \_\_\_\_\_ Atlantic Ocean and \_\_\_\_\_ Pacific Ocean.  
A. The; the; the      B. /; /; /      C. The; /; /      D. /; the; the
8. \_\_\_\_\_ Changjiang River is \_\_\_\_\_ longest in \_\_\_\_\_ China and one of \_\_\_\_\_ longest rivers in \_\_\_\_\_ world.  
A. The; the; /; /; the      B. /; the; /; the; /  
C. The; the; /; the; the      D. /; a; /; the; the
9. \_\_\_\_\_ Einsteins did manage to send \_\_\_\_\_ Einstein to a technical school.  
A. /; a      B. An; an      C. The; /      D. /; /
10. Father went to his doctor for \_\_\_\_\_ about his heart trouble.  
A. an advice      B. advice      C. advices      D. the advices
11. \_\_\_\_\_ doctor told me to take \_\_\_\_\_ medicine three times \_\_\_\_\_ day, stay in \_\_\_\_\_ bed, then I would be better soon.  
A. /; a; a; the      B. A; the; the; /      C. The; the; a; /      D. A; /; a; /
12. She likes \_\_\_\_\_ music. She is listening to \_\_\_\_\_ music of \_\_\_\_\_ film "Shalin Brothers"  
A. /; /; a      B. /; the; the      C. the; the; the      D. /; /; the
13. There is \_\_\_\_\_ picture on \_\_\_\_\_ wall. I like \_\_\_\_\_ picture very much.  
A. a; the; the      B. a; the; a      C. the; a; a      D. a; an; the
14. We should think of \_\_\_\_\_ old and \_\_\_\_\_ sick.  
A. a; a      B. an; a      C. the; the      D. /; /
15. I saw \_\_\_\_\_ old granny and \_\_\_\_\_ child in \_\_\_\_\_ street. \_\_\_\_\_ granny took \_\_\_\_\_ child by \_\_\_\_\_ hand.  
A. an; a; a, An; a; the      B. an; a; the, The; the; the  
C. a; a; the; The; a; the      D. the; the; the; An; a; a



## 第五章 代词

### 考试要点

1. 掌握人称代词形式及用法。
2. 掌握物主代词形式及用法。
3. 掌握指示代词形式及用法。
4. 掌握不定代词形式及用法。
5. 掌握疑问代词形式及用法。
6. 掌握关系代词形式及用法。
7. 掌握反身代词形式及用法。
8. 掌握相互代词形式及用法。

### 复习内容

#### 一、人称代词

##### (一) 人称代词的形式

人称代词格（主格与宾格）、性（阳、阴、中）、人称（第一、第二、第三）、数（单数、复数）之分。列表表示：

| 人称 \ 格 | 数  |       | 单数    |         | 复数     |     |
|--------|----|-------|-------|---------|--------|-----|
|        | 格  |       | 主格    | 宾格      | 主格     | 宾格  |
| 第一人称   |    |       | I 我   | me      | we 我们  | us  |
| 第二人称   |    |       | you 你 | you     | you 你们 | you |
| 第三人称   | 阳性 | he 他  | him   | they 他们 | them   |     |
|        | 阴性 | she 她 | her   | they 她们 |        |     |
|        | 中性 | it 它  | it    | they 它们 |        |     |

##### (二) 人称代词的指代

人称代词表示人。然而人称代词并不全指人，也指物。人称代词有三种人称，每种人称又分单数和复数，第三人称单数还有阳性、阴性和中性之分。人称代词的人称、数和性取决于它所指代的名词，而人称代词的格则取决于它在句中的地位。



1. 第一人称单数 I 代表说话者，其字母永远要大写。例如：

Can I help you?

That's what I mean.

2. 第一人称复数 we 代表说话者一方（二者或二者以上）。例如：

We need one more computer.

We walked together home.

we 有时也包括听者。例如：

Let's have a rest, shall we ?

Shall we call a taxi?

we 可以代表一个集体。例如：

We hope you can come to our company. (We 代表公司)

We do not support the views expressed in this column. (We 代表报纸)

we 也可以用来泛指大家。例如：

We all get into trouble sometimes.

We all fear the unknown.

3. 第二人称单、复数 you 代表听话者或对方（复数 you 代表二者或二者以上）。例如：

You can get what you want.

I choose you two, the rest of you can leave off.

you 表单数还是复数，往往要根据句意和语境来确定。例如：

Are you ready, Tom? (you 表单数)

You both must come over some evening. (you 表复数)

you 也可以用来泛指大家。例如：

You never know what may happen in the future. (you 译为“谁”)

You should do your best at all times.

4. 第三人称单数阳性代表已提到过的男性。例如：

He's a fearless man.

——Where's David?

——He's gone to the theatre.

在一些谚语中 he 也可以泛指大家。例如：

He who laughs last laughs best.

He who does not reach the Great Wall is not a true man.

5. 第三人称单数阴性 she 代表已提到过的女人。例如：

——Where's Mary?

——She's outside sunbathing.

She's a pretty girl.

6. 第三人称单数中性 it 代表已提到过的一件事物。例如：

I love jogging. It keeps me fit.

That vase is valuable. It's more than 200 years old.

当说话者不清楚或无必要知道说话对象的性别时，也可以用 it 来表示。例如：

It's a lovely baby. Is it a boy or a girl?



it 常用于指代时间、距离、自然现象等。例如:

It's six now.

It's five miles to the nearest hospital from here.

It was very warm in the room.

it 还可以用于固定习语之中:

walk it 步行      come it 尽自己分内

make it 办成      come it strong 做得过分

take it out of sb.      拿某人出气

7. 第三人称复数 they (不分性别) 代表已提到过的一些人或事物。例如:

John and Susan phoned. They're coming round this evening.

Our curtains look dirty. They need washing.

they 也可以用于一般陈述, 泛指“人们”。例如:

They say that honesty is the best policy. (they 泛指人们)

they 常用于指“当局”等。例如:

They forced Marx to leave his homeland.

They 're putting up oil prices again soon.

### (三) 人称代词的句法功能

#### 1. 主格:

人称代词主格在句中作主语, 代替上文中提到过的人或物。例如:

Yang and his daughters are music lovers. They often go to the concert on weekends.

I can't read the letter. It is written in English.

当句中同时有几个人称代词出现时, 一般的次序是 you, he and I 排列 (2、3、1), 替代并列主语代词的代词如下: you and I → we/our, he/she and I → we/our, you and he/she → them/their, you, he/she and I → we/our, 例如:

He and I are to blame. It's our fault.

You and he must hand in your English compositions after class.

#### 2. 宾格:

(1) 作动词或介词宾语。例如:

I saw him in the street yesterday.

It's Betty's birthday today. We'll have a party for her.

(2) 作表语时一般用宾格。例如:

— Who's that?

— It's me.

“This is us.” said John.

但在 it 引导的强调结构中主语要用主格。例如:

It's I who did it.

It was she that found the pen.

(3) 在省略谓语的句子中的主语习惯用宾格。例如:

— “Do you have good eyesight, young man”?

— “Me?” asked the boy.



——I'd like to go back in here.

—— Me too.

(4) 在比较句子中可以用主格也可以用宾格。例如：

Simon is more careful than I/me .

但有时意义不同。例如：

I love Kate better than  $\begin{cases} \text{he.} & \text{我比他更喜欢 Kate.} \\ \text{him.} & \text{我喜欢 Kate 胜过喜欢他。} \end{cases}$



## 二、物主代词

### (一) 物主代词的形式

物主代词是表示所有关系的代词，也可称为代词属格。它分为形容词性物主代词和名词性物主代词两种。

1. 形容词性物主代词：

| 人称 \ 数 | 单数          | 复数    |
|--------|-------------|-------|
| 第一人称   | my          | our   |
| 第二人称   | your        | your  |
| 第三人称   | his/her/its | their |

2. 名词性物主代词：

| 人称 \ 数 | 单数           | 复数     |
|--------|--------------|--------|
| 第一人称   | mine         | ours   |
| 第二人称   | yours        | yours  |
| 第三人称   | his/hers/its | theirs |

### (二) 物主代词的含义

物主代词即人称代词属格，表示“所有”。与人称代词一样，也分第一人称、第二人称和第三人称，每个人称分单数和复数，第三人称单数还分阳性、阴性和中性。物主代词有形容词性物主代词和名词性物主代词两种。

1. 形容词性物主代词相当于形容词，置于名词之前。它们的人称、数和性取决于它们所指代的名词或代词。例如：

Mike had his leg broken when he was playing football.

Dear Jack, thank you for your congratulations.

2. 名词性物主代词相当于名词，不能用于名词之前，说话时要加重语气。它们的形式取决于它们所指代的名词或代词。例如：

That isn't my own car. Mine is being repaired.



Their classroom is larger than ours .

### (三) 物主代词的句法功能

#### 1. 形容词性物主代词的句法功能:

形容词性物主代词在句中只能作定语, 并可与形容词 own 连用表示强调。

(1) 作定语。例如:

His native language is English.

Everyone must do his work well.

Their ideas had changed.

(2) 与 own 连用表示强调。例如:

I saw it with my own eyes.

Mind your own business!

**注意:** one's own 可以和 of 连用。例如:

They had no children of their own .

I have nothing of my own .

#### 2. 名词性物主代词的句法功能:

名词性物主代词在句中可用作主语、动词宾语、介词宾语和表语等。

(1) 用作主语(多用于正式文体)。例如:

John's office is on the ground floor, but mine (=my office) is on the third floor.

Hers is a pretty colourless life.

(2) 用作动词宾语。例如:

I have broken my pencil. Please give me yours .

He cooks his own meals and hers .

(3) 用作介词宾语。例如:

Her son is rather stupid, but both of yours are very clever.

She would shut herself up in her room, her husband in his .

(4) 用作表语。例如:

He knew that the house was hers .

This garden is ours .

(5) 用作礼貌用语。例如:

A Happy New Year to you and yours from me and mine .

Yours sincerely/truly/faithfully.

(书信落款的英国用法, 美国多将 yours 放在 sincerely 之后)

名词性物主代词常用于双重所有格。例如:

He's a friend of mine . (表部分概念)

Look at that big nose of his . (带有感情色彩)

### 三、指示代词

#### (一) 指示代词的形式

指示代词是用来指示或标识人或事物的代词。它们主要有:



|    | 单数   | 复数    |
|----|------|-------|
| 近指 | this | these |
| 远指 | that | those |

其他还有：such, same, so, it (指人) 等。

## (二) 指示代词的含义

1. 指示代词与定冠词和人称代词一样，都具有特指的含义。它们所指的对象取决于说话者和听话者共同熟悉的语境。例如：

This story is more interesting than that one.

I like this movie today better than that concert last night.

2. 指示代词与物主代词相似，具有名词和形容词的性质，在句中相当于名词（可以作主语、宾语、补语），又相当于形容词（可以作定语）。例如：

I don't like this.

Do you know these students?

3. 指示代词在句中相当于名词时一般常用来指物而不指人。但在句中作主语时，则指人或指物均可。例如：

I found this purse.

What are these?

This is Kate. Is that Mary?

4. 指示代词在句中用作先行词，后跟定语从句，指人时只能用复数，即 those + who 结构。例如：

Those who want to see the film, please raise your hands.

Those who break the law will be punished.

如是单数则需改用 anyone who 或 the person who 结构。例如：

Anyone who wants to see the film, please raise your hand.

5. 指示代词在句中相当于形容词时，其单数形式既可用于可数名词，又可用于不可数名词。例如：

That book is very useful.

This milk has gone sour.

## (三) 指示代词的句法功能

指示代词在句中可作主语、宾语、表语或定语等。

1. 用作主语。例如：

Who's that speaking? (打电话用语)

These are my books.

2. 用作宾语。例如：

How do you like these?

He would do that.

3. 用作表语。例如：

Oh, it's not that.

My meaning is this.



4. 用作定语。例如:

I like those flowers.

This book is about Chinese cook.

5. this 和 that 有时可用作状语, 表示程度, 意指“这么”和“那么”词性相当于副词。

例如:

Can hard work change a person that much? (that=so)

The book is about this thick.

#### (四) this (these) 与 that (those) 的用法

1. 指空间的远近。例如:

This is a map of China. That is a map of the world.

This way, please.

2. 指时间的前后。例如:

Life was hard in those days.

Life is much easier in these days.

3. 指叙述事物的前后, that 指前, this 指后。例如:

Let's meet at five o'clock. That ought to give you time to buy everything.

Virtue and vice are before you; this leads to misery, that to peace. (this 指 vice, that 指 virtue).

4. 用于一些固定习语之中。例如:

Do it like this. (肯定句用 this)

Don't talk to your mother like that. (否定句用 that)

When the old friends met, they would talk about this and that.

That's all right.

More than that. “更重要的是”。

So that's that. “就是这样”。

#### (五) such 的用法

指示代词 such 意思是“这样”, 具有名词和形容词的性质, 在句中可用作主语、宾语、补语、定语等。

1. 用作主语。例如:

Such is life.

2. 用作宾语。例如:

Take from the case such as you need.

3. 用作表语(常与 as 和 that 从句连用)。例如:

The flowers were such as I never saw before.

The book is not such that I want to buy.

4. 用作宾补。例如:

If you are a man, show yourself such.

5. 用作定语。例如:

I have never seen such cities before.



Such men usually succeed.

注意如 such 修饰单数名词，可与不定冠词连用，并且必须放在不定冠词之前。例如：

He's such a clever boy that everyone likes him.

If I were you, I would not have said such a thing about her.

6. 常与 as 或 that 连用。例如：

I like fruit, such as apples, pears, bananas etc.. (such as 用来列举)

Such books as these are rare.

=Books such as these are rare.

He shut the window with such force that the glass broke.

注意 such 后的 as 是关系代词，而 that 是连词。试比较下面两个句子：

Here is such a big stone that no one can lift it. (that 从句是状语从句，必须有 it)

Here is such a big stone as no one can lift. (as 从句是定语从句，stone 是先行词，故不能有 it)

## (六) same 的用法

指示代词 same 意思“同样的”，具有名词和形容词的性质，永远要和定冠词 the 连用。在句中可用作主语、宾语、表语、定语、状语等。

1. 用作主语。例如：

The same is the case with me.

2. 用作宾语。例如：

We must all say the same.

3. 用作表语。例如：

It's all the same to me.

4. 用作定语。例如：

We're in the same class.

5. 用作状语。例如：

Thank you all the same.

6. 常与 that 或 as 连用。例如：

The school is not the same one as it was ten years ago.

I live in the same district that he lives in. (此处 that 可用 as 代之)。

I live in the same district that he lives. (此处 that 不可用 as 代之)。

## (七) so 的用法

1. so 常用作宾语和表语。例如：

I will write today.

Do so. (宾语)

Be it so. (表语)

2. so (不用 it) 与某些动词连用

(1) 在肯定答语中，某些动词后面通常用 so (从不用 it)，以避免重复整个从句。这些动词有：believe, expect, fear, guess, hope, say, imagine, suppose, tell someone, think, I'm afraid, It seems/appears, 等。例如：

——Is it true that Jerry has a heart attack?



——I'm afraid so /I believe so /I think so /It seems so .

(2) 在否定答语中, not 可以直接跟在 be afraid, believe, expect, fear, guess, hope, imagine, suppose, think, It seems/appears 之后。例如:

——Has Anne got into university?

——I'm afraid not /I believe not /I think not /It seems not .

believe, expect, imagine, say, suppose 及 think 等动词也可用 not... so.

I don't think so /I don't believe so /I don't imagine so /I don't suppose so .

(3) 在简短的答语中, so 可以放在主语之前。例如:

——The stock market share-index has risen sharply.

——So I believe/gather/hear/notice/see/understand.

(4) 与 say, tell, seem, appear 等词连用。例如:

So you said.

So he told me.

So it seems.

So it appears.

3. 在某些动词后用 so 或 it:

(1) 当 do 代替一个已经用过的动词, 并且所表达的是一个已经完成了的行为时, 其后可用 so, 也可用 it。例如:

——Please lay the table.

——I've just done so /I've just done it .

(2) 在 guess, know, remember 等动词之后, 可以用 it, 也可以省略。例如:

——Jack and Jill were secretly married.

——Yes, I know . I had guessed .

(I know it, I had guessed it.)

#### 四、不定代词

##### (一) 不定代词的含义和种类

不指明代替任何特定名词或形容词的代词叫不定代词。不定代词表示各种程度和各种类型的否定意义。不定代词可分为:

###### 1. 普通不定代词

(1) some, any, no.

(2) somebody, anybody, nobody, someone, anyone, no one, something, anything, nothing.

(3) one, none.

###### 2. 个体不定代词

(1) all, every, each, other, another, either, neither, both, half.

(2) everybody, everyone, everything.

###### 3. 数量代词

many, much, few, little, a few, a little, a lot of, lots of, a great deal of, a great many.



## (二) 主要不定代词的用法

### 1. some, any 的用法:

(1) some, any 同复数名词连用, 意思“某一数目”, 同不可数名词连用时则表示“某一数量”。例如:

—Have we any lemons?

—Yes, we have some.

We haven't any coffee. Have some tea.

some/any 可单独使用, 也可同名词或 of 连用。例如:

Did any of you buy milk?

Some of it is sour.

(2) some 用于下列情况:

①用于肯定句, 例如:

He asked me some questions.

②用在预期答案是肯定的疑问句中。例如:

Were some of you late? I expect you were.

③用于提议和询问中。例如:

Will you have some tea?

Could you give me some information?

(3) any 用于下列情况:

①用于否定句, 例如:

I haven't any money.

②用于疑问句, 例如:

Do any of these buses go to Victoria?

③同含否定意思的副词 hardly, scarcely, seldom, rarely, never 连用。例如:

The man rarely writes to any of friends.

He speaks hardly any French.

④用于条件从句和 whether 或 if 引导的宾语从句中。例如:

Go over your paper for mistakes. If there are any, underline them.

He asked me whether I had any trouble in learning English.

(4) some/any 也可同单数可数名词连用, 这时 some 意为“某个”, 而 any 则意为“任何的”。例如:

Some kind person sent me these flowers.

(I don't know who)

Any bus from here will take you to the station.

### 2. no 的用法:

不定代词 no 只有形容词性质, 在句中作定语。no 表示否定, 意为“没有”、“不是”, 可修饰可数名词单数、可数名词复数和不可数名词。

(1) 用于 there is (are), have, have got 之后, 等于 not any。例如:

There is no letters for you today.

= There is not any letters for you today.



I have no home.

(2) 用于连系动词之后, 等于 not a。例如:

The girl is no beauty.

= The girl is not a beauty.

He's no friend of mine.

(3) 用于其他动词之后。例如:

make no answer

expect no sympathy

take no part in

(4) 用于警告、命令等标识。例如:

No smoking!

No parking!

No spitting!

3. one 的用法:

不定代词 one 指代可数名词, 既可指人, 又可指物。one 具有名词和形容词性质, 在句中可用作主语、宾语、定语等。用作名词时, 有复数形式 ones 和所有格形式 one's, 而且有相应的反身代词 oneself, 用作形容词时形式无变化。

(1) 相当于名词, 泛指“人们”、“一个人”、“任何人”, 没有修饰语。例如:

One can't be too careful.

One should do one's best at all times.

One can teach oneself English.

(2) 用于与 the other, another 表示对比, 在这种情况下有数的含义。例如:

I have two brothers. One is a teacher and the other is a officer.

One man's meat is another's poison.

(3) 代替前面出现过的单数可数名词, 如是复数, 用 ones, 指人指物均可。例如:

This classroom is larger than that one.

I haven't a pen, can you lend me one?

I prefer red roses to white ones.

**注意:** one 不能直接同 a 连用, 但 a 之后有形容词时则可。例如:

That's not our car. Ours is a blue one.

4. each, both, all 的用法:

不定代词 each, both, all 可在句中作主语、宾语和同位语。

(1) each 可以用来表示两个或两个以上的人或事物, 它与 every 相似, 但 every 不用来表示很小的数目。例如:

There are two volumes. Each (volume) costs £15.

each 可以单独使用, 也可以与单数名词或 of 短语连用。例如:

Each student contributed to the found.

Each of them told a different story.

we each 可代替 each of us (作主语)。us each 可代替 each of us (作间接宾语)。例如:

Each of us has a map. (谓语动词单数)



We each have maps. (谓语动词复数)

(2) both 用来表示“两个都”，可用于人或事物，其谓语用复数。both 可单独使用，也可同复数名词连用。例如：

There are two doors. Both are open. / Both doors are open.

另外，both 也可以同 of+us/you/them/mine/yours 等连用。例如：

Both of them are open. Both these doors are open.

Both 与否定词连用时通常表示部分否定，意为“并非两者都……”。若要表示全部否定，则要用 neither。例如：

Both of the boys don't like English. (一人喜欢而另一个不喜欢。)

Neither of the boys like English. (两个男孩都不喜欢。)

(3) all 同复数名词连用，谓语动词用复数形式，也可以同不可数名词连用，谓语动词用单数形式。例如：

All the men are on strike.

All the luggage is in the car.

all 可以单独使用，也可以同名词或者 of+it/us/you/them 连用，还可以同 (of) this/these/that/those/mine/yours 连用。例如：

All of it was lost.

Do you want all (of) these?

all 与否定词连用通常表示部分否定，意为“并非所有都……”，若要表示全部否定，则要用 none。例如：

Not all the ants go out for food.

All the ants don't go out for food.

(一部分出去，一部分不出去)

None of them is/are right. (没有一个人对，全错)

(4) each, both, all 用作同位语时，它们的位置应在实义动词之前，be 动词或助动词之后。但是用在疑问句和简短回答中的情况例外：

We all caught the bus.

We are all here.

You have both seen him.

—Have you all paid?

—Yes, we all have.

5. either, neither 的用法：

(1) either 意为“两者中的任何一个”，either 用作主语时，谓语动词用单数，它既可以单独使用，也可同一个单数名词或 of 短语连用。例如：

Either of the plans is equally dangerous.

He could write with either hand.

—Which of the two rooms would you like, sir?

—Oh, either, I don't care.

(2) neither 同 either 用法相同，意义相反“两者都不”，neither 用作主语时，谓语动词用单数。例如：



Two buses came. Neither was the one I wanted.

It was a disappointed match. Neither team played well.

Neither of the boys went.

6. no one, none 的用法:

none 和 no 都为否定意义。但 none 只有名词性用法(后面不可跟名词), 而 no 则只有形容词性用法(后面必须跟名词—单数或复数名词)。

如: None of the milk can be taken away.

No milk can be taken away.

no one “没有人”, 只能指人; none “没有一个”, 既可指人, 也可指物。none 后接 of 引起的短语特指“某些人或某些物中没有一个”。例如:

There was no one in the garden.

None of them speak(s) English well.

He took care that none of those books got dirty.

none 也可以用于不可数名词, 表示“一点也没有”。例如:

She has none of her mother's beauty.

It's none of your business.

none but 意为“只有”。例如:

None but John is fit for the post.

注意下列问题的简略回答:

——Who is in the hall?

——No one / Nobody .

——What is there in the box?

——Nothing .

——How much oil is there in the tank?

——None .

——How many pupils are there in the room?

——None .

7. every 的用法:

every 只有形容词性质, 在句中作定语。常修饰单数可数名词。述说对象  $\geq 3$  (each  $\geq 2$ )。every 还可构成复合代词 everyone, everybody, everything。

(1) 修饰单数可数名词, 意为“各个”、“每个”。例如:

She knew by heart every word in her letter.

Every time I ring you up, I find you engaged.

(2) everyone 和 everybody 只有名词性质, 指人, 二者同义, 意为“每人”, 表示单数。但可用复数形式物主代词 they, them, their 指代。例如:

“Everyone is ready, aren't they?” he said looking at the people around.

(3) everyone 只能指人, 而 every one 既可指人, 又可指物。例如:

Everyone of us will be present.

We played several matches against the visitors, but unfortunately lost every one .



(4) everything 只有名词性质，指物，表单数，没有属格。例如：

Everything goes well with me.

Money isn't everything .

(5) every 与否定词连用，表示部分否定，意为“并非每个都……”。例如：

Not everyone likes English.

Everything isn't all right.

8. another, other (s) 的用法：

(1) another:

①another 指三个以上不定数目中的“另一个”、“类似的一个”。例如：

Making a promise is one thing and keeping it is another .

I'm afraid the coat is too tight. Would you show me another ?

②another 的复数形式是 some/any others 或 some/any more。例如：

I don't like the colour of the shirt. Show me another. (单数)

{ These trousers are too large. Show me some others. (复数)

{ Having eaten a cake, Oliver asked for another.

{ The cookies tasted nice, so Oliver asked for some more.

③another 同数词连用时，要放在数词之前。例如：

We'll see each other in another ten years.

(2) other 作不定代词有三种形式：others (别人，别物)，the others (其他人，其他物)，the other (两者之中的另一个)。例如：

Children grow quickly in some ways but slowly in others . (别的方面，指物)

We should think more of others . (别人)

We got home at six, but the others didn't get back until ten o'clock. (特指其他人)

(3) the other 作为代词时，指“两者之中的另一个”，the other 作为形容词时，其后可跟单数、复数名词，并且 the other + 复数名词就等于 the others。例如：

the other book, the other books.

One twin was dark, the other was fair.

One boy read a book. The others (The other boys) played.

9. few, a few; little, a little 的用法：

这是一对用作表数量的不定代词的固定词组，它们具有名词和形容词性质。可用作主语、宾语、定语等。

|        |          |                  |
|--------|----------|------------------|
| few    | a few    | 修饰或代替可数名词        |
| little | a little | 修饰或代替不可数名词       |
| 意思否定   | 意思肯定     | 否定→没有多少 肯定→少数、少量 |

例如：Many a little makes a mistake.

Only a few of the children can read.

A few birds can be seen in that woods.

She had a little conversation with Anne.

Few words are best.



There is little change in his appearance.

**注意:** (1) not 和 a little 搭配, 意为“very, very much”。例如:

You haven't change a little. (变化大)

而 You haven't change a bit. (一点没变)

(2) few 可有比较级 fewer, 最高级 fewest, little 可有比较级 less, 最高级 least。例如:

Who made the fewest mistakes?

The more haste, the less speed.

Least talk, most work.

10. many, much 的用法:

many 和 much 具有名词和形容词性质, 在句中可用作主语, 宾语, 定语等。意为“许多”、“大量”。many 代替或修饰可数名词, much 代替或修饰不可数名词。例如:

Do you know many people in Beijing?

Did you have much rain of your holidays?

Much research has been done on this subject and much has been discovered.

**注意:** (1) much, many 在用来作定语时, 在日常英语中, 则用 a lot of, lots of, plenty of, a great deal of, a large number of, a good many, a great many 等来代替。

(2) many 和 much 有共同的比较级 more 和最高级形式 most。例如:

I found more letters lying on his desk today.

He made more progress than I had expected.

Most of his relatives lived in the country.

Most of his money came from selling his landscapes.

11. something, anything, everything 和 nothing 的用法:

(1) 只具备名词性质, 可用来作主语, 宾语等。

(2) anything 多用于否定句, 疑问句及条件从句, something 多用于肯定句。例如:

Is there anything in the paper?

There is something wrong with my car.

(3) 只指物, 不能指人。没有所属格, 修饰这 4 个及其他复合不定代词的形容词应放在其及其他不定代词之后。例如:

There is nothing new in the book.

Somebody important has arrived. I'm sure.

12. anybody, somebody, nobody 和 everybody 的用法:

(1) 这几个复合词只用于指人, 形式上是单数, 但可用复数形式代词 they 或 them 指代。例如:

Did you meet anybody on your way home?

Somebody must have been using my books.

(2) 所有格 's 形式。例如:

There is somebody's glove on the floor.

Everybody's business is nobody's business.

(3) anyone, someone, no one, everyone 与 anybody, somebody, nobody, everybody 的功能和意义完全相同, 可以互换。不过, 前者侧重个体, 后者侧重集体。例如:



Somebody is sure to get interested in the job. (=some people, one or more persons)

This is a letter from someone interested in the job. (=some person, one person)

## 五、疑问代词

### (一) 疑问代词的形式和含义

疑问代词有 who (谁, 主格), whom (谁, 宾格), whose (谁的, 所有格), what (什么), which (哪个, 哪些) 等。其中 who, whom, whose 只指人, what 和 which 可指人又可指物。

疑问代词引导的疑问句叫特殊疑问句, 它们在句中担任某一成分 (如主语、宾语、表语等), 疑问代词 who, what, which 后可加 ever 以加强语气。例如:

Whoever are you looking for?

Whatever do you mean?

Whichever do you want?

### (二) 疑问代词的用法

#### 1. who, whom 的用法:

who, whom 指人, 只有名词性质, who 是主格, whom 是宾格, 常用于书面语。在口语中一般都用 who。例如:

Who told you so?

Whom are you talking about?

Who/Whom did you meet there?

——You'd better write a letter.

——To who/whom?

#### 2. whose 的用法:

whose 是属格, 有名词和形容词性质, 但形式不变。例如:

Whose car is this? (作定语)

Whose is this car? (作表语)

#### 3. what, which 的用法:

what 指物, 无范围限制, 侧重于种类。除指人与物外, 还可表时间、数量, 人口, 年龄等。例如:

——What is she?

——She's a teacher.

——What would you like to have for supper?

——Meat, beef, fish and tomatoes.

What/How much does a new evening dress cost?

——We have meat, beef, and tomatoes. Which would you like to have for supper?

——Beef, I think.

Which of them will play the part of Hamlet in the play?

## 六、关系代词

关系代词有 who, whose, whom, that, which, as, 可用作引导定语从句的关系词。它



们在定语从句中可作主语、表语、宾语、定语等；另一方面它们又代表定语从句所修饰的那个名词或代词（通常叫先行词）。例如：

Those who want to see the film, please let me know. (关系代词 who 在从句中指人，作主语，它的先行词是 those).

The girl whose father is an engineer will come to see you tonight.  
(whose 在从句中作定语，先行词为 the girl).

He's the man whom you have been looking for. (whom 在从句中作宾语，它的先行词是 man, whom 在口语中一般可省略)

A plane is a machine that / which can fly. (that/which 在定语从句中作主语，先行词为 machine).

She's not such a man as would leave her work half-done.  
(as 在从句中作主语，先行词为 man)

The school is not the same one as it used to be.  
(as 在从句中作表语，先行词为 one)

 **七、反身代词**

**(一) 反身代词的形式**

反身代词是一种表示反射或强调的代词。它由第一人称、第二人称形容词性物主代词和第三人称代词宾格，加词尾-self 或-selves 构成。

| 人 称 \ 数 | 单 数                          | 复 数        |
|---------|------------------------------|------------|
| 第一人称    | myself                       | ourselves  |
| 第二人称    | yourself                     | yourselves |
| 第三人称    | himself<br>herself<br>itself | themselves |

**(二) 反身代词的句法功能**

1. 作动词宾语。例如：

At the age of twelve, he began to teach himself maths.

She helped herself to the fruit on the table.

一些动词常和反身代词搭配使用。例如：

- |                   |                 |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| devote oneself to | seat oneself    |
| find oneself      | dress oneself   |
| enjoy oneself     | express oneself |
| call oneself      | behave oneself  |

2. 作介词宾语。例如：

The girl looked at herself in the mirror, enjoying her new dress.



He thought of others instead of himself .

3. 作同位语 (以强调主语或宾语)。例如:

You should wash your clothes yourself .

The book itself is good, but it isn't suitable for students.

4. 用于固定习语之中。例如:

Between ourselves , I did it. (私下说)

We did the experiment all by ourselves . (独自)

You're free to decide for yourself whom you are going out with. (亲自)

The lamp went out of itself . (自动)

I can tell you that, but you must keep it to yourself . (独享, 专有)

She is beside herself with anger. (发狂)

He is not bad in himself but he's so weak-minded. (本质上)

## 八、相互代词

### (一) 相互代词的形式

相互代词是表示相互关系的代词。它们的形式如下:

| 宾格          | 所有格           |
|-------------|---------------|
| each other  | each other's  |
| one another | one another's |

### (二) 相互代词的句法功能

相互代词在句中可用作宾语和定语。例如:

You and I understand each other perfectly. (作宾语)

They have been separated one another for a long time. (作宾语)

They looked into each other's eyes for a silent moment. (作定语)

在当代英语中, each other 和 one another 在用法上没有区别。传统语法中指二者时用 each other, 指二者以上时用 one another。现在一般认为 each other 多用于非正式文体, 而 one another 则多用于较正式文体。

代词还有连接代词 (who, that, what 等), 对于连接代词的用法, 将在以后的句法中讨论, 本章暂不介绍。

### 例题解析

例 1. —Who can take me there?

—\_\_\_\_\_ .

A. I

B. My

C. Mine

D. Me

解析: 人称代词孤立地做单成分的主语时, 常用宾格形式。故本题答案为 D。

例 2. My idea is \_\_\_\_\_ , and let me tell you about \_\_\_\_\_ .

A. this; it

B. that; this

C. it; this

D. this; that



**解析：**this 表近指，that 表远指，it 指代 this, the idea 的内容。在本题中，this 代表下面要说的话，而 that 往往指上文的内容。例如：

We had no trouble in doing this.

That's why I can come to you now.

根据以上内容，本题答案为 A。

**例 3.** I can't express \_\_\_\_\_ in Chinese, while you can.

- A. me                      B. my                      C. myself                      D. mine

**解析：**考查反身代词。在英语中，有一些动词常和反身代词搭配使用。例如：express oneself, devote oneself to, seat oneself, dress oneself, enjoy oneself, call oneself, believe oneself 等，故本题答案为 C。

**例 4.** You can not finish the work all \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. by yourself                      B. for yourself  
C. to yourself                      D. of yourself

**解析：**考查反身代词的固定习语用法

(all) by oneself 是“独立无助”，for oneself 是“给自己、靠自己、亲自”，to oneself 是“独享专有”，of oneself 是“自动，自然而然地”，beside oneself 是“发狂，精神失常”；in oneself 是“本身，本质上”，还有 between oneself “私下说，保密”，根据以上内容，本题答案为 A。

**例 5.** He loves reading, but I don't know \_\_\_\_\_ book he likes best.

- A. which                      B. what                      C. such                      D. much

**解析：**which 无论指人，还是指物，都有范围限制，侧重于哪一个，且有选择的含义，故 A 项可排除掉。what 指物时无范围限制，侧重于种类。故根据句意，答案应为 B。C 项 such 能修饰名词，但不能引导从句。D 项 much 修饰不可数名词，不能修饰可数名词 book。

## 自我测试

- \_\_\_\_\_ of his two sisters is good at dancing.  
A. Any                      B. Both                      C. Either                      D. All
- Besides the headmaster, is there \_\_\_\_\_ in the office?  
A. anyone still                      B. anyone other                      C. anyone else                      D. any else one
- \_\_\_\_\_ are good friends and should help each other.  
A. I, you and he                      B. You, he and I  
C. He, you and I                      D. You, I and he
- \_\_\_\_\_ is good manners for you to knock at the door before you enter the teachers' office.  
A. This                      B. That                      C. It                      D. Such
- \_\_\_\_\_ of your two \_\_\_\_\_ right.  
A. All; are                      B. None; is                      C. Both; is                      D. Neither; is



6. Here are two storybooks. You may have \_\_\_\_\_ of them and give \_\_\_\_\_ to White.
- A. one; another                      B. either; the other  
C. either; another                  D. all; one
7. Shortly afterwards, the police arrived and \_\_\_\_\_ surrounded the house.
- A. he                      B. she                      C. it                      D. they
8. Bill is cleverer than \_\_\_\_\_ in his class.
- A. anybody              B. anybody else        C. somebody            D. somebody else
9. They are talking \_\_\_\_\_ .
- A. each other          B. one another        C. one to another      D. to each other
10. They want to make \_\_\_\_\_ clear whether they are doing an important and necessary job or not.
- A. this                  B. that                  C. it                      D. its
11. Neither \_\_\_\_\_ nor \_\_\_\_\_ liked the idea of going on foot.
- A. him; me              B. her; we              C. I; them              D. she; I
12. The apples on the table belong to me, but the \_\_\_\_\_ on the floor belong to Mary.
- A. thing                  B. one                    C. ones                  D. one's
13. \_\_\_\_\_ in our school like playing badminton.
- A. Most of students        B. The most students  
C. The most of students     D. Most of the students
14. Won't you come in and have \_\_\_\_\_ beer?
- A. little                  B. few                    C. a little                D. a few
15. This article is easy to understand though there are \_\_\_\_\_ new words in it.
- A. few                    B. little                  C. a few                  D. a little
16. The students are standing on \_\_\_\_ sides of the playground.
- A. either                  B. all                      C. each                    D. both
17. The twins are very alike. I can't tell \_\_\_\_\_ from the \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. them; one              B. one; another        C. another; one        D. one; other
18. I didn't have \_\_\_\_\_ to say, so I said \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. something; anything      B. anything; something  
C. anything; nothing        D. nothing; anything
19. \_\_\_\_\_ bike is cheaper than \_\_\_\_\_ but my \_\_\_\_\_ is even cheaper than \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. My; her; brother; mine    B. My; hers; brother's; mine  
C. Mine; hers; brother; mine    D. Mine; herself; brother; myself
20. Only \_\_\_\_\_ people in their office can speak \_\_\_\_\_ English.
- A. a few; a few              B. a few; a little  
C. a little; few              D. few; little



## 第六章 It 的用法



（参见视频 2-6-1）

### 考试要点

1. It 作引导词。
2. It 作代词。
3. It 在强调句型中的用法。

### 复习内容

#### 一、it 作引导词

##### （一）引导词 it 作形式主语

动词不定式、动名词或从句在句中起主语作用，当这一部分用词较多时，it 可用作形式主语，放在句首，代表其后事实上真正的主语。把真正的主语放在后面，会使句子显得平稳一些，也就是说是为了平衡句子，避免头重脚轻。

1. it 作形式主语，动词不定式作真正的主语，常用于下列句式中：

(1) It+be+名词+(for sb.)+to do sth. 例如：

It is our duty to help others.

it 是形式主语，不定式 to help others 是真正的主语。

It is a good habit to do morning exercises.

it 是形式主语，不定式 to do morning exercises 是真正的主语。

It is a good manner for the young to respect the old.

在这一句型中，it 是形式上的主语，真正的主语是不定式复合结构 for sb. to do sth.。当不定式的复合结构在句中作主语时，为了避免头重脚轻，往往把 it 作形式主语，而把真正的主语放在后面。

(2) It+be+形容词+(for sb.)+to do sth. 例如：

It is important to do proper memory work in the study of a foreign language.

it 是形式主语，不定式 to do proper memory work in the study of a foreign language 是真正的主语。

It is not easy to climb a mountain.

it 是形式主语，不定式 to climb a mountain 是真正的主语。

It is very necessary for us to learn English well.

it 是形式主语，不定式复合结构 for us to learn English well 是真正的主语。

It was impossible for women to get a job.

it 是形式主语，不定式的复合结构 for women to get a job 是真正的主语。



(3) It is+形容词+of sb. +to do sth. 例如:

It is very kind of you to help me with my English.

it 作形式主语, 不定式的复合结构 of you to help me with my English 是真正的主语。

It is wrong of other children to make fun of you.

it 作形式主语, 不定式的复合结构 of other children to make fun of you 是真正的主语。

一般地, 当句中有下列形容词, 如 kind, nice, wise, clever, bright, wrong, impolite, foolish, stupid, silly, careless, cruel 等表示品质的词时, 用此结构, 即 “It is+形容词+of sb. +to do sth.” 有其他形容词时用 “It is+形容词+for sb. +to do sth.” 句型。例如:

It was clever of the boy to find the answer in just a few minutes.

It was foolish of him to buy such an expensive pen.

上面两句都是 it 作形式主语, 不定式复合结构 of sb. to do sth. 是真正的主语。

请看下面两句:

It is difficult for us to master English in the shortest time.

It is not easy for us to finish the work in two days.

这两句都是 it 作形式主语, 不定式复合结构 for sb. to do sth. 是真正的主语。

(4) It takes sb. +some time+to do sth. 例如:

It took me two hours to finish the housework.

it 作形式主语, 真正的主语是不定式 to finish the housework.

How long did it take you to finish your homework?

it 作形式主语, 真正的主语是不定式 to finish your homework.

(5) It seems (appears) +形容词+to do sth. 例如:

It seemed impossible to get there in time.

It seemed good for him to do so.

it 作形式主语, 不定式作真正主语。

2. it 作形式主语, 动名词作真正的主语。常用于下列句式中:

(1) It is+no good (no use, useless, fun, a pleasure, a waste of time) +doing sth. 例如:

It is no use talking about him.

it 作形式主语, 动名词 talking about him 是真正的主语。

It is no good talking without doing anything.

it 作形式主语, 动名词 talking without doing anything 是真正的主语。

It is useless arguing with a silly boy.

it 作形式主语, 动名词 arguing with a silly boy 是真正的主语。

It is a waste of time doing such a thing.

it 作形式主语, 动名词 doing such a thing 是真正的主语。

(2) It's+形容词+doing. 例如:

It's dangerous sailing in the sea in windy days.

it 作形式主语, 动名词 sailing in the sea in windy days 是真正的主语。

It is dangerous playing with fire.

it 作形式主语, 动名词 playing with fire 是真正的主语。

3. it 作形式主语, 以 that 引导的从句是真正的主语。常用句型有:

(1) It+be+形容词 (或过去分词) +that 从句。例如:

It is certain that we shall succeed.



it 作形式主语, 从句 that we shall succeed 是真正的主语。

It is strange that nobody knows where he lives.

it 作形式主语, 以 that 引导的从句是真正的主语。

It is said that they have arrived in Beijing.

it 作形式主语, 以 that 引导的从句是真正的主语。适用于此类句式结构的还有: It's reported (据报道) / It's thought (据认为) / It's believed (据信) / It's well known (据众所周知) / It's said (据说) ……例如:

It was believed that he found the peace in music which was missing in a world full of wars and killings.

it 作形式主语, that 从句是真正的主语。

It's reported that the artist will go to visit the U. S. A..

it 作形式主语, 以 that 引导的从句是真正的主语。

(2) It + be + 名词词组 + that 从句。例如:

It is a pity that you didn't read the book.

it 是形式主语, 从句 that you didn't read the book 是真正的主语。

It is a shame that you tell a lie.

it 是形式主语, 从句 that you tell a lie 是真正的主语。

(3) It + seems / happens (等不及物动词) + that 从句。例如:

It seems that it's more difficult for women to get to the top of a company.

It seems + that 从句, “好像……” “看来……” “似乎……” 其中 it 是形式主语, 真正的主语是 that 引导的主语从句。

It seems that she is right.

it 是形式主语, that she is right 是真正的主语。

It happened that I wasn't there that day.

it 是形式主语, that I wasn't there that day 是真正的主语。

4. it 用于强调结构 (以强调某一句子成分)。例如:

It was John that passed the final examination.

## (二) 引导词 it 作形式宾语

当复合宾语中的宾语是不定式、动名词、宾语从句时, 往往把宾语放在它的补足语后面, 而用 it 作形式宾语, 放在宾语补足语之前。真正的宾语是不定式, 动名词或以 that 引导的从句。

1. it 作形式宾语, 不定式 (短语) 是真正的宾语。

在这种用法中, 形式宾语 it 的结构是: find/think/feel/consider 等 + it + adj. /n. + 不定式短语。意思是 “发现/认为/觉得做某事……”。例如:

He found it important to study the situation in Russia.

句中 found 后跟有一个复合宾语 (宾语 it + 宾语补足语 important)。it 是形式上的宾语, 真正的宾语是后面的不定式短语 to study the situation in Russia.

Do you feel it difficult to understand the BBC news broadcast?

it 是形式宾语, to understand the BBC news broadcast 是真正的宾语。

I think it necessary to practise speaking English every day.

it 是形式宾语, 不定式短语 to practise speaking English every day 是真正的宾语。

She considered it a waste of money to buy the bigger computer.

it 是形式宾语, 不定式 to buy the bigger computer 是真正的宾语。



2. it 作形式宾语，动名词（短语）是真正的宾语。例如：

We feel it dangerous driving so fast.

it 是形式宾语，动名词 driving so fast 是真正的宾语。

I don't think it worthwhile going to such a place.

it 是形式宾语，going to such a place 是真正的宾语。

Do you consider it any good trying again?

it 是形式宾语，动名词 trying again 是真正的宾语。

She found it useless (no use) arguing with him.

it 是形式宾语，动名词短语 arguing with him 是真正的宾语。

3. it 作形式宾语，that 从句是真正的宾语。例如：

I think it a pity that you could not come.

it 作形式宾语，以 that 引导的从句 that you could not come 是真正的宾语，it 是 that 从句的先行宾语。

He wants to make it clear that he was not interested in this subject.

it 作形式宾语，从句 that he was not interested in this subject 是真正的宾语。

He doesn't want it to be known that he's going away.

it 作形式宾语，that he's going away 是真正的宾语。

## 二、it 作代词（人称代词、指示代词、非人称代词）

### （一）用作人称代词

1. 代替前面（或后面）的单数名词或分句所表示的含义。例如：

The book is not yours. It's mine. (it 代替前面的 book)

Although we can not see it, there is air all around us. (it 代替后面的 air)

Mrs White has found her son. Have you heard about it? (it 代替前面 Mrs White...son 分句中所叙述的情况)

2. 代替有生命但不必分阴阳性的东西，包括婴儿。例如：

Where's the cat? It's in the garden. (it 代替前面的 cat)

The baby smiled because it saw mother. (it 代替前面的 baby)

3. 在某些习惯用法中，可以代替人。例如：

—Who is knocking at the door? —It's me.

—Who are singing? —It is the children.

### （二）it 用作指示代词

用来代替指示代词 this, that. 例如：

—What's this? —It's a desk.

—What's that? —It's a pencil box.

### （三）it 用作非人称代词

it 作非人称代词时，一个特点是句中找不到它所代表的词语，另一个是它指代的内容都表示天气、时间、季节、距离及环境情况等。

1. 指季节、时间。例如：

—What time is it?

—It's half past five.



it 表示时间。

——What season is it?

——It's early spring.

it 表示季节。

2. 指天气。例如:

——What's the weather like today?

——It's fine (warm/cold/windy).

it 表示天气晴朗(温暖、寒冷、有风等)。

3. 指距离。例如:

It is ten kilometres.

It's about five minutes ride from here.

it 表示距离。

4. 指环境、情况。例如:

It was very quiet in the hall.

大厅里很安静。it 指环境。

It is dangerous here and everybody must leave.

情况很危险大家必须离开。it 指情况。

### 例题解析

例 1. \_\_\_\_\_ is a fact that English is being accepted as an international language.

- A. There                      B. This                      C. That                      D. It

解析: it 既可作代词, 又可作引导词, 还可作强调词。学生经常用错, 所以对它的用法必须全面掌握。在本句中, it 作引导词, 充当形式主语, 真正的主语是 that 引起的从句。答案为 D。

例 2. It was about 600 years ago \_\_\_\_\_ the first clock with a face and an hour hand was made.

- A. that                      B. until                      C. before                      D. when

解析: it 作强调词, 被强调部分是时间状语时, 不能用 when 或其他引导词, 只能用 that。答案为 A。

例 3. It \_\_\_\_\_ in 1970 that I studied in the school.

- A. were                      B. was                      C. is                      D. are

解析: 这是 It is (was)... that... 结构, 强调状语, 从原句谓语动词及时间状语看出是过去发生的事情, 则用 It was... that... 结构。答案为 B。

例 4. It \_\_\_\_\_ her that I often hear from.

- A. was                      B. is                      C. from                      D. ×

解析: 强调句型, 原句的现在时用 It is... that... 结构, 只有 B 项符合。答案为 B。

例 5. I have made \_\_\_\_\_ clear \_\_\_\_\_ I have nothing to do with the accident.

- A. it; who                      B. it; that                      C. this; who                      D. this; that

解析: 引导词 it 作形式宾语, 复合宾语中宾语是从句, 往往把宾语放在它的补足语后面, 而用 it 作形式宾语, 放在宾语补足语之前, 只有 B 项符合题意, 答案为 B。



## 自我测试

1. —Who is there? —Oh, \_\_\_\_\_ Xiao Wang.  
A. he is                      B. she is                      C. this                      D. it is
2. Is \_\_\_\_\_ necessary to tell his father everything?  
A. it                      B. that                      C. what                      D. he
3. Was it in this palace \_\_\_\_\_ the last emperor died?  
A. that                      B. in which                      C. in where                      D. which
4. Is \_\_\_\_\_ possible to fly to the moon in the spaceship?  
A. now                      B. man                      C. that                      D. it
5. Was it during the Second World War \_\_\_\_\_ he died?  
A. that                      B. while                      C. in which                      D. then
6. Is \_\_\_\_\_ necessary to complete the design before National Day?  
A. this                      B. that                      C. it                      D. he
7. I don't think \_\_\_\_\_ possible to master a foreign language without much memory work.  
A. this                      B. that                      C. its                      D. it
8. Does \_\_\_\_\_ matter if he can't finish the job on time?  
A. this                      B. that                      C. he                      D. it
9. It was not \_\_\_\_\_ she took off her dark glasses \_\_\_\_\_ I realized she was a famous film star.  
A. when; that                      B. until; that                      C. until; when                      D. when; then
10. Tom's mother kept telling him that he should work hard, but \_\_\_\_\_ didn't help.  
A. he                      B. which                      C. she                      D. it
11. I was disappointed with the film. I had expected \_\_\_\_\_ to be much better.  
A. that                      B. this                      C. one                      D. it
12. \_\_\_\_\_ is a fact that English is being accepted as an international language.  
A. There                      B. This                      C. That                      D. It
13. —Do you like the bike your father bought for you?  
—Very much. It's exactly \_\_\_\_\_ I wanted.  
A. itself                      B. one                      C. it                      D. the one
14. My watch is missing. I can't find \_\_\_\_\_ anywhere.  
A. one                      B. ones                      C. it                      D. that
15. \_\_\_\_\_ was not until yesterday that I received a letter from him.  
A. That                      B. I                      C. It                      D. There



## 第七章 数词的基本用法

### 考试要点

1. 基数词的构成及其基本用法。
2. 序数词的构成及其基本用法。
3. 加、减、乘、除运算表示法。
4. 时间、年代、年龄表示法。

### 复习内容

#### 一、基数词的构成及其基本用法

##### (一) 基数词的构成

在英语中，表示数目的词叫基数词。最基本的基数词如下表，所有其他数词都可以由这些构成：

| 1—12      | 13—19        | 20—90      | 百，千，百万，十亿        |
|-----------|--------------|------------|------------------|
| 1 one     | 13 thirteen  | 20 twenty  | 100              |
| 2 two     | 14 fourteen  | 30 thirty  | a hundred        |
| 3 three   | 15 fifteen   | 40 forty   | 1, 000           |
| 4 four    | 16 sixteen   | 50 fifty   | a thousand       |
| 5 five    | 17 seventeen | 60 sixty   | 1, 000, 000      |
| 6 six     | 18 eighteen  | 70 seventy | a million        |
| 7 seven   | 19 nineteen  | 80 eighty  | 1, 000, 000, 000 |
| 8 eight   |              | 90 ninety  | a billion        |
| 9 nine    |              |            |                  |
| 10 ten    |              |            |                  |
| 11 eleven |              |            |                  |
| 12 twelve |              |            |                  |

其他的基数词可以以下面的方式构成：

1. 21—99：先说“几十”，再说“几”，中间加连字符。例如：  
22 twenty-two      38 thirty-eight  
46 forty-six      56 fifty-six



2. 101—999: 先说“几百”, 再加 and, 再加后两位数 (或末位数)。例如:

224 two hundred and twenty-four

416 four hundred and sixteen

809 eight hundred and nine

3. 1, 000 以上的数: 先从后向前数, 每三位加上“,”。第一个逗号前为 thousand, 第二个逗号前为 million, 第三个逗号前为 billion (美) 或 thousand million (英), 然后一节一节表示。例如:

1, 007 one thousand and seven

3, 672 three thousand, six hundred and seventy-two

39, 586, 421 thirty-nine million, five hundred and eighty-six thousand, four hundred and twenty-one.

950, 000, 000 nine hundred and fifty million

5, 000, 000, 000 five billion 或 five thousand million

1, 000, 000, 000, 000 a (one) thousand billion

**注意:** 在上述数词中, hundred, thousand, billion, million 均用单数。

## (二) 基数词的基本用法

1. 基数词的句法功能:

(1) 作主语:

Seven is an odd number.

Three of the children are students.

(2) 作表语:

I'm nineteen.

Ten divided by two is five.

(3) 作宾语:

Give me two.

—How many do you want?

—Eight, please.

(4) 作定语:

There are five apples on the table.

We have six subjects this term.

(5) 作同位语:

We two have been to Shanghai.

Is there room for us three?

2. 基数词的用法:

(1) 表示事物的编号, 可用基数词:

Lesson Five 第五课

Bus NO. 33 33 路公共汽车

Row Six 第六排

Class Two, Grade One 一年级二班

Room 202 202 房间



the NO. 108 Middle School 一〇八中学

Telephone NO. 8828731 电话: 8828731

(2) 表示年代, 注意其读法:

1995 年 读法: nineteen ninety-five

1800 年 读法: eighteen hundred

2000 年 读法: two thousand 或 the year two thousand

20 世纪 70 年代 写法: the 1970's 或 the 1970s; 读法: the nineteen seventies.

(3) 表时间, 注意 to 与 past 的含义。

表示小时、点钟、分、秒用基数词:

5:00 five (o'clock)

7:05 five past seven

7:55 five to eight

(4) 表示“加、减、乘、除”:

$3+2=5$  Three plus two is five.

$5\times 6=30$  Five times six is thirty.

(5) 表示倍数, 即“比……大(或小)几倍”:

The dictionary is four times thicker than that book.

This house is twice as big as that one.

**注意:** 英语用 twice /double 表示两倍, 两倍以上用基数词加 times 表示。

(6) 表示“百分比”的说法: 基数词+percent

50% fifty percent

6% six percent

0.5% zero (o) point five percent

100% one hundred percent

200% two hundred percent

(7) 读分数词时, 分子数字用基数词, (分母数字用序数词), 带分数中的整数用基数词表示加 and 和分数词隔开。

$\frac{1}{3}$  one-third

$\frac{2}{3}$  two-thirds

$5\frac{2}{3}$  five and two-thirds

有些分数词可用 half, quarter 表示。如:

$\frac{1}{2}$  a half

$\frac{1}{4}$  a quarter

$\frac{3}{4}$  three quarters

(8) 读小数时, 数字只用基数词。

3.4 three point four

0.2 zero point two

3.25 three point two five

14.397 fourteen point three nine seven



603.09 six hundred and three point zero nine

(9) 基数词可以和名词构成合成形容词,但名词要用单数。如:

a one-million-pound note 一张百万英镑的票子

an eight-thousand-word article 8000 字的文章

a five-year-old boy 五岁的男孩

an 800-metre-long bridge 八百米长的桥

(10) 表年龄 “in one's+基数词的复数形式” 表示 “某人几十多岁”。例如:

in his late fifties 他快六十岁时

in her thirties 她三十几岁时

(11) hundred, thousand, million 表不确切数目时,用复数形式。例如:

hundreds of 成百上千的, thousands of 成千上万的, millions of 好几百万的, hundreds of thousands 数以十万计 (十万到九十万), hundreds of millions 成亿, millions 成百万

(12) 有些基数词可构成固定词组:

one by one 一个个

twos and threes 三三两两

(13) 其他几个与数目有关的词语的英语表达:

几个 several, a few

半打 half a dozen

一打 a dozen

十几 some dozen, a dozen or so

二十 a score

几十 dozens

几百 several hundred (s) / a few hundred

**注意:** dozen (一打, 十二个), 如: two dozen pencils, many/several dozen pencils; score (二十) 如: two score people, two score and ten people (50 人)。习惯上 dozen 后有代词, 当中加 of。如: a dozen of these people, two dozen of them。dozens of/scores of 表示 “许多”。如: dozens of people (几十个人, 许多人), scores of people (许多人)。

## 二、序数词的构成及基本用法

### (一) 序数词的构成

表示数目顺序的词叫序数词。基本的序数词如下表:

| 第 1—第 12      | 第 13—第 19        | 第 20—第 90          |
|---------------|------------------|--------------------|
| 1st first     | 13th thirteenth  | 20th twentieth     |
| 2nd second    | 14th fourteenth  | 21st twenty-first  |
| 3rd third     | 15th fifteenth   | 22nd twenty-second |
| 4th fourth    | 16th sixteenth   | 30th thirtieth     |
| 5th fifth     | 17th seventeenth | 40th fortieth      |
| 6th sixth     | 18th eighteenth  | 50th fiftieth      |
| 7th seventh   | 19th nineteenth  | 60th sixtieth      |
| 8th eighth    |                  | 70th seventieth    |
| 9th ninth     |                  | 80th eightieth     |
| 10th tenth    |                  | 90th ninetieth     |
| 11th eleventh |                  |                    |



| 第 1—第 12     | 第 13—第 19 | 第 20—第 90 |
|--------------|-----------|-----------|
| 12th twelfth |           |           |

序数词的构成一般在与之相应的基数词词尾加 th 构成, 如 seventh (第七)。但下面这些基数词在变为序数词时, 有特别的地方:

1. one—first; two—second; three—third; five—fifth; eight—eighth; nine—ninth; twelve—twelfth.

2. 以 -ty 结尾的词, 要先变 y 为 i, 再加 -eth, 例如: twenty—twentieth; forty—fortieth.

3. 以 one, two, three, five, eight, nine 收尾的多位数词, 要照第一条办法变。例如: twenty-one—twenty-first; twenty-two—twenty-second; thirty-five—thirty-fifth; ninety-nine—ninety-ninth.

## (二) 序数词的基本用法

1. 序数词的句法功能:

序数词在句中主要用作定语, 还可作主语、宾语和表语。

(1) 作定语 (前面一般要加定冠词或物主代词):

The sixth blind man went forward to feel the elephant.

Li Wei is their second son.

可作定语的修饰性用法, 在名词前用作定语 (其前多加 the; 加不定冠词时意为“又一”) 如:

The first two applicants were qualified for the post.

He could not undergo that a second time.

(2) 作主语:

The second is bigger than the first.

(3) 作宾语:

I like the third.

(4) 作表语:

She was the first to come here.

2. 序数词的用法:

(1) 序数词+名词可以表示事物的编号:

Lesson Two=the second lesson

Page Fifteen=the fifteenth page

Bus No. 5=the fifth bus

**注意:** 序数词前有代词不用 the, 如 on his fiftieth birthday.

(2) 表示年代, 世纪:

20 世纪          the 20th century 或 the twentieth century

70 年代          the seventies

20 世纪 70 年代          the seventies of the 20th century;

读作: the seventies of the twentieth century

(3) 表示日期:

1949 年 10 月 1 日: Oct. 1, 1949; 读作: Oct. the first, nineteen forty-nine 或 the first of October, nineteen forty-nine



(4) 分数的表示：分子用基数词，分母用序数词，分子大于1时，分母用序数词复数。

$1/5$  one fifth     $2/3$  two-thirds     $2\frac{2}{3}$  two and two-thirds

### 三、加、减、乘、除运算表示法

$6+3=9$     Six plus (and) three is nine.

$6-3=3$     Six minus three is three.

$6\times 3=18$     Six times three is eighteen.

$6\div 3=2$     Six divided by three is two.

对加、减、乘、除提出疑问时用 how much。

$2+3=?$     How much is two plus three?

$8-3=?$     How much is eight minus three?

$4\times 4=?$     How much is four times four?

$10\div 5=?$     How much is ten divided by five?

### 四、时间、年代、年龄表示法

#### (一) 时间表示法

1. 表示在某个世纪、某年、某季节、某月份、某周或一天中的某段时间，用介词 in，后接具体时间。例如：

in winter 在冬季

in the sixth week 在第六周

in the 20th century 在20世纪

in May 1999 在1999年5月

in the morning/afternoon/evening 在上午(下午、晚上)

2. 具体到某一天中的上午，下午，晚上用介词 on，后接要表达的具体时间。例如：

on the evening of October the first

on a day in April

on March 10

on Monday morning

on New Year's Day/Eve

3. 某个具体的时刻，如几点钟或几点几分或一年(一天)中的某时，都用介词 at 后接时刻来表示。例如：

at two o'clock; at the best time of year; at the moment; at that moment; at this time yesterday; at present

4. 表示几点几分，先说点钟，再说分钟，二者都用基数词。例如：

seven three 7:03; nine ten 9:10; eight forty-five 8:45

5. 表示几点过几分，分钟数在半小时之内，包括半小时，用 past。例如：

five past eight 8:05; fifteen (a quarter) past nine 9:15; half past six 6:30

6. 表示几点差几分，分钟数在半小时以上不包括半小时在内，用介词 to。例如：

twenty to nine 8:40 (差二十分到九点)



three to three 2:57 (差三分到三点)

半小时一般用 half an hour 来表示, 那么几点半或几点三十通常用 “half past+点钟” 来表示。例如: half past nine 9:30.

7. 表示几刻钟。

一刻钟 a quarter; 三刻钟 three quarters。十五分, 四十五分可以分别用 “a quarter past+点钟” 和 “a quarter to+点钟” 来表示。例如:

a quarter past six 6:15

a quarter to eight 7:45

8. 表示某日上(下)午几点钟。例如:

上午八点: 8:00 a. m.; 上午九点一刻: 9:15 a. m.

下午六点: 6:00 p. m.; 下午四点二十: 4:20 p. m.

## (二) 年代表示法

1980—读法: nineteen eighty

1805—读法: eighteen hundred and five

2000 年—读法: (year) two thousand

公元前 402—写法: 402 B. C.; 读法: four zero two B. C.

公元后 520—写法: 520 A. D. 或 A. D. 520; 读法: five twenty A. D.

19 世纪—写法: the 19th century; 读法: the nineteenth century

20 世纪 70 年代—写法: (70's, 70s), the seventies of the 20th century; 读法: the seventies of the twentieth century

## (三) 年龄表示法

1. 基数词 (+years old)

I'm eighteen (years old).

She's three.

2. at the age of+基数词

I went to school at the age of seven.

He became a lawyer at the age of thirty.

3. a/an+基数词+year-old+名词

表数量的合成词, 名词部分为单数。

Tom is an eight-year-old boy.

Wang Ling is a five-year-old girl.

4. a+名词+aged+基数词

Li Ping is a boy aged five.

Liu Lan is a girl aged seven.

5. of+基数词 (+years)

Wu Dong is a boy of 17 years.

Wei Fang is a girl of 14 years.

6. (be) in one's+基数词的复数形式表示 “……几十多岁了”。指不确切的年龄。

例如: My parents are in their forties.





4. I bought \_\_\_\_\_ English story books from the store.  
A. two scores      B. score of      C. two dozen      D. dozen of
5. After \_\_\_\_\_ walk, I got on a trolley-bus.  
A. five minutes'      B. a five-minutes  
C. five minute's      D. a five-minutes'
6. It took me \_\_\_\_\_ to get to the station.  
A. one and a half hour      B. an hour and one half  
C. one and half hours      D. an hour and a half
7. I saw a strange man when I get to the \_\_\_\_\_ hotel.  
A. four-storyes      B. four-storied      C. four-stories      D. four-storyed
8. Hardly had I reached the hotel when I found that I had cost \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. a 800-pound note      B. an 800-pound notes  
C. an 800-pound note      D. an 800-pounds note
9. I looked for it \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. one pocket after one pocket      B. one pocket after the other  
C. a pocket after a pocket      D. pocket after pocket
10. I felt very sorry because I had wanted to spend \_\_\_\_\_ of it on a colour TV set.  
A. two-fifth      B. two-fiveths      C. two-fifths      D. one-fifths
11. Because of the loss in money, I had to go back home \_\_\_\_\_ earlier than I had planned.  
A. one or two week      B. one week or two  
C. a week or two      D. one and two week
12. This happened not in recent years but \_\_\_\_\_, in my \_\_\_\_\_ I still remember.  
A. in 1960s; twenty      B. in the nineteen sixties; twenties  
C. in 1960's; twentieth      D. in the nineteen sixties; twentieths
13. Today there are about seven \_\_\_\_\_ Americans in colleges and universities.  
A. millions      B. million      C. millions of      D. million of
14. Xiao Ming and his sister went to Beijing \_\_\_\_\_ October 1995.  
A. in      B. at      C. on      D. to
15. I arrived \_\_\_\_\_ Shanghai \_\_\_\_\_ February 10 \_\_\_\_\_ 9:00.  
A. at; at; in      B. at; on; at      C. in; on; at      D. in; in; on
16. As a result, they saved \_\_\_\_\_ in the forest.  
A. percent ninety trees      B. ninety percent of trees  
C. ninety percent of the trees      D. ninety percent trees
17. \_\_\_\_\_ broke out in 1914.  
A. World War I      B. The World War I  
C. First World War      D. World War First
18. I wrote a letter yesterday; I have to write \_\_\_\_\_ letters this morning.  
A. other two      B. two more      C. two another      D. every two



19. —Are there now \_\_\_\_\_ schools in our city as in 1949?  
—Sure.  
A. six times more  
B. as six times many  
C. six times the number of  
D. six times as many
20. The railway is \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. 100-kilometre-long  
B. 100 kilometres long  
C. 100-kilometres-long  
D. 100 kilometre long
21. Mr. Zhang went to the market and bought \_\_\_\_\_ eggs and some meat.  
A. three dozen of B. three dozen C. three dozens of D. three dozens
22. It's a \_\_\_\_\_ ride from here to my school.  
A. two-hours B. two hours C. a two-hour D. two-hour
23. Please wait here, I'll be back in \_\_\_\_\_ hours.  
A. two and a half B. two and half a  
C. half and two D. two a half
24. You can find him in \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. Room 321 B. 321 Room C. the Room 321 D. the 321 Room
25. I have lived at \_\_\_\_\_ for 20 years.  
A. No. 203 Xinhua Street B. 203 Xinhua Street  
C. Xinhua Street 203 D. Xinhua Street No. 203



## 第八章 形容词和副词的基本用法

### 考试要点

1. 掌握形容词和副词的基本用法。
2. 掌握形容词和副词比较级、最高级的构成以及所构成的一些基本句型。

### 复习内容

#### 一、形容词

形容词常修饰名词或代词，描绘人和事物的特征。如 a beautiful lady, a green meadow, something important 等。

##### (一) 形容词在句中的作用

###### 1. 作定语：

大多数形容词可以作定语修饰名词，其位置可放于名词之前。例如：

The woman walked along the lakeside on a cool morning. “cool” 是形容词，意思是“凉爽的”，在这里作定语，修饰名词 “morning”。本句意为“那位妇女在一个凉爽的早上，沿湖边散步”。

The children gave their classroom a thorough cleaning before Children's Day. 在这里 “thorough” 是形容词，意为“完全的、彻底的”，用以修饰名词 “cleaning”。所以全句的意思是“儿童节前，孩子们把他们的教室彻底地打扫了一遍”。

但是，还有一些形容词，当它们在句中作定语时，只能放于它所修饰的名词之后。例如：present 在场的、出席的，alive 活着的，asleep 睡着的，else 别的、其他的等。请看例句：

The people present at the meeting were interested in this plan. “present” 在这里作后置定语，修饰前面的名词 “the people”。

Who is the greatest writer alive in the world? “alive” 在这里作后置定语，修饰名词 “writer”。

What else did you mean? 在这里 “else” 修饰疑问代词 “what”。

###### 2. 作表语：

形容词作表语有以下两种情况：

(1) 在系动词 be 之后作表语。例如：

You are quite mistaken.

Life on our school campus is colorful.

有时，形容词作表语后面还可以接动词不定式或者接状语从句。例如：

We were glad to hear that our football team had won.



They were surprised that we had given up the opportunity.

(2) 在连系动词之后作表语。这类连系动词有: sound 听起来, look 看起来, become 变得, taste 尝起来, smell 闻起来等。请看例句:

The theory sounds reasonable.

Silk feels smooth.

These apples taste good.

切记, 连系动词后面只能接形容词作表语, 不可以接副词。

### 3. 作状语:

形容词或形容词短语都可以在句中作状语, 大多数情况下都表示伴随状况, 放于句首或句末。但有时也可以表示原因, 一般放于句首。例如:

He sat there, silent. (表伴随状况)

The old man went home, full of fear. (表伴随状况)

Tired and thirsty, they went into a tea-house, sat down at a tea-table and had tea. (表示原因)

### 4. 作宾语补足语:

英语中一些动词后面可以带复合宾语, 即宾语和宾语补足语, 常见的这类动词如 make, find, keep, leave, get 等, 而且在这种结构中形容词也可以作宾语补足语。例如:

Have you got everything ready for the journey?

Who has left the door open?

### 5. 作独立成分:

Straightly speaking, he is still sure of it.

I said it would happen, sure enough it did happen.

More important, he's got a steady job.

## (二) 表语性形容词和定语性形容词

根据形容词在句中的作用, 我们可以把形容词分为表语性形容词和定语性形容词。一般来说, 大多数形容词既可以修饰名词或代词, 作定语, 又可以在句中作表语。例如:

The news is surprising. (作表语)

We heard the surprising news. (作定语)

Mary is lovely. (作表语)

Mary is a lovely girl. (作定语)

但是, 部分表语性形容词只能在句中作表语, 不可以作定语; 而部分定语性形容词则只能在句中作定语, 不可以作表语。下面我们分别加以讲解。

#### 1. 表语性形容词:

这类形容词只能在句中作表语, 它包括以下三个方面。

(1) 以 a-开头的形容词。如 alike 同样的, alive 活着的, afraid 害怕的, alone 单独的, a-wake 醒着的, asleep 睡着的等。例如:

She was afraid to go home and face her stepmother.

The two boys are so alike that I can't tell which is which.

(2) 表示健康状况的形容词。如 well 健康的, ill 患病的, faint 虚弱的等。例如:

My mother didn't feel well, but the doctor said it was nothing serious. “well” 在这里是形容词, 意为“(身体) 健康的, 舒适的”, 而不是副词。所以这句话的意思是“我母亲感觉不



舒服,可是医生说没什么要紧”。

My strength has grown faint as I'm getting on in years. “grow”在这里是连系动词,相当于“become”,意为“变得”,此句意思为“我上了年纪,体力虚弱”。

(3) 某些表示情感和心理状态的形容词。这类形容词有: glad 高兴的, sorry 后悔的、难过的, fond 喜欢的, content 满意的, 满足的等。例如:

I'm glad of your success in your study.

Johnson was sorry about what he had done.

The young man is content with his present job and position.

The students are still not sure of certain grammar items.

其他形容词如 worth 值……钱的、值得的, scarce 缺乏的, unable 不会的等也只能在句中作表语。例如:

To my surprise, the dictionary was worth only \$ 20.

Because of the hot weather, water is scarce in this city.

The boy has already 16 years old, but he was still unable to read and write.

另外我们还须注意,某些形容词既可以在句中作表语,又可以作定语,但它们却具有不同的含义。如 complete, ready, worthy, ill, certain, faint, live 等。请看下面例句:

The building is now complete.

Our library has a complete set of Lu Xun's works.

第一句中,“complete”作表语,意思是“完成的、竣工的”,所以全句意思为“这座大楼现已竣工”。第二句中,“complete”作定语,意为“完整的”,此句意思是“我们图书馆有一套完整的鲁迅全集”。

They're ready to set off. 他们已准备好出发。

This book can't give us a ready answer to the question. 这本书不能给我们这个问题的现成的答案。

The problem is worthy to be discussed. 这个问题值得讨论。

They live a worthy life. 他们过着有意义的生活。

She fell ill after she returned from Paris. 她从巴黎回来后就生病了。

It's said that the medicine has ill effect on children. 据说这药对儿童有不良影响。

I'm not certain who she is. 我不能确信她是谁。

I know he did that foolish thing for a certain reason. 我知道他干那件愚蠢的事情是出于某种理由。

She looked almost faint. 她看上去极其虚弱。

There is a faint hope that his mother may be cured. 他母亲治愈的希望很微弱。

It was not a recorded football match. It was live. 这不是足球比赛录像,是实况。

The woman came back with a few live fish. 这位妇女带回几条活鱼。

## 2. 定语性形容词:

定语性形容词只能在句中作定语,其分类如下:

(1) 由名词派生而来的形容词,一般只在句中作定语。在构词法里面,大家了解到一些名词在后面接-y 变为形容词,如 honest→honesty, wealth→wealthy, luck→lucky, health→healthy 等。例如:

You can believe what an honesty man says.

His father is a wealthy man.



还有一类名词后接-al, 转化为形容词, 如 nation→national, nature→natural, centre→central, agriculture→agricultural 等。例如:

China is rich in natural resources.

Agricultural development is important to a country.

Read the passage and grasp its central idea.

(2) 以-ly 结尾表示时间的名词, 如 daily 每日的, weekly 每周的, monthly 每月的, yearly 每年的等。请看例句:

Television has become a necessary part of our daily life.

This is a weekly magazine.

除了上面所讲的表示时间的名词后加-ly 变为形容词之外, 还有一些词后加-ly 也变为形容词, 常见的这类派生词有以下两类: A. “名词+ly→形容词”, 如 friendly 友好的, lovely 可爱的, orderly 有秩序的, brotherly 兄弟般的; B. “形容词+ly→形容词”, 如 lively 活泼的, lonely 孤独的, likely 可能的, deadly 致命的等。

还有一些形容词或副词本身就带 ly, 并不是后缀-ly, 如 silly (*adj.* 愚蠢的), early (*adj.* 早) 等, 切不可把这些词误以为是副词。

(3) 其他如 former 从前的, latter 后来的, inner 内部的, outer 外部的, elder 年长的, only 唯一的等也是定语性形容词。例如:

She calls on her former teacher from time to time. 她常去看望她从前的老师。

They will have a lot of work to do in the latter half of the week.

There is no gravity in outer space.

The old TV-set is the only valuable thing in his house.

### (三) 名词化的形容词

用作名词的形容词叫作名词化的形容词。名词化形容词常与定冠词连用。

1. 泛指一类人, 含复数概念。作主语时, 谓语动词用复数形式。例如:

The good are happy.

The sick were sent to the hospital.

The English are great lovers for tea.

2. 指抽象概念。作主语时, 谓语动词要用单数形式。例如:

The beautiful can never die.

The true is to be distinguished from the false.

The moon was at the full tonight.

3. 有些形容词可以加复数词尾-s。例如:

He asked one of the locals which way to go.

The book deals with only the fundamentals of economics.

We're taking our finals next week.

### (四) 形容词的位置

1. 形容词一般置于所修饰的名词之前。例如:

These children spent all of their free time in playing electronic games.

Those are magnificent shows.



The woman likes to boast about her culinary skills.

2. 但在下列情况下, 形容词只能放于它所修饰的名词之后。

(1) 形容词修饰 something, anything, nothing, everything, someone, anyone 等复合不定代词时须后置。例如:

Do you find anything interesting in the novel?

Anyone intelligent can do it.

There is nothing more glorious than to work for the people heart and soul.

We're going anywhere very exciting.

I have something important to tell you.

但修饰不定代词 something 时, 形容词有时也可以前置(这时 something 已不再是不定代词, 而是特指)。例如:

And there, glowing with a faint blue light in the glass test-tube on the tables, was the mysterious something which they had worked so hard to find: radium. (在那儿, 在桌子上的玻璃试管里, 正闪烁着微弱的蓝光, 这就是他们付出了极其艰辛的劳动所要寻找的那种神秘的东西: 镭)

(2) 大部分表语形容词, 如 ill (生病的), 以及以 a-开头的形容词作定语时, 常放于它们所修饰的名词之后。例如:

The boy asleep was our monitor.

The student ill suffered from a bad cold.

He was one of the few miners alive after the gas explosion.

有些形容词用作非限定性定语时亦可后置, 但这时必须和前面的名词之间有逗号隔开。例如:

The man, silent, stood beside us.

The girl, nervous, opened the letter.

(3) 为了表示强调, 两个或两个以上的形容词并列出现, 常放在所修饰的名词之后。例如:

We never bow before difficulties great or small.

The girl has many pencils, blue and red.

It was an accident pure and simple.

后置形容词有时可以有两个以上。例如:

He is a handsome boy, brave, clever and polite.

Never had I seen a face so happy, sweet and radiant.

(4) 形容词短语一般须后置, 往往相当于一个定语从句。例如:

English is a language easy to learn but difficult to master.

I think he is a man suitable for the job.

Albert Einstein received several baskets full of cards, letters and telegrams of congratulation.

A man so difficult to please must be hard to work with.

(5) 形容词 enough 作定语时一般须后置。例如:

I have time enough.

但也可以前置。例如:

Mr White has had enough money to buy an expensive house.



(6) 和空间、时间单位连用时。例如：

a desk two metres long and one metre wide.

a tree eighty feet high.

a well fifteen miles deep.

观察以上这些形容词短语，可以看出它们分别都是由“数词+名词+形容词”构成。在这种结构中，当数词大于一时，名词要用复数形式，切忌把这一点和复合形容词的构成相混淆。复合形容词的构成是：数词—名词—形容词，不管数词是多少，名词都用单数形式，而且复合形容词在句中作前置定语。例如：

{ a three-year-old boy

{ an eighty-metre-long bridge

同样也可以把这一组结构用形容词短语进行改写，它们分别为：

{ a boy three years old

{ a bridge eighty metres long

(7) 以-able 和-ible 结尾的形容词可置于有最高级形容词或 only 等词修饰的名词之后。

例如：

That is the greatest difficulty imaginable.

那是最大的一种困难。

This is the only solution possible.

这是唯一可行的解决办法。

She is the best person available.

她是现有的最佳人选。

### (五) 前置形容词的排列顺序

有几个形容词同时修饰一个名词时，其顺序往往比较固定。限定词（包括冠词，不定代词，指示代词物主代词和名词所有格）一般均置于第一位，其他的修饰词则常常根据其 与名词的亲疏关系依次排列。例如：

a weak small spare old man 一个瘦弱的小老头（不定冠词+描绘性形容词+特征性形容词 [大小→形状→年龄] + 名词）

the first beautiful little white Chinese stone bridge 那第一座美丽的中国小白石桥（定冠词+序数词+描绘性形容词+特征性形容词 [大小→颜色] + 专有形容词+表材料质地的名词性定语+名词）

a few new major urban highways 几条新的主要城市公路（不定代词+特征性形容词 [新旧→大小] + 类属形容词+名词）

a pretty purple silk dress 一件漂亮的紫色丝绸女装（不定冠词+描绘性形容词+表示颜色的形容词+表示材料的名词性定语+名词）

a tall intelligent young Chinese officer 一个聪慧的个子很高的年轻的中国军官（不定冠词+描绘性形容词 [短词→长词] + 表示特征的形容词 [年龄] + 专有形容词+名词）

some sour green eating apples 一些酸的绿色的食用苹果（不定代词+描绘性形容词+表示颜色的形容词+动名词+名词）

从上述例句看来，多个形容词修饰名词时，其修饰次序大致如下：

限定词（包括冠词、不定代词、物主代词、指示代词、名词所有格）+ 数词+描绘性形容



词(短词在前,长词在后)+表示特征的形容词(包括大小、形状、新旧、年龄等)+表示颜色的形容词+表类属的形容词(包括专有形容词和表示材料、质地的形容词)+名词性定语(包括动名词)+中心名词。

但在语言实际运用中,例外情况也不少;还有些形容词的顺序颠倒而意义不变。如我们既可以说 a thin dark face, 也可以说 a dark thin face。但有时意义可能大不一样,如 dirty British books 意思是“弄脏了的英国书”,而 British dirty books 则很可能意思是“英国的黄色书籍”。

上述修饰语多用于书面语中,口语中很少有形容词堆砌的情况。



## 二、副词

### (一) 副词的意义和特征

#### 1. 副词的意义:

副词是用以修饰动词、形容词、其他副词以及全句的词,可以表示时间、地点、程度、方式等概念。例如:

I did not speak to him much. (much 在这里是副词,修饰动词 speak。所以本句意思是“我和他不经常说话”)

Jack has turned to the politically active youth. (副词 politically 修饰形容词 active)

“What happened?” she asked, rather sharply. (副词 rather 修饰副词 sharply)

Unfortunately, she wasn't at home when we came back. (副词 unfortunately 修饰整个句子)

#### 2. 副词的特征:

副词具有多样性。在词义上,有些副词本身含有实义,而有些副词仅仅是为了强调而已。例如:

A bird suddenly flew out. (有实义)

I am extremely sorry about what I did. (extremely 仅为强调)

在功能上,有些副词可以修饰单词、短语、从句以及全句。例如:

They often talked about football and football players. (副词 often 修饰动词 talked)

Mary returned home at 12 o'clock precisely. (副词 precisely 修饰短语 at 12 o'clock)

Wang Mei should not study that hard, especially after she has been ill. (副词修饰从句)

Let's go to the library, and we'll probably find that book there. (副词 probably 修饰全句)

在形式上,许多副词带有后缀-ly,有些则与形容词等其他词类相似。例如:

带后缀-ly: strongly, unfortunately, hardly, coldly, badly 等。

不带后缀-ly: slow, high, now 等。

### (二) 副词的分类

#### 1. 副词按其意义可以分为:

##### (1) 方式副词。

方式副词具有最典型的状语方式,即形容词加后缀-ly。例如:

quickly 迅速地

softly 轻轻地

proudly 自豪地

heavily 重重地

deeply 深深地

quietly 安静地



(2) 地点、方向副词。例如：

|             |          |
|-------------|----------|
| here 这里     | away 远离  |
| there 那里    | left 左边  |
| outside 外面  | right 右边 |
| straight 径直 | west 向西  |

(3) 时间副词。时间副词有的表示确定的时间，有的表示不确定概念。例如：

yesterday, today, tomorrow 等表示确定的时间。  
recently, already, immediately, just 等表示不确定的概念。

还有一些时间副词表示频率。例如：

always, often, sometimes, never 等。

(4) 强调副词。有的从程度上强调，回答 how much。例如：very, quite, extremely, too, rather, more 等。

有的从程度上强调，回答 how complete。例如：almost 几乎，entirely 完全，nearly 差不多，wholly 整个，utterly 彻底等。

有的从意义上强调，如：especially 特别，even 甚至，exactly 确实，just 正好，only 仅仅，simply 简单等。

这类副词一般放于所修饰的词之前。例如：

She was not especially pretty.

That isn't exactly right.

这类副词还可以修饰名词、代词、介词短语和从句等。例如：

Even John agreed to come here. (修饰名词 John)

Only the teachers can use this room. (修饰名词 the teachers)

She went to the party only because of her husband. (only 修饰介词短语)

I don't know exactly when she can come here. (exactly 修饰从句)

**注意：**副词 only 常放在全句谓语之前，但并不一定修饰谓语。例如：

I will only be a moment. 我只一会儿就回来 (only 修饰 a moment)。

I only heard Tom. 我只听见汤姆的声音 (only 修饰 Tom)。

2. 副词按其形式分为：

(1) 简单副词。例如：

just, well, very, near, back 等。

有些简单副词与形容词同形。例如：

|                 |       |               |       |
|-----------------|-------|---------------|-------|
| a near relation | (形容词) | a fast car    | (形容词) |
| to come near    | (副词)  | to drive fast | (副词)  |
| an early bus    | (形容词) |               |       |
| to get up early | (副词)  |               |       |

(2) 复合副词。例如：

somehow 不知怎么地，nowhere 无处，therefore 因此，somewhat 有点等。

(3) 派生副词。许多副词由形容词或分词加后缀 -ly 而成。例如：

|                         |                            |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| odd→oddly               | strange→strangely          |
| surprising→surprisingly | determined→determinedly 等。 |



另外, 还须注意一些特殊变化形式。例如:

以辅音+y (y 读作 [ɪ]) 结尾的形容词变为副词时, 改 y 为 i, 再加 -ly, 如 easy→easily, happy→happily 等; 以 -ll 结尾的形容词变为副词时, 只加 -y, 如 chill→chilly, full→fully 等; 以辅音+le 结尾的形容词变为副词时要省去 le, 再加 -ly, 如 able→ably, single→singly, simple→simply, possible→possibly 等; 以 -ue 结尾的形容词变为副词时, 须省去 -e, 再加 -ly, 如 true→truly, due→duly 等。

还有一些副词有两种不同的形式, 一种与形容词同形, 另一种由形容词加后缀 -ly 构成。如 high, highly; wide, widely; deep, deeply; direct, directly 等。在这类词中, 通常非 -ly 结尾的副词表示比较具体的意义, 而 -ly 结尾的副词则表示抽象的意义。例如:

The bird flew high in the sky. 鸟在空中高飞。

USA is highly developed. 日本高度发达。

He stood with his hands deep in his pockets. 他站着, 两手深插在口袋中。

They were deeply touched by the story. 他们深深地被故事所感动。

The woman kept her eyes wide open. 那位妇女睁大眼睛。

Computers are widely used in many fields. 计算机在很多领域广泛应用。

另一组如: cheap, cheaply; fair, fairly; slow, slowly; easy, easily; loud, loudly; firm, firmly 等, 它们这两种形式在意义上没有差别, 使用时常按惯用搭配。例如:

I got the watch cheap in the second-hand shop. 我在旧货店便宜地买了这个手表。

(cheap 多与 get, buy, sell 搭配)

We took the bus there cheaply. 我们花很少的钱乘车去那里。

We should play fair in sports and games. 在体育运动中我们应该公平比赛。(fair 与 play 搭配)

Teachers should treat their students fairly. 教师应该公正地对待学生。

My watch goes slow. 我的手表走得慢。(slow 多用于 go, run, burn 或 how 之后)

The line moved slowly and I got impatient. 队伍移动缓慢, 我有点不耐烦了。

还有一组如: hard, hardly; most, mostly; pretty, prettily 等, 各组副词两种形式意义不同, 要注意其区别。例如:

She works hard. 她努力工作。

She hardly works. 她几乎不工作。

What surprised me was that they were most clever. 使我惊奇的是他们很聪明。

(most 在这里相当于 very)

To my surprise, they were mostly clever. 使我惊奇的是他们大多数很聪明。

He is in pretty good health. 他非常健康。

The girl is prettily dressed. 那位姑娘穿着很讲究。

副词除常用的后缀之外, 还有一些其他后缀。例如:

-wise: clockwise 顺时针方向地      -ward (s): eastward (s) 向东方

-ways: sideways 斜着      -style: cowboy-style 牛仔型地

还有一些副词带有前缀 a-, 例如: abroad, ahead, around, aloud 等。

### 3. 副词按其功用分为:

(1) 句子副词。这类副词往往和整个句子具有松散的语法关系, 而不是修饰某个动词。例如:

Unfortunately, some people were hurt in that accident.



The girl was shouting and crying; obviously, she was mad.

词组也可以作为句子副词, 如 in my opinion 依我看来, strangely enough 足够奇怪地, by no means 决不。例如:

In my opinion, your plan is practical.

(2) 连接副词。这类副词用以连接句子、从句或分句, 类似句子副词。它们可以表示以下几种关系:

有的表示结果, 如 therefore 因此, accordingly 从而等。

有的表示对比, 如 however 不管怎样, nevertheless 然而等。

有的表示条件, 如 otherwise 否则, 要不然等。

有的表示附加, 如 moreover 再者, besides 此外等。

有的表示时间, 如 then 然后等。

连接副词除了表示以上几种关系之外, 有的连接副词如 when, where, why, how 等, 常用以引导名词性从句 (即主语从句, 宾语从句, 表语从句以及同位语从句)。例如:

Where we are going for our holidays is not decided yet.

另外, 连接副词 whenever, wherever, however 也可以引导让步状语从句。例如:

Whenever I came to visit her, she always read at the table.

(3) 解释副词。这类副词用于举例或列举。例如: namely 即, as 如, for example 例如, i. e. (= that is) 那就是等。

A week has seven days, namely, one hundred and forty eight hours.

(4) 关系副词。这类副词有 where, when, why 等, 用以引导定语从句。例如:

We visited the house where the famous poet once lived.

Please give me the reason why you punished me.

(5) 疑问副词。这类副词有 when, where, why, how 等, 常用以引导特殊疑问句。例如:

When shall we meet at the club?

Where did you find the lost ring?

Why didn't you come to my party?

How are you getting along with your classmates?

疑问副词 how 除了引导一特殊疑问句之外, 还可以和某些副词连用构成各种疑问句。例如:

How long did it take you to fly to Beijing?

How soon will they be back?

How far did they walk that night?

How fast does light travel?

How often do you write to your parents?

how 还可以和某些形容词连用构成疑问句。例如:

How long is the Yellow River?

How high is the building?

How deep is the lake?

How wide is the new highway?

(6) 感叹副词。例如:

How beautifully she dressed! (how 来修饰副词 beautifully)



How beautiful she is! (how 来修饰形容词 beautiful)

### (三) 副词在句中的作用

副词在句中主要用作状语, 修饰动词、形容词、副词或全句。

1. 修饰动词。方式副词、地点副词和时间副词可以直接修饰动词。例如:

He rushed to the bus stop hurriedly.

The students set off happily.

Yesterday the children played basketball here.

2. 修饰形容词。有些副词可以放于形容词前来对此进行修饰。例如:

The very small boy threw the ball quickly.

这里还须注意, 副词 quite 修饰某些不能用于比较级的形容词如 complete, perfect, mistaken, empty, full, right 等时, 表示“十分、完全”。例如:

You're quite right.

但是 quite 修饰可比较的形容词时, 意为“相当”。例如:

That's quite good.

quite 还可以修饰某些动词(这时不可以用 very 替代)。例如:

He said something, but I didn't quite catch it.

Speak slowly, please. The children don't quite follow you.

3. 修饰副词。有些副词可以放在另一副词之前修饰该副词。例如:

He drives rather fast.

但是副词 enough 修饰形容词或副词时则必须放于其后。例如:

It's hot enough to go swimming.

They got up early enough to catch the early bus.

这里我们可以把它当作一个句型去记忆, 就是“*adj. /adv. + enough + to do sth.*”意思为“足以做某事”, 其反义结构则是“*too + adj. /adv. + to do sth.*”, 意思是“太……而不能做……”。例如:

The boy is too young to go to school.

They got up too late to catch the early bus.

4. 修饰全句。有些副词可以修饰整个句子。例如:

Ordinarily, I get up at six o'clock.

Hopefully, we can get this job done before dark. (Hopefully = we're hopeful that...)

5. 修饰名词。置于“不定冠词+名词”之前, 用以加强语气。这类副词最常用的有 quite 和 rather。例如:

We had quite a party.

It was rather a mess.

Even a child can understand this.

但在“不定冠词+形容词+名词”这个结构中, quite 和 rather 可以放于不定冠词之前或之后。例如:

She is a quite good language teacher. (=She is quite a good language teacher)

It's a rather cold day. (=It's rather a cold day)

有些副词可直接放于名词之前。如:

the then Prime Minister 当时的总理大臣



inside information about the talk 关于这次会谈的内部情报  
还有一些副词可直接放于名词之后作后置定语。例如：

Life here is full of joy.

The meeting yesterday lasted over 3 hours.

6. 用作表语。例如：

Mrs White was away.

Is Zhang Hua in?

7. 用作宾语补足语。例如：

Ask him in, please.

We went to visit her only to find her out.

8. 用作介词的宾语。有些表示地点、时间的副词可以用作介词的宾语。例如：

Come over here!

They live not far from there.

Don't put off until tomorrow what can be done today. 不要把今天能做的事情拖到明天。

#### (四) 副词的位置

副词的位置比较灵活，可以有以下几种情形。

1. 有的副词如 sometimes, often, soon, perhaps 等可放于句首、句中或句末。例如：

Sometimes, he came late. (同样可以说：He sometimes came late. 或者 He came late sometimes.)

2. 有些副词常用于句中，多表示频度，如 often, always, never, seldom 等。这些副词的位置与动词有无助动词有关。句中无助动词时，副词放于动词 be 之后；句子有助动词，则放于动词之前。例如：

She is always late. (放于 be 之后)

He always came late. (放于实义动词之前)

如果动词由几个部分构成时 (如含有情态动词或助动词)，副词常放于第一个助动词或情态动词之后。例如：

We shall always remember this. (放于助动词 shall 之后)

I have never been to Beijing. (放于助动词 have 之后)

可以放于句中的副词还有 already, really, just, still, certainly, almost, nearly, suddenly 等。

3. 句中副词如果移至助动词之前，则是为了强调紧跟在其后的助动词。例如：

They never have been and never will be successful. (never 放于助动词 have 和 will 之前，为了在此加以强调)

You never can tell which is right. (never 用以强调情态动词 can)

4. 多数副词皆置于谓语动词之后，如有宾语，则放于宾语之后。例如：

Please read carefully.

Please read the text carefully.

但是如果副词在句中的地位不很重要，也可以把副词放于动词之前。例如：

He carefully read the text.

如果宾语部分较长，副词也可放于动词与宾语之间。例如：

Please read carefully all the parts in the book that deals with this problem.



**注意：**有些可作介词的副词，既可放在宾语之前，也可放于宾语之后，如 I'll pick up the pen 或 I'll pick the pen up. 但是，当宾语是代词时，则必须把宾语放在副词之前，如 I'll pick it up. 这类副词还有 down, in, out away 等。

5. 在疑问句中，副词一般只能放于句中或句末。例如：

Did she usually study so late?

在含有助动词或情态动词的一般疑问句中，副词常放于实义动词之前。例如：

Has she fully recovered?

Can you honestly say you have done your best?

在有两个助动词或情态动词的疑问句中，副词的位置与其在陈述句中的位置相同。例如：

Will we be severely punished? (陈述句为 We'll be severely punished.)

6. 在祈使句中，多数副词放于句末。例如：

Read the passage quickly.

Go there the day after tomorrow.

副词 never 和 always 一般在祈使句中均放于句首。例如：

Never waste anything and above all never waste time.

Always make good use of your spare time.

7. 有时表示序列的副词位于句首。例如：

First have breakfast, then go to school, my child.

8. 表示时间、地点或位置的副词作定语时常后置。例如：

The opening ceremony today was cancelled (取消) because of the heavy rain.

Every day the six blind men went to the road nearby and stood there begging.

Aqiao dropped the seeds along the road so that she could know the way back.

### 例题解析

例 1. The old man is still in danger. He is \_\_\_\_ than he was yesterday.

A. as well as      B. not worse      C. no better      D. more worse

**解析：**在所给的选项中，A 项句子结构不对；B 项意为“不如昨天差”，上下句意思不连贯；D 项为错误的表达方式（双重比较），所以，答案为 C，意为“和昨天一样差”。

例 2. I won't go with you. It's \_\_\_\_ cold today.

A. so much      B. too much      C. very so      D. much too

**解析：**副词 much 不能修饰原级形容词、副词，故不选 A、B。C 项中“very so”是错误的表达方式，但可以说“so very”，所以不选 C；而 much 可以修饰 too，当然 too 可以修饰原级形容词，所以应选 D。

例 3. \_\_\_\_ will the new major arrive?

—Tomorrow.

A. How soon      B. How often      C. How long      D. When

**解析：**本题从答语看，问题要求给出具体时间，而 A 项“How soon”问“过多久才……”；B 项“How often”是对时间频度的提问；C 项中“How long”指“持续多长时间”，所以本题答案应选 D。



例 4. Would you be \_\_\_\_ do me a favor, please?

A. kind enough B. so kind as to C. so kind to D. kind as to

解析：本题中“Would you be so kind as to do...”是一种表示客气的请求的固定用法，而 A、C、D 三项均为错误的表达方式，所以答案应为 B。

例 5. Please don't run \_\_\_\_ fast.

A. that B. much C. fairly D. more

解析：在所给的四个选项中，B 项 much 一般不修饰原级形容词、副词，应排除；C 项句子意思不通；D 项中，fast 本身的比较级为 faster，所以也应排除，这样正确答案应为 A，that 在这里是副词，相当于 so，意思是“那样，那么”。

### 三、形容词和副词的比较级、最高级

#### (一) 构成

规则变化

1. 单音节和少数双音节词：

| 规则                   | 原级    | 比较级     | 最高级      |
|----------------------|-------|---------|----------|
| 加词尾 er 和 est         | tall  | taller  | tallest  |
| 以 e 结尾的词只加 r 或 st    | large | larger  | largest  |
| 重读闭音节结尾，而末尾只         | big   | bigger  | biggest  |
| 有一个辅音字母的词，先双         | thin  | thinner | thinnest |
| 写该辅音字母，再加 er 或 est   | hot   | hotter  | hottest  |
| 以辅音字母+y 结尾的词         | happy | happier | happiest |
| 先变 y 为 i，再加 er 或 est | early | earlier | earliest |

2. 多音节词和多数双音节词都在词前加副词 more 或 most：

famous—more famous—most famous

不规则变化：

| 原级         | 比较级              | 最高级                |
|------------|------------------|--------------------|
| good, well | better           | best               |
| bad, ill   | worse            | worst              |
| many, much | more             | most               |
| little     | less             | least              |
| late       | later, latter    | latest, last       |
| old        | older, elder     | oldest, eldest     |
| far        | farther, further | farthest, furthest |



## (二) 用法

### 1. 形容词或副词的比较级 + than.

(形容词比较级前可有 much, far, rather, hardly, still, even, a lot, a little, a bit, a good deal, no, any 等程度修饰语) 例如:

You are much /far/ a lot more careful than she (is).

This room is a little bigger than that one.

He is far less old than she (is).

### 2. be + 数字(倍数) + 形容词比较级 + than, 例如:

His father is thirty years older than he.

A is three times larger than B.

### 3. { the + 形容词最高级 + 比较范围 (the) 副词最高级

Which mountain is the highest in the world?

Miss Black works (the) hardest in her office.

The Yellow River is the second longest river in China.

### 4. not so/as + 原级 + as: 表示一方与另一方的程度相同。前可有 twice, three times, half, almost, nearly, just, exactly, quite 等程度修饰语。例如:

She is just as old as I am.

The + 比较级 + the + 比较级, 表示“越……越……”。

The older he is, the weaker he gets.

## 自我测试

### 1. 改正下列各句中的错误。

- (1) Of these two books, which one do you like best?
- (2) This kind of rock is more hard than that one.
- (3) The new factory has produced more many cars than the old one.
- (4) Water is more heavier than oil.
- (5) This pig is fater than that one.
- (6) This question is not difficult than that one.
- (7) Anna is shorter of the two young girls.
- (8) Tibet is the largest second province in China.
- (9) This road is wider two meters than that one.
- (10) My uncle is older twice than my brother.

### 2. 选择题。

- (1) It is known that the \_\_\_\_\_ you use your brain, the \_\_\_\_\_ work it is able to do.  
A. more; much    B. much; more    C. more; more    D. much; much
- (2) The use of the school education is not so much teach things \_\_\_\_\_ to teach the art of learning.  
A. as    B. than    C. rather than    D. not
- (3) Our sports team won \_\_\_\_\_ many gold medals \_\_\_\_\_ they did at the last National Games.  
A. twice as; as    B. as twice; as    C. as; as twice    D. twice; than



- (4) Of the colours, blue, red and orange, which do you like \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. best                      B. better                      C. well                      D. much
- (5) My watch is \_\_\_\_\_ expensive than his.  
A. twenty dollars much                      B. twenty dollars more  
C. much twenty dollars                      D. more twenty dollars
- (6) The meeting hall in our school is \_\_\_\_\_ to hold 200 people.  
A. large enough                      B. enough large                      C. so large                      D. too large
- (7) Their English was too limited, \_\_\_\_\_, they didn't lose heart and made their minds to improve it.  
A. and                      B. so                      C. or                      D. however
- (8) The bamboo shoot dish smells \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. wonderfully                      B. wonderful                      C. beautiful                      D. pleasantly
- (9) This story book is \_\_\_\_\_ interesting than the one you lent me yesterday.  
A. much too                      B. slightly                      C. little                      D. less
- (10) They went to a \_\_\_\_\_ village to visit a farmer.  
A. near                      B. nearby                      C. next                      D. close
- (11) It's \_\_\_\_\_ to rain but not \_\_\_\_\_ before evening.  
A. possible; probable                      B. probable; possible  
C. possibly; probably                      D. probably; possibly
- (12) These days he's quite \_\_\_\_\_ he was last year.  
A. as busy as                      B. busier than                      C. too busy to                      D. busy enough for
- (13) Tom is the cleverest of \_\_\_\_\_ in his family.  
A. any of the brothers                      B. any brothers  
C. any other brother                      D. all the brothers
- (14) \_\_\_\_\_ help we got from him, \_\_\_\_\_ easy the work seemed to be.  
A. Because; so                      B. If; so  
C. Neither; nor                      D. The more; the less
- (15) \_\_\_\_\_ doves there are flying in the sky!  
A. How much                      B. How many                      C. So many                      D. What a lot of
- (16) There lay a \_\_\_\_\_ box in front of the window.  
A. little black round wooden                      B. black little round wooden  
C. round black wooden little                      D. wooden round black little
- (17) She will \_\_\_\_\_ home by car this afternoon.  
A. go back                      B. return back                      C. get to                      D. arrive at
- (18) The boy was rather \_\_\_\_\_ when he won the first prize of the writing composition.  
A. please                      B. to please                      C. pleasing                      D. pleased
- (19) It's \_\_\_\_\_ that you are \_\_\_\_\_ about this.  
A. clear; obvious                      B. obvious; clear  
C. obvious; obvious                      D. clear; clear
- (20) Could you pass me the cup? It's \_\_\_\_\_ my reach.  
A. too far to                      B. higher for                      C. without                      D. beyond



## 第九章 动词



(参见视频 2-9-1)

### 考试要点

1. 掌握动词的种类。
2. 掌握动词基本时态的构成。
3. 掌握动词的主动语态和被动语态的构成及用法。
4. 掌握非谓语动词的基本用法。

### 复习内容

## 第一节 动词的种类

### 一、动词的意义和特征

#### (一) 动词的意义

动词是表示动作或状态的词。如: walk, play, sleep, live, like, know 等。

动词与名词、代词一样, 也有人称和数的变化。谓语动词的人称和数一般必须与句子主语的人称和数保持一致。

#### (二) 动词的特征

英语动词是词类中最复杂的一种, 它的主要语法特征如下:

##### 1. 时态

特殊的动词词尾或有关的助动词, 用以表示动作的时间和方向。

##### 2. 语态

特殊的动词形式, 用以表示动词的主语和宾语之间的关系, 即主语是施事者或是受事者。

##### 3. 语气

特殊的动词形式, 用以表示说话人对所说事物的态度。所说的话可能是事实, 也可能是命令或请求, 也可能是愿望、假设、怀疑、建议、猜测、纯粹的空想等。

##### 4. 体

动词本身含的动作有动态与静态。静态包括内心活动、各种感觉和感情等。动态包括瞬间、有限、无限、重复等方面。

### 二、动词的种类

动词的种类比较复杂, 大致可以按其构成动词词组的作用分为四类, 即行为动词 (或实义动词)、连系动词、助动词、情态动词。根据其与主语的关系分为限定性动词和非限定



性动词。还有一种形式是短语动词，这是一种固定词组，由动词加介词或副词等构成，其作用相当于一个动词。

### (一) 行为动词 (实义动词)

行为动词意义完整，能单独在句中作谓语。行为动词可以根据其在句子中的功用分为及物动词和不及物动词。同样，行为动词还可以根据其动作的持续性，分为延续性动词和短暂性动词 (或瞬间动词)。

#### 1. 及物动词 (transitive verb/*vt.*) 和不及物动词 (intransitive verb/*vi.*)

及物动词要求有直接宾语。例如：

Johnson himself opened the door to me.

约翰逊亲自给我开了门。

而不及物动词之后则不能接宾语。例如：

The car stopped.

The boy was sleeping.

只有及物动词可以用于被动语态，而不及物动词不能够用于被动语态。例如：

The sports meet was put off till next week because of the rain.

及物动词可以有一个或两个 (直接和间接) 宾语或复合宾语。例如：

He reads the books carefully. (一个宾语)

My father gave my brother the bike. (两个宾语，my brother 为间接宾语，指人；而 bike 为直接宾语，指物)

We elected him our monitor. (him 是宾语，our monitor 为宾语补足语，二者一起构成复合宾语)

许多动词既可以作及物动词，又可以作不及物动词。例如：

Mr White turned his horse's head and rode away. (turn 为 *vt.*)

He turned to us. (turn 为 *vi.*)

有些不及物动词后面可以接上同源宾语则转化为及物动词，如 smile, dream, live, die, sleep 等，这个同源宾语通常带有定语。例如：

Before liberation Grandpa Wang lived a miserable life. Now he lives a happy life.

Liu Hulan died a heroic death.

She dreamed a strange dream.

有些及物动词常用作不及物动词以表示被动意义，这时主语往往指物而不指人。例如：

These books sold out in a week.

#### 2. 延续性动词和短暂性动词

延续性动词表示的动作可以延续一段时间或相当长的一段时间，如 live, work, study, learn, sleep 等；延续性动词可以和表示一段的时间状语连用。例如：

They \_\_\_\_\_ the train until it disappeared in the distance.

A. saw      B. watched      C. noticed      D. observed

这道题中，until 从句表示延续一段时间，那么主句中的动词必须是延续性的，这样就可以排除 A 和 C。另外 watch 意为 to keep one's eyes fixed on sb. /sth. 而 observe 则意为 to watch carefully，所以正确答案应为 B。

短暂性动词表示的动作不能延续 (即动作一经发生就结束)，如 go, come, arrive, leave, begin, start, join, marry 等；短暂性动词的肯定式不能与表示一段时间的 for、since 或 how



long 等状语连用。例如:

His father got ill.

I have received his letter.

但是不可说: His father got ill for a week. I have received his letter for three days.

在否定句中, 短暂性动词可以和表示一段的时间状语连用。例如:

We haven't heard from Jane for a long time. I suppose something must have happened to her.

值得注意的是, 表示一段时间的状语除了“for+一段时间”外, 还有 since+n. /从句(时间点), since+时间段+ago, long, 疑问词 how long, in the past+时间段, all these+时间段, from...to(时间点)以及 till/until+n. /clause 等。例如:

How long \_\_\_\_ your brother joined the army?

A. has      B. had      C. is it since      D. was there that

通过审题, 答案 B 和 D 很容易被排除, 而学生稍不注意便会选中答案 A; 殊不知 how long 为一段时间的状语, 不能与非持续性动词短语 has joined 连用, 所以这道题的正确答案是 C。

另外, 动词的延续性与短暂性还体现在 till/until 两种句型中:

延续性动词的肯定式+till/until.

短暂性动词的否定式+till/until.

请看例句:

We waited until he came.

This battle will not be won until everyone knows how serious the danger is.

如果短暂性动词与表示一段的时间状语连用, 必须将短暂性动词改为延续性动词。改法参照下面的形式:

短暂性形式

arrive/get, reach, come

leave/go

marry

buy/get

begin

finish

make friends

join

borrow

die

meet

fall ill

put on

dress

hide

延续性形式

be in/at 或 stay

be away

be married

have

be on

be over

be friends

be in

keep

be dead

stay together

be ill

have on/wear

be dressed

be hidden

例如:

You needn't return the book now. You can keep it until next week.

I didn't know you were in London. How long have you been here?



From his letter I know that he has been married a native girl for two years.

除了用上面的转化形式之外，还可以用其他的表达形式：A. It is/was + 时间 + since...

(动词用过去时) B. 主语 + 谓语 (过去时) + 时间 + ago. 例如：

It's five days since I received his letter.

His father died three years ago.

### 3. 六种不同的补语动词

(1) 多字动词，即在单字动词后加上一定的小品词构成，可分为三种：

①介词动词，由单字动词 + 介词小品词构成，都为及物动词。

She got to thinking that he perhaps couldn't come at all.

②成语动词，由单字动词 + 副词小品词构成，可为及物动词或不及物动词。

The class got up when the teacher came in.

Please get me up at five tomorrow.

③成语介词动词，由单字动词 + 副词小品词 + 介词小品词构成，皆为及物动词。

I hope to get up to the required speed of reading soon.

(2) 动词 + 介词：

“动词 + 介词”这类短语动词相当于一个及物动词。其宾语一般置于介词之后。例如：

Whether we'll go out or not depends on the weather.

(3) 动词 + 副词：

“动词 + 副词”这类短语动词有的可以作及物动词，有的可以作不及物动词。如果作及物动词，而且其宾语是名词时，宾语可以放在副词之前或之后；但若宾语是代词时，宾语只能置于动词和副词之间。例如：

We looked up all the new words.

Pick the book up, please.

He called her up.

(4) 动词 + 副词 + 介词：

“动词 + 副词 + 介词”这类短语动词全部用作及物动词。例如：

The German commander wanted to stay away from a fight with British warships.

(5) 动词 + 名词/代词 + 介词：

“动词 + 名词/代词 + 介词”这类短语动词也只能用作及物动词。例如：

We could do nothing about bad traffic.

The children in that nursery are taken good care of.

(6) be + 形容词 + 介词：

“be + 形容词 (包括相当于形容词的过去分词) + 介词”这类短语动词也相当于及物动词。

例如：

The girls are afraid of snakes.

I was deeply upset about it.

## (二) 连系动词

连系动词意义不完整，在句中作谓语动词时，后面必须跟表语。连系动词有三类：

1. 表示特征或状态

这类连系动词有 be, appear, seem, look, sound, smell, taste, feel 等。例如：

Why does she appear so sad?



Your sentence doesn't sound right.

——Do you like the material?

——Yes, it feels very soft.

## 2. 表示状态变化过程

这类连系动词可以和形容词连用表示由一种状态变成另一种状态。常用的系动词有 become, get, grow, go, come, prove, turn, turn out 等。例如:

The weather has become warm.

——Can I join your club?

——You can when you get a bit older.

Our dream has come true.

The day turned out to be fine.

As time went on, his theory proved to be true.

## 3. 保持某种状态

常用的这类连系动词有: keep, remain, continue, stay 等。例如:

Keep quiet, please.

The weather continued fine for some days.

She stays slim by going on a diet.

**注意:** 连系动词后不能用副词作表语。例如:

{ (误) The flowers smell sweetly.

{ (误) How well the doll looks!

{ (正) The flowers smell sweet.

{ (正) How nice the doll looks!

有些动词既可以作连系动词, 又可以作行为动词。例如:

{ He looked sad at the news.

{ He looked sadly at the sick boy.

{ The dish tastes good.

{ The cook tasted a bit of soup.

{ The silk feels soft.

{ The tailor felt the silk.

## (三) 助动词

助动词本身无词汇意义, 不能单独用作谓语。它们有 do, be, have, shall (should), will (would) 等。它们在句中与行为动词一起构成各种时态、语态和语气以及否定和疑问结构。例如:

The child was crying because his mother was out. (主句用于过去进行时)

She had been ill for two days when we learned about it. (用于过去完成时)

The idea was given up years ago. (用于被动语态)

I don't care what she thinks. (用于否定结构)

When shall we meet again? (用于疑问结构)

Do write to me. (用于祈使语气)

### 1. do

#### (1) 基本形式:



| 时 态            | 人 称              | 肯定式  | 否定式               |
|----------------|------------------|------|-------------------|
| 一般<br>现在<br>时态 | 第一、二人称<br>第三人称复数 | do   | do not, don't     |
|                | 第三人称单数           | does | does not, doesn't |
| 一般<br>过去<br>时态 | 所有人称             | did  | did not, didn't   |

(2) 功能:

构成否定句。例如:

Water does not freeze above 0℃.

They do not like English.

构成疑问句。例如:

Do you take any interest in golfing?

Did the police catch the robber finally?

构成谓语动词强调形式。例如:

She does get up early every morning.

He did go there yesterday.

构成祈使句。例如:

Don't be afraid.

构成反意疑问句。例如:

They never agreed with you, did they?

起替代作用。例如:

—Your mother promised you a personal computer.

—So she did. (=She promised me a personal computer.)

2. be

(1) 基本形式:

| 时 态           | 人 称               | 肯定式              | 否定式                                     | 说 明                                                              |
|---------------|-------------------|------------------|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 一般<br>现在<br>时 | 单数 { 第一人称<br>第三人称 | am, 'm<br>is, 's | am not, 'm not<br>is not, 's not, isn't | am not 无<br>简略否定形<br>式; aren't<br>I 用于单数<br>第一人称的<br>反意疑问句<br>中。 |
|               | 第二人称<br>第一、三人称复数  | are, 're         | are not, 're not, aren't                |                                                                  |
| 过<br>去<br>时   | 第一、三人称单数          | was              | was not, wasn't                         |                                                                  |
|               | 第二人称<br>第一、三人称复数  | were             | were not, weren't                       |                                                                  |
|               | 现在分词              | being            | not being                               |                                                                  |
|               | 过去分词              | been             |                                         |                                                                  |



(2) 功能:

助动词 be 主要用于构成进行时态、被动语态或与具有动作特征的形容词构成祈使句。例如:

They are playing table tennis on the grass.

The wet clothes were hung on the line.

Be calm.

3. have

(1) 基本形式:

| 时 态   | 人 称              | 肯定式       | 否定式                        |
|-------|------------------|-----------|----------------------------|
| 一般现在时 | 第一、二人称<br>复数第三人称 | have, 've | have not, 've not, haven't |
|       | 单数第三人称           | has, 's   | has not, 's not, hasn't    |
| 过去时   | 所有人称             | had, 'd   | had not, 'd not, hadn't    |
| 现在分词  |                  | having    | not having                 |
| 过去分词  |                  | had       |                            |

(2) 功能:

助动词 have 主要用于构成完成时态和作半助动词 have to, have got to, had better 等。例

如:

He has been here for three hours.

The film had begun when I got to the cinema.

They had to walk upstairs as the lift was out of order.

4. shall 和 will

shall 和 will 作为助动词主要用于构成一般将来时态。shall 用于第一人称, will 用于第三人称, 这是英国英语中的用法。而在美语中 will 也用于第一人称, 现在趋向于各个人称都用 will。shall 和 will 还带有一定的情态意义“意图”。例如:

We shall/will visit the new international airport tomorrow.

The Whites will fly to China.

5. 半助动词

半助动词可以分为三类。

(1) 以 be 为中心构成的半助动词:

这类半助动词通常有 be to 将要, be about to 即刻将要, be going to 打算, be sure to 肯定, be certain to 肯定, be likely to 很可能等, 后接动词不定式。例如:

The exhibition is to be opened on the fifth of next month.

We were to go out when it began to rain.

If you study hard, you are sure to succeed.

(2) 以 have 为中心词的半助动词:

这类半助动词有 have got to, have to, had better 等。

have got to 后接不定式一般式, 不用完成式和进行式, 通常用于口语中表示“必须”。该结构只用于现在时, 不用过去时、将来时和完成时。例如:



They have got to have their chests X-rayed.

I've got to telephone him now.

have to 后接不定式一般是表示“不得不、必须”，可以用于现在时、过去时、将来时或完成时。例如：

I have to put off my trip because of the rain.

He said he had to see me about something important.

We'll have to stay here for the night.

In the last few days I have had to take a rest.

have to 通常用 do 构成否定和疑问形式。例如：

Do I have to put these sentences into English?

We didn't have to do the job before five.

这里注意 had better 与 would rather 的用法：

had better 后接不带 to 的不定式，它没有人称和时态的变化。其否定形式为 had better not do，表示提出建议或劝告，“最好（不）……”口语中常省略 had。例如：

You'd better think it over before making a decision.

They had better not walk across the grass.

Better stop here and take a rest.

Better not make any noise.

would rather “宁愿做某事”，用法与 had better 一样：

I would rather have outdoor sports.

We would rather not go to the cinema now.

would rather... than 意为“宁愿……而不……”。例如：

I would rather watch a ball game than see a film. (=I prefer to watch a ball game rather than see a film.)

She would rather do nothing than read such a book.

(3) 以 seem, appear, happen 等动词为中心的半助动词

这类半助动词后接带 to 的动词不定式，可以转换成“it seems/appears, happened that...”结构。例如：

These grammar rules seem to be easy to us.

It seems that these grammar rules are easy to us.

The man appeared to know about the accident.

It appeared that the man knew about the accident.

We happened to have her address.

It happened that we had her address.

这类结构的否定式可以有两种形式：

Jane seems not to have any trouble in solving the problem.

Jane doesn't seem to have any trouble in solving the problem.

The boy appears not to be learning quickly.

The boy doesn't appear to be learning quickly.



{ They happened not to have the key to the exercises.  
{ They didn't happen to have the key to the exercises.

(四) 情态动词

情态动词有一定的意义，但词义不完整，不能单独在句中作谓语；情态动词无人称和数的变化，和不带 to 的动词不定式连用，一起构成句子的谓语，表示对动作或状态的各种情感，态度和看法。情态动词的各种形式见下表：

| 现在形式     |                             | 过去时形式   |                                            |
|----------|-----------------------------|---------|--------------------------------------------|
| 肯定式      | 否定式                         | 肯定式     | 否定式                                        |
| can      | can not<br>can't            | could   | could not<br>couldn't                      |
| may      | may not<br>mayn't           | might   | might not<br>mightn't                      |
| shall    | shall not<br>shan't         | should  | should not<br>shouldn't                    |
| will     | will not<br>won't           | would   | would not<br>wouldn't                      |
| dare     | dare not<br>daren't         | dared   | dared not<br>daredn't                      |
| must     | must not<br>mustn't         | had to  | had not to<br>hadn't to                    |
| ought to | ought not to<br>oughtn't to | used to | used not to<br>usedn't to<br>didn't use to |
| need     | need not<br>needn't         |         |                                            |

情态动词在使用上体现出相互交叉的特点，也就是说，同一语言功能可以用不同的情态动词表达。下面我们从语言交际功能出发对情态动词的用法作一归纳。

1. can/could 表示能力

(1) can/could:

can/could 用于表示由知识经验或体力而形成的能力，或由客观情况造成的能力。例如：  
Mary can cook very nice Chinese dishes.

Now we've finished the job, so we can help you.

can/could 往往与表示感觉或心理状态的动词连用表示某种持续的感觉。例如：

I can hear her singing in the next room.

(2) can/could 与 be able to:

① 当表示现在、将来以及泛指过去的的能力时，can/could 与 be able to 可以互用。例如：

He can/is able to stand on his head against the wall.

As a child, she could/was able to play the violin fairly well.

但 be able to 可以广泛用于表示各种时间。例如：



My son has been able to read short stories.

She had been able to speak a little English before she came to America.

②表示过去具体的“设法做成某事”，只能用 was/were able to，这时它相当于 managed to do 或 succeeded in doing，而不可以用 could。例如：

The fire spread through the hotel very quickly but everyone was able to get out.

但在否定结构中二者没有区别。例如：

He couldn't/wasn't able to find the way as the snow was too heavy.

③can 既可用于人，又可用于其他事物作主语的句子中；而 be able to 只用于有生命的名词、代词作主语的句子中。例如：

I can hardly imagine Peter sailing across the Atlantic Ocean in five days.

It can be inferred from the text that the teacher from Guangdong province felt proud of the gold medal winners.

④带 can 的主动式结构的句子可变成被动式结构，而带 be able to 的主动句不能变为被动式结构的句子。例如：

Active voice: We can use coal to produce electricity for agriculture and industry.

Passive voice: Coal can be used to produce electricity for agriculture and industry.

⑤在 be able to 之前可加一个其他情态动词（但不能有 can be able to 的结构）或把 be 改为某些系动词（如 seem, turn, look），而 can 则不能这样。例如：

I ought to be able to run an English study class.

He seemed able to get out of the trouble.

2. may/might, can/could 表示许可

(1) 给予许可：

表示说话人给予许可或在正式场合表示普遍的许可可用 may 或 can（多用于口语中，且语气较随便）。例如：

You may/can go now.

Visitors may/can visit the history museum without buying tickets.

(2) 请求对方许可：

可用句型 Can/May/Could/Might/I...? can 语气最不正式，could 语气比较客气，may/might 用于正式场合，语气恭敬，might 比 may 更为客气。例如：

Can I use your dictionary?

May I watch TV after supper?

Could I park my car here for a moment?

Might I use your telephone?

回答时可以说：

肯定：Of course, you can/may.

否定：No, you can't/may not. 或 No, you mustn't. 或 No, you'd better not.

不管是肯定回答还是否定回答，都不可以用 could 或 might 作答。

另外，may/might 也可用于 if 条件句中表示征求听话人的许可。例如：

Your translation needs improving if I may say so.

(3) 表示不许可：

可用 may not, can't, must not, shall not 等结构。例如：

The road is under repair. Bicycle riders may not/can't pass through it.



Visitors must not smoke in the hall.

You shall not leave your post before I come.

3. may/might, can/could 表示可能

(1) 可能性的表示:

用 may/might 表示事实上的可能性; can/could 表示从理论上或习惯上推测动作或状态有产生的可能。例如:

I hear there may/might be a few copies left.

He is good tempered, but he can/could get angry.

(2) 可能性的否定:

may/might not 表示某动作或状态可能不会发生或存在; can't/couldn't 表示某动作或状态不可能发生或存在, 比较下面句子:

He may not be in the classroom. (=It's possible that he is not in the classroom)

He can't be in the classroom. (=It's impossible that he is in the classroom)

Tom might not be honest.

Tom could not be honest.

但在具有否定意义的句子中表示不可能仍用 can/could。例如:

She can/could hardly be wrong.

Without air, there can be no life.

(3) 询问是否有可能性:

在疑问句中通常用 can/could, 也可以用 might, 但一般不用 may。例如:

Might/Could/Can it be true?

Who can/could it be?

4. must, will/would, should/ought to 表示必定

(1) 推测肯定要发生的动作或状态:

可用 must 表示肯定的推测语气, 意为“一定, 必定”。例如:

You must be hungry after the long walk.

The light is on. They must be in the room.

“must+be”是对现在的推测, 只能用在肯定句中, 其否定式为 can't, 表示“不可能”。

(不能够用 mustn't be)。例如:

——Look, someone is coming. It must be our headmaster.

——It can't be him. He has gone to Beijing.

“must+have+p. p.”表示对过去事情的推测, 无否定形式。例如:

Her father thought that she must have met a fairy.

They must have waited here for a long time.

The ground is wet. It must have rained last night.

(2) 其他肯定语气的表示:

will/would 表示一种较弱的肯定语气“想必, 谅必, 大概”。例如:

The boy doesn't want to eat anything. He will/would be ill.

语气更弱的是 ought to/should, 表示“较小的可能性”, 可以用于表示否定意义。例如:

They left at six in the morning. They ought to/should be home now.

She knows the place well. She ought to/should have no trouble finding the way.



(3) 对事物发展必然进程的预测:

must, will 也用于表示按逻辑推理必然要发生的事情。must 相当于 will certainly, 语气较强, will 语气较弱。例如:

All men must die.

Oil will float on water.

5. will/would, used to 表示习惯

(1) will 表示习惯性动作, 有“总是, 惯于”的意思。例如:

Fish will die out of water.

He will talk for hours if you give him a /the chance.

(2) would/used to + 动词原形表示过去的习惯。二者区别如下:

① used to 强调与现在对比, 含有“过去如此, 而现在不再如此”之意, 而 would 则无此意。例如:

Mother used to tell us stories when we were young.

Sometimes after supper mother would sit under the tree and tell us stories.

② used to 后面可接表状态的动词, 含有“过去一向……”之意, 而 would 则不能这样用。

例如:

China is no longer what it used to be fifty years ago.

③ used to 用于表示过去有规则的习惯, 而 would 表示过去不规则的习惯。例如:

I used to play ping-pong a lot in my spare time, but now I am interested in football.

He would often come to see me when I was living in the country.

④ would 含有主观的感情色彩, 即表示自觉的行为和动作; 而 used to 只表示过去的事实, 比较客观。例如:

She would help me with my English on Sundays.

The antient Egyptian kings used to build pyramids as tombs.

6. must, should/ought to 表示义务

(1) 表示必须做某事:

must 用于表示说话人命令他人或自己做或不做某事。例如:

Everybody must obey the rules.

The work must be finished as soon as possible.

You mustn't lend it to others.

ought to/should 也可以表示有义务或责任, 语气比 must 弱, 其否定结构具有劝告和建议的含义。例如:

You ought to/should follow your father's advice.

You oughtn't to/shouldn't get up so late in the morning.

(2) 表示没有必要做某事:

通常用 needn't, don't have to, don't need to 表示。例如:

You needn't/don't have to/don't need to worry about it.

(3) 询问是否必须做某事:

通常用句型 Must...? Need...? 注意这类句子的回答。

——Must I be home before eight o'clock?

——Yes, you must. /No, you needn't /don't have to/don't need to.



- { —Need we go over all the lessons?  
 { —Yes, you must. /No, you needn't/don't have to/don't need to.

注意用 have to 或 need 作实义动词的疑问句形式。例如:

- { —Do we need to/have to go over all the lessons?  
 { —Yes, you do.

(4) must 与 have to:

must 与 have to 意义接近。但 must 表示说话人的主观看法, 而 have to 表示的是客观需要。have to 比 must 有更多的形式。例如:

I want to take more exercise, so I must walk to school every day.

I couldn't get a taxi, so I had to walk home.

The students of today will have to know how to use the computers of tomorrow.

(5) must 表示责备语气:

must 常用来表示对与自己愿望相反的事的不耐烦口气, 可译为“偏要”。例如:

Must you shout so loudly?

Why must you interrupt me now and then while I'm speaking?

7. shall, will 表示意志

根据说话人语气强弱表示意志可以分为意图、意愿和坚持。

(1) 表示意图:

① shall/will 常用于表示说话人欲做某事的意图、意向。英国英语中 shall 用于第一人称, will 用于第二、第三人称, 而美国英语中 will 用于所有人称。例如:

I shall/will telephone her tonight.

We shall/will let you know our telephone number.

What job will you take?

② 当说话人想要或建议做某事, 征求对方意见时可用结构 Shall I...? 或 Shall we...? 注意使用正确的回答形式。例如:

- |                                |                                        |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| { —Shall I turn on the TV set? | { —Shall I close the windows?          |
| { —Go ahead, please.           | { —Please don't.                       |
| { —Shall we leave now?         | { —Shall we go to the cinema together? |
| { —Yes, let's.                 | { —I'm not quite interested.           |

(2) 表示意愿:

① 可用 will/would 表示句子主语的意愿。例如:

Father will not allow us to use his recorder.

If you need money badly, I will lend you some.

He said he would adopt the orphan if nobody wanted to.

② 询问对方的意愿可用句型 Will/Would you...?

Will/Would you join us?

而 Won't you...? Can/Could you...? 常用于口语中表示请求。例如:

Won't you sit down?

Can you help me with my English?

Could you show me the way to the station?

Would you like to...? Would you mind...? 表示语气比较婉转的请求。例如:

Would you mind my taking this seat?



Would you like to go for a walk with me?

如果语气更婉转一些还可以说 I wonder if you will/would/can/could...。例如:

I wonder if you will/would lend me your dictionary.

I wonder if you can/could pass me the magazine.

(3) 表示坚持:

① will/would 表示说话人的强烈的意志和决心, 在句中必须重读, 且不用简略形式 'll。

例如:

I have advised her not to give up the plan but he will.

Mother has told him time and again to stop smoking, but he won't.

They would work on in spite of the heavy rain.

② shall 用于第二、第三人称表示说话人对于句子主语的意志, 如命令、警告、允诺等。例如:

You shall stay here until I come back.

Our plan shall be carried out.

You shall get a present on your birthday.

③ shall 表示说话人的意志, will 则表示句子主语的意志。例如:

They shall do what I tell them to do. He shall not leave before six o'clock.

They will do what I tell them to do. He will not leave before six o'clock.

8. dare 与 need

(1) dare 作为情态动词意思是“敢”, 用于否定句和疑问句中, 有时也用于条件句中。例如:

How dare you say I'm unfair?

He hardly dare ask.

If you dare do such a thing, you'll be sorry.

She daren't tell the boss because she doesn't want to make trouble.

dare 也可以作为行为动词使用, 构成否定句与疑问句时借助于助动词 do/did, 在肯定句中, 后面接带 to 的不定式, 在否定句中 to 可以省略。例如:

He dares to ask me that!

We stared at one another, not daring (to) speak out loud.

Do they dare to come?

The enemy didn't dare (to) come out

(2) need 作为情态动词, 表示“需要, 必需”, 通常用在否定句或疑问句中。例如:

He needn't pay for it.

Need they come again tomorrow?

need 作为行为动词后接带 to 的不定式。例如:

You don't need to do the exercise if you find it too easy.

He needs some time to think over the question.

We needed to water the flowers.

如果是物或没有自理能力的人作主语时, need 后接动名词主动式 (表示被动意义) 作宾语, 也可以接不定式的被动式作宾语。例如:

The trees need watering/to be watered.

These children needed looking after/to be looked after.



### 9. 情态动词+be+v. -ing

(1) might/may/could/should/ought to/would/will/must+be+v. -ing 表示对正在进行的动作的推测。例如:

It's half past six now. They might be having dinner.

—Where is Jack?

—He could be playing in the garden.

It's quiet in the classroom. The pupils will/would be doing their homework.

I suppose the concert has begun. They must be enjoying the lovely music.

(2) { may/might not+be+v. -ing  
can't/couldn't be+v. -ing

前者表示“正在进行中的动作或状态可能没有发生”，而后者则表示“正在进行中的动作或状态不可能发生”。比较下列每组句子的意义:

{ Jack and his parents may/might not be having lunch in the restaurant now.

{ Jack and his parents can't/couldn't be having lunch in the restaurant now.

{ Don't hurry. They may/might not be waiting for us at the gate.

{ Don't hurry. They can't/couldn't be waiting for us at the gate.

(3) mustn't be+v. -ing 表示不满语气。例如:

When you are reading, you mustn't always be translating everything into Chinese.

Parents mustn't always be worrying about their children.

### 10. 情态动词+have+p. p.

情态动词+have+p. p. 这种结构表示对过去情况的估计、推测, 或是对过去已发生的事情表示后悔、遗憾、责备等, 至于具体含义则由所用的情态动词及其句法结构而定, 一般说来, 常见的有下面几种情况:

(1) can/could+have+p. p. :

这种结构多用于否定句和疑问句中, 表示对过去某事发生的可能性的否定或质疑, 意为“不可能/会(已经)……的”和“可能/会(已经)……的吗?”例如:

They can't have gone out because the light is on.

Can he have left already?

如用 could 代替 can, 则表示说话人的语气的缓和与不肯定。另外 could+have+p. p. 还可表示对过去发生的动作或状态的推测。如:

She looks unhappy. She could have got into trouble.

could+have+p. p. 还可表示“本可以……(但实际上并未如此)”的意义。例如:

—I stayed at a hotel while in New York.

—Oh, did you? You could have stayed with Barbara.

You could have done it better.

(2) may/might+have+p. p. :

表示对过去发生的动作或状态的推测。例如:

Jackson hasn't come. He may/might have missed the train.

She may/might not have achieved all her aims. But her effort is worth praising.

(3) must+have+p. p. :

用于肯定句中, 表示对过去事情的推测, 意为“想必、一定、准是……”。例如:

I didn't hear the phone. I must have been asleep.



The old woman must have suffered a great deal.

本结构在变为反意疑问句时，其反意疑问部分不可使用 must，而是要根据具体的时间概念，采用 didn't 或 haven't/hasn't。例如：

He must have studied English last night, didn't he?

He must have studied English for years, hasn't he?

(4) need+have+p. p. :

这种结构只用于否定句中，表示“做了不必要做的事情”意为“本可不必”。例如：

You needn't have told him about our plans.

We needn't have extended our stay there.

注意“needn't+have+p. p.”与“didn't need”的意思不同。试比较：

{ She needn't have come to see me yesterday.

{ She didn't need to come to see me yesterday.

(5) should/ought to+have+p. p.

①在肯定句中，这种结构用来表示“过去应该做（或值得做）而没有做”。例如：

You're right. I should have thought of that.

We should have studied last night, but we went to the concert instead.

②在否定句中，这种结构表示因出了某种差错而带有非难或不太赞许的口吻，意为“不应该做而实际上已经做了某事”。例如：

He oughtn't to have refused.

You shouldn't have told her the sad news.

③在这种结构中，ought to 比 should 语气更强烈。例如：

She ought to have helped you a lot.

Tom ought not to have told me your secret, but he meant no harm.

## 练习题

- Shall we go to school now?  
—No, you \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. mustn't      B. wouldn't      C. needn't      D. shouldn't
- My girl friend \_\_\_\_\_ come with us tonight, but she isn't very sure yet.  
A. must      B. can      C. may      D. will
- It is nearly eight o'clock. Our teacher \_\_\_\_\_ be here at any moment.  
A. must      B. need      C. should      D. can
- Jack, there is the doorbell. Alice have arrived.  
—It \_\_\_\_\_ be Alice. She's on holiday in Hawaii.  
A. mustn't      B. shouldn't      C. needn't      D. can't
- The fire spread through the hotel very quickly but everyone \_\_\_\_\_ get out.  
A. had to      B. would      C. could      D. was able to
- You \_\_\_\_\_ tell anyone about this—it's a secret.  
A. mustn't      B. needn't      C. won't      D. may not
- The phone is ringing, but there is no answer. My friend \_\_\_\_\_ be at home.



- A. mustn't                      B. can't                      C. needn't                      D. may
8. There \_\_\_\_\_ be any difficulty about passing the road test since you have practiced a lot in the driving school.
- A. mustn't                      B. shan't                      C. shouldn't                      D. needn't
9. There was a lot of fun at yesterday's party. You \_\_\_\_\_ come, but why didn't you?
- A. need have                      B. should have
- C. ought not to have                      D. must have
10. —Is John coming by train?  
—He should, but he \_\_\_\_\_ not. He likes driving his car.
- A. may                      B. must                      C. can                      D. need

第二节 动词的时态



(参见视频 2-9-2)

一、动词时态的种类

英语中不同时间和方式发生的动作或状态要用谓语动词的不同形式来表示,这种表示动作或状态发生时间和方式的动词形式称作动词时态。表示时间有四个主要部分,即现在、过去、将来和过去将来。表示动作方面也有四种,即一般、完成、进行和完成进行。把这些时间与动作方面组合在一起,就构成 16 种时态,如下表所示(以动词 play 为例):

| 动 作<br>时 态 | 一 般                      | 进 行                            | 完 成                             | 完成进行                                    |
|------------|--------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| 现在         | 一般现在时<br>We play         | 现在进行时<br>We're playing         | 现在完成时<br>We have played         | 现在完成进行时<br>We have been playing         |
| 过去         | 一般过去时<br>We played       | 过去进行时<br>We were playing       | 过去完成时<br>We had played          | 过去完成进行时<br>We had been playing          |
| 将来         | 一般将来时<br>We will play    | 将来进行时<br>We'll be playing      | 将来完成时<br>We will have played    | 将来完成进行时<br>We'll have been playing      |
| 过去将来       | 一般过去将来时<br>We would play | 过去将来进行时<br>We would be playing | 过去将来完成时<br>We would have played | 过去将来完成进行时<br>We would have been playing |



## 二、动词时态的用法

### (一) 一般现在时

#### 1. 一般现在时态的构成

肯定式：主 + *v.* / *v.* -s

否定式：主 + don't / doesn't + *v.*

疑问式：Do / Does + 主 + *v.* ?

这里，当主语是第三人称单数形式时，肯定句中谓语动词后须接-s/-es，构成否定句和疑问句时要借助于助动词 does。例如：

He/She works very hard.

The student doesn't often go to the cinema.

—Does she live here?

—Yes, she does. (No, she doesn't)

#### 2. 一般现在时态的用法

(1) 表示经常发生的动作或存在的状态。通常与频度副词如 always, often, usually, every day, never, sometimes 等连用，有时时间状语可以不表示出来。例如：

They always study hard.

We sometimes go to the cinema.

(2) 表示主语的特征或状态。例如：

The students are very interested in science.

He is always like that.

The door is open.

Her mother is a middle school teacher.

(3) 表示日常行为或习惯能力。例如：

They wake up at six o'clock, dress, wash quickly and run into the dining hall for breakfast and then go to school. (表日常行为)

She keeps a diary every day. (表习惯)

Miss Wang teaches English. (表职业)

Do you speak French? (表能力)

(4) 表客观真理，格言、警句等。例如：

The earth moves around the sun.

Failure is the mother of success.

Knowledge is power.

Time and tide wait for no man.

(5) 在剧本、新闻标题、动作解说、戏剧性描绘时大量使用一般现在时。例如：

President Resigns. (新闻标题)

A small boy runs into the greengrocer's shop. He pushes his way through the women and goes to the front of the counter. (剧本说明)

Now watch carefully what I do I put a small piece of zinc into the test-tube and add some acid to it, now you see some bubbles. (动作解说)

(6) 由 when, while, before, after, until, as soon as 等引导的时间状语从句以及由 if 引导的条件状语从句，可用一般现在时表示经常发生的动作或存在的状态。例如：

When I meet with an unknown word or phrase, I look it up in the dictionary.

Before my husband goes to bed, he takes a bath in the bath room.



If you speak slowly, I understand; if you speak quickly, I don't understand.

(7) 一般现在时亦可表现在时刻发生的动作或存在的状态和完成的动作。例如:

What time is it now by your watch?

His mother is much better now.

What is China like now?

She refuses to make up her mind.

There goes the bell!

(8) 一般现在时有时可以用来表示过去发生的动作或状态。例如:

What wind blows you here?

How do you come to know Jack?

He leaves a wife and three children and a lot of debts.

(9) 一般现在时有时可以表示将来发生的动作或存在的状态。例如:

Here I give you some examples.

I read my paper tomorrow.

注意 go, come, arrive, leave, start, sail 等用一般现在时态表示事先安排好的动作。例如:

The plane leaves at three o'clock.

The performance begins in a moment.

另外 be 和 have 有时用一般现在时表示将来, 强调未来的事实或已经规定的事情。例如:

Tomorrow is Wednesday.

抽象地谈论未来时, 由于时间概念很弱, 也用一般现在时。例如:

Final victory is ours.

The future is bright.

## (二) 一般过去时

### 1. 一般过去时的构成

肯定式: 主 + v. -ed

否定式: 主 + didn't + v.

疑问式: Did + 主 + v. ?

这里须注意的是: 规则动词的过去式是在动词原形后接-ed, 不规则动词的过去式是特殊变化, 必须牢记。

### 2. 一般过去时态的用法

(1) 表示过去某一时间所发生的动作或存在的状态。一般过去时常与表示明确的过去时间状语连用, 如 then, at that time, just now, last week, in 1900, during the night, in those days 等。例如:

On Saturday afternoon, Mrs Green went to the market, bought some bananas and visited her cousin.

My sister suddenly fell ill yesterday.

Last week we held an important meeting.

除了与表示过去的时间状语连用外, 一般过去时态还可以与由 when, while 等引导的表示过去的时间状语从句连用。例如:

When I was at college, I spoke three foreign languages.

While walking along the street, he caught sight of a tailor's shop.

(2) 有时一般过去时的句子用地点状语暗示动作发生的时间是过去或者可以省去时间状语。例如:



—Have you seen a pen? I left it here this morning.

—Is it a black one? I think I saw it somewhere.

Did you sleep well?

She is no longer the person she was.

(3) 一般过去时用在条件或时间状语从句中,表示过去将来的动作,前提是主句的动词表示将来。例如:

Helen had left her keys in the office so she had to wait until her husband came home.

He said he would come if he had time.

The beggar said he wouldn't leave unless I gave him some money.

(4) 描述已故之人的动作或状态都用一般过去时。例如:

Mark Twain wrote a lot of short stories.

Albert Einstein devoted all his life to physics research.

—Who is the man in the picture?

—He was my father.

(5) 用于 since 从句中。主句的谓语动词常用一般现在时或现在完成时, since 从句用一般过去时。例如:

It has been/It is over a month since we met last.

这里 since 从句的谓语动词是短暂性动词,表示从动作发生到现在有多长时间。如果 since 从句的谓语动词是延续性的,则表示这一动作或状态从结束到现在有多长时间。例如:

It's 3 years since she worked here.

It has been five years since I was a teacher.

(6) 一般过去时有时可以表示现在、过去将来或过去的过去。例如:

I didn't know you were here. (指现在)

He told me that school opened the following morning. (指过去将来)

The student said he was sorry for what he did. (表示过去的过去)

### (三) 一般将来时

#### 1. 一般将来时的构成

肯定式: 主 + will/shall + v.

否定式: 主 + will/shall not + v.

疑问式: Shall/Will + 主 + v. ?

#### 2. 一般将来时的用法

(1) 一般将来时表示将来某一时间要发生的动作或所处的状态。通常与表示将来的时间状语如 soon, next week, tomorrow 等连用。例如:

A new headmaster will come next term.

—Don't forget to come to my birthday party tomorrow.

—I won't.

一般将来时也可以和 now, today, tonight 等时间状语连用。例如:

I'll do it now.

They'll come at nine tonight.

当上下文意思清楚时,时间状语可以省略。例如:

You can go ahead, we'll catch up.

Will there be anything else?

(2) 与时间或条件状语从句连用。例如:

When we have time, we'll go there at once.



I'll give it to him as soon as he comes.

We will not go unless they invite us.

Study hard and you'll succeed.

有时在时间或条件状语从句暗含在上下文中。例如:

I know she will like it.

Don't disturb him. He'll be angry.

(3) 用于一般疑问句。含有助动词 shall 的一般将来时常用在由 Shall I/Shall we 引导的一般疑问句中, 询问对方的意图或愿望。注意这种问句的回答。请看下例:

— Shall I help you?

{ — Yes, please. (Please do.)

— Shall we call a taxi?

{ — Yes, let's. (No, I don't think we shall.)

— Shall I carry your box?

{ — No, thanks. (No, please don't.)

(4) 表示将要发生的动作, 除了用一般将来时外还可以用 be going to, be to do 以及 be about to do 来表达, 但注意其区别。

be going to do 表示事先经过考虑, 打算去做的事或有明显的迹象要发生的事, 可以用于条件状语从句中表示将来, 而 shall/will 则不能。例如:

— What are you going to do this evening?

— I'm going to do my lessons.

If you're going to come to my house, you'd better phone me first.

be to do 表示职责, 义务, 意图, 约定, 可能性或注定要发生的动作。例如:

All these things are to be answered for.

She and I are to meet at the school gate tomorrow.

be about to do 表示即将或正要做事, 句中不再加有时间状语。例如:

Autumn harvest is about to start.

#### (四) 现在进行时

##### 1. 现在进行时的构成

肯定式: 主 + be (am, is, are) + v. -ing

否定式: 主 + be (am, is, are) + not + v. -ing

疑问式: Am/Is/Are + 主 + v. -ing

##### 2. 现在进行时的用法

(1) 现在进行时表示说话时正在进行的动作, 可以与 now, at present, at this moment, these days 等时间状语连用, 也可不用时间状语。例如:

What are you doing now?

They are rowing a boat on the lake.

The telephone is ringing. Would you answer it, please?

(2) 表示目前一段时间正在进行的动作 (但说话时不一定在进行)。例如:

George is translating a Chinese book now.

We are learning the history of America this term.

(3) 现在进行时态有时可以用来与过去对比。例如:

We are speaking English much more fluently than we used to.

My son is reading much more carefully than he used to.

(4) 一些表位移的动词如 go, come, leave, arrive, stay, start 等用现在进行时表示一个按计划、安排将要发生的动作。例如:

He is coming to see you tomorrow.



When are you starting?

(5) 现在进行时与 *always*, *constantly*, *forever* 等连用, 可代替一般现在时, 表达说话人的某种感情, 常常表示某种令人不悦的情况。例如:

He is always asking his parents for money.

Rivers are constantly flowing into the sea.

(6) 有时现在进行时还可表示离现在较近的过去。例如:

Every word he is telling you is right.

I'm forgetting my dictionary.

## (五) 过去进行时

### 1. 过去进行时的构成

肯定式: 主 + *was/were* + *v. -ing*.

否定式: 主 + *was/were not* + *v. -ing*.

疑问式: *Was/Were* + 主 + *v. -ing*?

### 2. 过去进行时的用法

(1) 过去进行时表示过去某一时间正在进行的动作。它和一般过去时一样, 也常和表过去的时间状语连用。例如:

I was having a bath at eleven last night.

The children were practising the song at nine o'clock yesterday evening.

Shirley was writing a book about China last year but I don't know whether she has finished it.

过去某一时刻也可以用时间状语从句表示。例如:

When I came to visit her, she was reading.

The sun was shining brightly when they climbed to the top of the hill.

但许多情况下表示过去的时间状语并不明确指示, 而是从情景中暗示出需要用过去进行时态。例如:

I don't think Jim saw me, because he was just starting into space.

She asked how I was getting along with my English study.

(2) 表示在过去某个过程中发生的动作, 而这个过程往往用过去进行时表示, 说明动作发生的背景, 而发生的动作则用一般过去时态表示。例如:

When I was walking along the street, I met an old friend of mine.

We were talking happily when someone knocked at the door.

有时在时间状语从句中需要强调两个动作同时进行, 则两部分都可以用过去进行时或一般过去时。例如:

While one policeman was keeping/kept guard at the door, the other was watching/watched at the gate.

(3) 过去进行时可用来申述原因或用作借口, 这种用法多用在口语中。例如:

The man went to the clinic yesterday. He was having a lot of trouble with his lung.

—Have you finished your homework?

—No, I was helping my father to water the flowers in the garden all day yesterday.

(4) 表示故事发生的背景。例如:

It was a lovely morning. Some people were sitting on the river bank. Some people were walking with their dogs. Some children were playing football nearby. Their parents were watching them with great interest.

(5) 某些表位移的动词如 *go*, *come*, *start*, *leave* 等的过去进行时, 可以表示过去将来要发生的动作。例如:



—Come on, Peter, I want to show you something.

—Oh, how nice of you! I never thought you were going to bring me a gift.

She telephoned us, saying that her uncle was coming soon.

## (六) 现在完成时

### 1. 现在完成时的构成

肯定式：主 + have/has + *p. p.*

否定式：主 + have/has not + *p. p.*

疑问式：Have/Has + 主 + *p. p.* ?

### 2. 现在完成时的用法

(1) 表示说话前某一时刻发生的动作，其结果对现在有影响。例如：

I have bought a new dictionary.

She has had breakfast.

Someone has broken the window.

现在完成时有时可以和一些表示不确定的过去时间状语连用，如 recently, just, yet, already, before 等。但不可以和表示明确的过去的时间状语连用如 when, in 1998, yesterday, last month 等连用。例如：

She has already taken the medicine.

They have just got the money from the company.

(2) 表示从过去某一时间到说话时这一过程中反复发生的动作或动作发生次数的总和。可以与频度状语 often, many times, rarely, once, twice 以及 so far, up to now, in the past, last few years 等连用。例如：

You don't need to describe her, I have met her several times.

We have had eight tests in English this term.

Great changes have taken place in the past 50 years in China.

现在完成时还可以和包括现在时间在内的时间状语如 today, this morning, this month, this year 等连用。例如：

We have learned all the lessons this year.

The shop has sold about 800 air-conditioners this month.

now 也可以用于现在完成时。例如：

They have now got everything ready.

(3) 现在完成时用在 It is the first/second... time that... 结构中。that 从句中的谓语动词用现在完成时，表示到说话时为止动作发生过几次。例如：

It is the first time that I have been to Beijing.

It is the third time that I have read the novel.

(4) 现在完成时表示从过去某时间开始一直延续到现在并可能一直延续下去的动作，用于延续性动词，常与“for+一段时间”或“since+某时间”的时间状语连用。例如：

The meeting has lasted for about 3 hours.

They have been friends since they met in Shanghai.

She has lived in Hong Kong since 1949.

但有时 since 从句也可以用现在完成时，这时 since 意为“在……期间”或“自……期间”的开头，从句的动词必须是延续性的。例如：

I have met her often since I have lived here.

We have learned a lot from them since we have known them.

这里须注意的是，非延续性动词不能与表示一段时间的状态或 since 连用。



(5) 用于时间和原因状语从句中。现在完成时可用于以 when, before, after, as soon as 等引导的时间状语从句中以强调动作的完成或结束。例如:

When they have finished their homework, they go home.

After I have studied a book I write a report on it.

现在完成时可用在 because 引导的原因状语从句中表示原因。例如:

We can't cross the river because the bridge has broken.

He can drive by himself because he has passed his tests.

(6) 结构 have been to/in 与 have gone to 的区别。have been to/in 表示“曾经到过”,说明有过某种经历,而 have gone to 表示“已去某地”,在途中或已到目的地。例如:

He has been to/in America.

Have you ever been to the Great Wall?

He has gone to America.

Have they gone to the Great Wall?

## (七) 过去完成时

### 1. 过去完成时的构成

肯定式: 主 + had + p. p.

否定式: 主 + had not + p. p.

疑问式: Had 主 + p. p.?

### 2. 过去完成时的用法

(1) 过去完成时表示的动作须在过去某一时间之前已经完成或结束,也就是说该动作发生在“过去的过去”。过去的某一时间常由 by 引起的时间状语或时间状语从句充当。例如:

By the end of last term, the students had learned about 20, 000 English words.

By the time we got to the cinema, the film had begun.

When it started raining, the peasants had got in all their crops.

有时过去某一时间也可以暗含在上下文中不表示出来。例如:

They didn't want to go on with the test because they had lost interest in it.

He came to realize the mistakes he had made.

Jane had stayed in Paris for a few months, so she knew how to cook French food.

(2) 表示持续到过去某一时间的动作或状态。例如:

It had rained for a week by Saturday.

Untill then we had waited at the railway station for about an hour.

(3) 用在以 when, than, before 等引导的一般过去时的从句中。例如:

No sooner had they left the house than it began to rain.

Hardly/Scarcely had the parents gone home when the child began to cry.

He had measured me before I could get in a word.

注意: 以 No sooner, Hardly 开头的句子其主句都用倒装语序。

(4) 用在一般过去时之后的间接引语中。例如:

She told me that she had visited the teacher.

He said that he had served in the army for two years.

(5) think, hope, want, mean, intend, expect 等表示主观想法的动词,用过去完成时态可以表示过去未曾实现的想法、希望、打算、意图等,意为“本来想……”。例如:

They had wanted to help, but they could not get there in time.

I had meant to come, but something happened.

We had intended to speak, but time did not permit.



## (八) 过去将来时

### 1. 过去将来时的构成

肯定式：主+would/should+v.

否定式：主+would/should not+v.

疑问式：Would/Should+主+v.?

### 2. 过去将来时的用法

(1) 过去将来时表示从过去某时看将要发生的动作或将要存在的状态，多用于主句谓语动词是一般过去时的宾语从句中。例如：

He thought he would be able to lock the door before the animal reached it.

They never imagined that Jack would become a doctor.

She said she would go to Beijing the next day.

(2) 除宾语从句外，过去将来时也可用于表示从过去某时看来将要发生的事的其他类型的句子中。例如：

She was seventeen. In two years, she would be nineteen.

## (九) 将来进行时

### 1. 将来进行时的构成

肯定式：主+will/shall be+v. -ing

否定式：主+will/shall not be+v. -ing

疑问式：Will/Shall+主+be+v. -ing?

### 2. 将来进行时的用法

(1) 将来进行时只限于表示动作的动词，着重于将要发生的动作本身，不带情态意义。例如：

What will you be doing from 5 to 6 tomorrow?

We will be giving the American guests a warm welcome at the airport.

这种形式表达的语气比较婉转、客气，常用于口语中进行提问。例如：

What places will you be visiting tomorrow?

(2) 表示将来某时间正在进行的动作。例如：

I will be writing the paper when you come this Sunday.

We will be watching the football match at ten tonight.

## (十) 过去将来进行时

### 1. 过去将来进行时的构成

肯定式：主+would/should+be+v. -ing

否定式：主+would/should not be+v. -ing

疑问式：Would/Should+主+be+v. -ing?

### 2. 过去将来进行时的用法

过去将来进行时表示在过去将来某一时间正在进行的动作。它常和表示过去将来的时间状语连用，但在上下文意思清楚时，时间状语可以不表示出来。这种时态常用在宾语从句尤其是间接引语中。例如：

Jack told me that his girl friend would be coming the next day.

They never realized that one day they would be living in America.

过去将来进行时也可用在独立句中。例如：

The car started. James would be driving off to the station to meet his friend.



### (十一) 将来完成时

#### 1. 将来完成时的构成

肯定式：主+will/shall have+*p. p.*

否定式：主+will/shall not have+*p. p.*

疑问式：Will/Shall+主+have+*p. p. ?*

#### 2. 将来完成时的用法

(1) 将来完成时表示在将来某一时间之前已经完成的动作，它常与表将来的时间状语连用。例如：

We shall/will have finished reading the novel by the end of this month.

Before long, they will have forgotten all about this matter.

有时可与 *ever, never, soon* 等时间状语连用。例如：

Will you soon have finished your homework?

(2) 将来完成时还可以和时间或条件状语从句连用。例如：

I will have got everything ready when you come back tomorrow.

If you come at eight o'clock, we will not yet have finished dinner.

### (十二) 过去将来完成时

#### 1. 过去将来完成时的构成

肯定式：主+would/should have+*p. p.*

否定式：主+would/should not have+*p. p.*

疑问式：Would/Should+主+have+*p. p. ?*

#### 2. 过去将来完成时的用法

过去将来完成时表示在过去将来某一时间之前已经完成的动作。它常常与表示过去将来的时间状语连用。例如：

The workers would have arrived by nine o'clock.

The day was drawing near when they would have completed the bridge.

### (十三) 现在完成进行时

#### 1. 现在完成进行时的构成

肯定式：主+have/has been+*v. -ing*

否定式：主+have/has not been+*v. -ing*

疑问式：Have/Has+主+been+*v. -ing?*

#### 2. 现在完成进行时的用法

现在完成进行时表示动作从过去某一时间开始进行，一直延续到现在，可能还要继续下去。它通常与表示一段时间的状态连用，如 *for hours, since 1996, all this time, this month, all night, all the morning, recently* 等。例如：

What has he been doing all this time?

I have been waiting for my brother all this morning.

His mother is ill. She's been lying in the bed for several days.

He has been teaching physics since he came to this school.

——Hi. Tracy, you look tired.

——I am tired. I have been painting the living room all day.

### (十四) 过去完成进行时

#### 1. 过去完成进行时的构成

肯定式：主+had been+*v. -ing*



否定式: 主+had not been+v. -ing

疑问式: Had+主+been+v. -ing?

## 2. 过去完成进行时的用法

过去完成进行时表示动作在过去某一时间之前开始, 一直延续到这一过去时间。动作是否继续下去, 则由上下文而定。过去完成进行时也必须以某一过去时间为前提。例如:

Mother had been looking for the book before she found it.

We had only been waiting for the train a few minutes when it came.

如果上下文清楚, 过去时间也可省略。例如:

We were tired. We had been working all day.

过去完成进行时还可用在间接引语中。例如:

I asked what he had been doing all the morning.

过去完成进行时后面也可以接上 when 引导的从句(从句常用一般过去时)。例如:

I had been writing a few minutes when my son came in.

He had only been studying his lesson for half an hour when his little brother interrupted him.

## (十五) 将来完成进行时

### 1. 将来完成进行时的构成

肯定式: 主+will/shall have been+v. -ing

否定式: 主+will/shall not have been+v. -ing

疑问式: Will/Shall+主+have been+v. -ing?

### 2. 将来完成进行时的用法

将来完成进行时表示动作从某一时间开始一直延续到将来某一时间。它常与表示将来的某一时间状语连用。例如:

I shall/will have been working in this school for 10 years by the end of this month.

If you don't hurry up, the bookstore will have been closing before you get there.

The film is coming off in October. By then the film will have been running for two months.

## (十六) 过去将来完成进行时

### 1. 过去将来完成进行时的构成

肯定式: 主+would/should have been+v. -ing

否定式: 主+would/should not have been+v. -ing

疑问式: Would/Should+主+have been+v. -ing?

### 2. 过去将来完成进行时的用法

同样, 动作是否继续下去, 由上下文决定。例如:

时态: They said that by the end of next term they would have been studying English for six years.

说明: 在上面所讲的十六种时态中, 最常用的只是前八种, 而后八种时态只是作为了解即可。

## 练习题

1. I will go there unless it \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow.



- A. rains                      B. will rain                      C. raining                      D. doesn't rain
2. The teacher said that the sun \_\_\_\_\_ in the east.  
A. rose                      B. raises                      C. rises                      D. is rising
3. Helen \_\_\_\_\_ her keys in the office so she had to wait until her husband \_\_\_\_\_ home.  
A. has left; comes                      B. left; had come  
C. had left; came                      D. had left; would come
4. Everybody in our country, men and women, old and young, \_\_\_\_\_ sports and games.  
A. joins                      B. enjoys                      C. go in for                      D. take part in
5. After driving for a long way, my friend suddenly realized that he \_\_\_\_\_ in the wrong direction.  
A. was driving                      B. has been driving  
C. had been driving                      D. drove
6. I will leave for Paris before you \_\_\_\_\_ next week.  
A. will come back    B. will be back                      C. come back                      D. came back
7. She wrote to me that she would come to see me when she \_\_\_\_\_ the job.  
A. would finish                      B. has finished  
C. would have finished                      D. had finished
8. My mother \_\_\_\_\_ supper when she \_\_\_\_\_ someone knocking at the door.  
A. made; heard                      B. was making; was hearing  
C. made; was heard                      D. was making; heard
9. He \_\_\_\_\_ with us since he returned.  
A. had lived                      B. has lived                      C. lives                      D. lived
10. It \_\_\_\_\_ a long time before we see each other again.  
A. will be                      B. is  
C. has been                      D. would have been
11. Peter said that he \_\_\_\_\_ home the next day.  
A. was going to    B. will go                      C. would go                      D. had gone
12. Great changes \_\_\_\_\_ in Beijing in the past few years  
A. have been taken place                      B. have taken place  
C. took place                      D. were taken place
13. I'm sure she will come to see me before she \_\_\_\_\_ London.  
A. leave for                      B. leaves for                      C. left for                      D. left
14. Unless you \_\_\_\_\_ to help me, I shall fail my English exam.  
A will promise    B. promised                      C. promising                      D. promise
15. When I saw Jane in the street, she \_\_\_\_\_ at me.  
A. was smiling    B. smiled                      C. smiles                      D. is smiling



## 第三节 被动语态

### 一、语态的含义和种类

动词语态 (voice) 是表示动词的主语与动词所表示的动作之间关系的一种动词形式。

动词语态有两种: 主动语态 (active voice) 和被动语态 (passive voice)。主动语态表示主语是动作的执行者, 被动语态表示主语是动作的承受者。例如:

We study English.

English is taught in our school.

### 二、被动语态的转换

由主动语态转换成被动语态可分为以下几种情况

#### 1. SVO (即主+谓+宾) 结构

(1) 这种结构在变为被动语态时, 先将主动句的宾语变为被动句的主语; 然后将主动结构中谓语动词的主动语态变为被动语态; 最后由 by 引出这个动作的执行者。例如:

Bell invented the telephone in 1876.

The telephone was invented by Bell in 1876.

如果没有必要说明动作的执行者, 则无须由 by 引出。例如:

He wrote the book in English.

The book was written in English.

(2) 如宾语是 that 从句, 变为被动语态时可以用 it 作被动句的形式主语, 如 It's known that, It's reported that, It's hoped that 等。例如:

We know that Taiwan is a part of China.

It's known that Taiwan is a part of China.

They say that the area is rich in natural gas.

It's said that the area is rich in natural gas.

上述句子也可以变为一简单句, 这时须用 that 从句的主语作简单句的主语, 变换如下:

Taiwan is known to be a part of China.

The area is said to be rich in natural gas.

#### 2. SVOO (即主+谓+双宾语) 结构

在这种结构中谓语动词一般带有双宾语, 即直接宾语和间接宾语。其变换方法如下:

(1) 把间接宾语转化为主语, 保留直接宾语。例如:

My father gave me a new bike.

I was given a new bike by my father.

(2) 把直接宾语转化为主语, 保留间接宾语。此时一般须在间接宾语前加上适当的介词。例如:

They paid us some money.

Some money was paid to us.

Mother bought me a new coat.

A new coat was bought for me.

并不是所有的动词都可以转化成为两种结构。下列动词通常只能把直接宾语转化为主语:

The letter was written to him.

The suit was made for me.

The idiom was explained to us again.

(3) 如果直接宾语是宾语从句或动词不定式, 则必须把间接宾语转化为主语。例如:

The teacher told us that we would have an English test soon.

We were told that we would have an English test soon.



The teacher taught the children how to swim.  
 { The children were taught how to swim.

### 3. SVOC (即主+谓+复合宾语) 结构

这种结构变为被动语态时通常把宾语转化成主语, 宾语补足语不变。

#### (1) 宾语补足语为分词:

We found the boy crying in the street.    They found all their seats occupied.  
 { The boy was found crying in the street.    { All their seats were found occupied.

#### (2) 宾语补足语为带 to 的不定式:

The teacher encouraged the students to work hard.  
 { The students were encouraged to work hard.

#### (3) 宾语补足语为不带 to 的不定式:

We heard them sing the song.    The officer made the guard stand at attention.  
 { They were heard to sing the song.    { The guard was made to stand at attention.

在这种结构中, 宾语补足语是不带 to 的不定式, 变为被动语态时, 必须在不定式前加上 to, 如上面的句子。

#### (4) 宾语补足语为名词, 形容词或介词短语:

We chose him our monitor.    We regarded him as a genius.  
 { He was chosen our monitor.    { He was regarded as a genius.  
 In spring, all the people in that town paint their houses white.  
 { In spring, their houses are painted white.

## 练习题

- The work \_\_\_\_\_ in three days.  
 A. will finish    B. finishes    C. will be finished    D. is finishing
- Do you know when the Chinese Communist Party \_\_\_\_\_?  
 A. founded    B. was founded    C. has been founded    D. found
- The cake \_\_\_\_\_ very nice.  
 A. tastes    B. is tasted    C. taste    D. has been tasted
- The bridge \_\_\_\_\_ at the moment, so we had to take another way.  
 A. had been repaired    B. was repaired  
 C. would have been repaired    D. was being repaired
- The girl \_\_\_\_\_ to sing in the next room.  
 A. is often heard    B. heard    C. hears    D. is hearing
- Why are you so late, Tom?  
 —Sorry. I \_\_\_\_\_ in heavy traffic for about an hour.  
 A. am stuck    B. has stuck    C. was stuck    D. stuck
- These toys were so popular with the children that they \_\_\_\_\_ on the first day.  
 A. sold up    B. sold out    C. were sold out    D. was sold up
- The Tower is the tallest building in Beijing.  
 —\_\_\_\_\_ from here?  
 A. Can it see    B. Can it be seen    C. Can see it    D. Can see
- When the firemen arrived, the fire \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. has put out    B. had been put up  
 C. has been put out    D. had been put out



10. Many old people in area \_\_\_\_\_ in the past few years.
- A. are taken good care of                      B. have been taken good of
- C. have taken good care                      D. take good care of

## 第四节 动词不定式



### 一、不定式的特征和构成

(参见视频 2-9-3)

不定式具有名词、形容词和副词的特性，同时又保留动词的特征，可以带上自己的宾语和状语一起构成动词不定式短语。从不定式所发生的动作的时间关系上，又可以把不定式分为一般式、进行式和完成式，而且及物动词的不定式又有主动和被动之分。其构成形式如下：

|     | 不及物动词<br>(go) | 及物动词 (write)    |                      |
|-----|---------------|-----------------|----------------------|
|     |               | 主动态             | 被动态                  |
| 一般式 | to go         | to write        | to be written        |
| 进行式 | to be going   | to be writing   |                      |
| 完成式 | to have gone  | to have written | to have been written |

### 二、不定式的功能

1. 由于不定式具有名词、形容词和副词的特性，所以它可以在句中作主语、宾语、表语、定语、状语及补足语。

(1) 作主语：

To see is to believe.

To tell lies is wrong.

在现代英语中常用 it 作形式主语，而把真正的主语动词不定式短语放在句末。例如：

It's an honour to make a speech here.

除动词 be 之外，take, cost, require, make 等也可以用于上述结构。例如：

It takes 2 hours to walk there.

It costs about 600 yuan to fly to the city.

在疑问句和感叹句中，只能用 it 作形式主语的结构。例如：

What fun it is to jump into the water in summer!

Isn't it a good idea to have an English evening?

(2) 作宾语：

不定式作宾语可以分为以下四种结构：

① 主 + v. + to do sth.

能够用于这种结构中的动词有：want, wish, hope, refuse, pretend, promise, decide, demand, expect, manage, afford, agree 等。例如：

He wanted to become a football player.

We have decided to give up the plan.

They managed to finish the work on time.

② 主 + v. + 间接宾语 + 疑问词 + to do sth.

能够用于这种结构中的动词有：show, teach, advise, tell, inform 等。例如：

Annie taught me how to jump and how to dance.



The farmer showed us how to milk the cow.

③主 + *v.* + 疑问词 + *to do sth.*

能够用于这种结构中的动词有: know, decide, wonder, learn, remember, think, find out, understand 等。例如:

I don't know how to solve the problem in another way.

We wonder where to go for our holidays.

She didn't find out how to operate the machine.

④主 + *v.* + *it* + *adj./n.* + *to do sth.*

能够用于这种结构中的动词有: find, think, consider, make, feel 等。例如:

When in Russia, Marx found it very important to study the situation in Russia.

We think it valuable to find a useful dictionary.

We think it a good idea to go out for our holidays.

介词 *but/except* 后也可接不定式作宾语。如果句中谓语或非谓语部分含有 *do*, 则不定式前不带 *to*, 否则要带上 *to*。例如:

He did nothing but go to the cinema last night.

My son had nothing to do but play downstairs.

They have no choice but to study hard.

(3) 作表语:

不定式可以在动词 *be* 之后作表语, 这类结构中的主语一般为名词 *idea, wish, purpose, hope, plan, aim, intention* 等, 作表语的不定式用以说明主语的内容。例如:

My purpose is to send you all to the university.

His wish is to become an actor.

有时句子主语也可以是不定式或 *what* 从句。例如:

To be strict with students is to be responsible for them.

What we wanted to do was to give you more spare time.

如果主语部分的谓语动词或非谓语动词含有 *do*, 则作表语的不定式也可省掉 *to*。例如:

The only thing she could do was (to) go up and thank her teacher.

(4) 作定语:

不定式作定语通常放于所修饰的名词或代词之后。不定式与它所修饰的名词或代词之间有以下几种关系:

①主谓关系。例如:

He is the right person to do that job.

Mary was always the first to come and the last to leave the office.

The next train to arrive is from Xi'an.

②动宾关系。例如:

We have an important meeting to attend.

I'd like a few books to read during the journey.

He has nothing to say on this question.

③在处于动宾关系的情况下, 如果不定式为不及物动词, 其后须加上结构或意义上所需的介词。例如:

My workmate has bought a motorbike to go to work on.

This is a pleasant picture to look at.

Jane is a pleasant girl to work with.

④不定式为及物动词后接宾语和介词时, 介词与被修饰的名词构成介宾关系。例如:

My daughter wants a bookcase to put her books in.



The boy cried as he had no children to play games with.

⑤名词 place, time, way 后接不定式作定语时可以省去介词。例如:

This was a nice place to live.

I'm afraid there is no time to play now.

⑥不定式与被修饰的名词构成同位关系。例如:

Before liberation the peasants had no chance to go to school.

Her wish to become an actor has come true.

The roof fell before he had time to dash into the room to save his baby.

(5) 作状语, 可以表示目的、结果、原因等。

①表示目的。例如:

We got up early to catch the early bus.

She went to the clinic to be examined by the doctor.

在强调这种目的状语时, 不定式前可以加上 in order 或 so as。例如:

The farmers fertilize their crops in order to make them grow more quickly.

The six blind men felt the elephant so as to find out what kind of an animal it was.

为了强调或突出这种目的状语, 还可将不定式或 in order 加不定式放在句首(但 so as to 不可放于句首)。例如:

To write novels quickly, he bought a computer.

In order to prevent the fire from spreading, some of the houses nearby had been pulled down before the firemen arrived.

②表示结果。例如:

Two years later, her father disappeared never to be heard from again.

What have I done to make you so angry?

下列结构如 so... as to, such... as to, enough... to, only to..., too... to 等中的不定式也可以表示结果。例如:

The boy was so careless as to make many mistakes in his homework.

They lifted a rock only to drop it on their own feet.

The patient is strong enough to get out of bed and walk about.

He spoke too quickly for us to follow.

The girl is too young to go to school.

too... to 除了表示“太……而不能”这种意义之外, 有时还可表示肯定意义, 这时 too 后接表示心情或倾向的形容词, 如 glad, ready, pleased, willing, anxious, happy, satisfied 等。这时 too 的含义相当于 very, 而且 too 前面还可以有 only, just 等词修饰。例如:

The two men were too anxious to leave.

She's only too pleased to go home.

I'm only too glad to attend the concert.

We're too ready to help you.

③表示原因。例如:

She wept to hear the news.

They trembled to think of it.

注意不定式作原因状语与目的状语的区别: 作原因状语时, 不定式动作在前, 谓语动词动作在后; 作目的状语时则相反。另外作目的状语时不定式前可加上 in order/so as, 而作原因状语则不能这样。

④作独立成分, 表示说话人的态度或看法。此时不定式的逻辑主语与句子主语不一致。例如:



To be frank, I don't agree with you.  
 To be honest, your idea is not practical.  
 To begin with, I'd like to talk about our plan.  
 To conclude, I hope you will succeed.

#### (6) 作宾语补足语。

动词不定式可以用于“主+谓+宾+补足语”结构中作宾语补足语，它可以分为以下几种情况：

##### ① 主+v. +宾+to do sth.

在这种结构中，用带 to 的不定式作宾语补足语。能够用于这种结构中的动词有：want, order, encourage, allow, permit, invite, force, ask, wish, cause, beg, expect, persuade, advise 等。例如：

The doctor wanted the patient to give up smoking.  
 Mrs Smith warned her daughter never to drive after drinking.  
 I'll try to get her to see the doctor.

##### ② 主+v. +宾+不带 to 的不定式

用于这种结构中的动词有 see, hear, feel, watch, observe, notice, listen to, make, let, have 等。例如：

I saw the lady lock the door.  
 They knew her very well. They had seen her grow up from childhood.  
 As you've never been there before, I'll have someone show you the way.

不管是带 to 的不定式作宾语补足语还是不带 to 的不定式作宾语补足语，在把这种主动结构变为被动结构时，不定式前都要带上 to（这时不定式作主语补足语）。例如：

We listened to her sing the song. (主动)  
 { She was listened to to sing the song. (被动)

##### ③ 主+动词词组+宾+to do sth.

用于这种结构中的动词词组有 arrange for, wait for, ask for, long for, rely on, call on, depend on, prepare for 等。例如：

We'll arrange for all the guests to live in the comfortable rooms.  
 It was raining heavily. They were waiting for the bus to come.

##### ④ 主+v. +宾+(to be)+名词/形容词

用于这种结构中的动词有 believe, consider, find, prove, think, suppose, know 等。例如：  
 We all think Dick (to be) a clever boy.

I believe her (to be) honest.

如果把这些句子变为被动语态，to be 也可以省略，如以上两句可变为：

Dick is thought (to be) a clever boy.

She is believed (to be) honest.

#### 2. 疑问词+不定式结构

疑问词 who, what, which, when, where, how 和连词 whether 后接不定式可以构成一种特殊的不定式短语，这种短语具有名词的特征，可以在句中作主语、宾语和表语。

##### (1) 作主语。例如：

Where to hold the meeting has not been decided yet.  
 How to earn money was then the problem.  
 Whether to stay or go is a question.

##### (2) 作宾语。例如：

I don't know what to do next.



We're wondering whether to refuse it or not.

在带有双宾语的句子中, 这种结构可以作间接宾语。例如:

I can tell you where to get this book.

The teacher will teach us what to say when greeting a foreigner.

(3) 作表语。例如:

The question is where to go for our summer vacation.

The difficulty was how to cross the river without a bridge or boat.

### 3. 形容词+不定式结构

形容词+不定式结构可以分为以下几种情形:

(1) 可以转换成主从复合句:

这类形容词主要有表示情感的形容词如 glad, sorry, angry, happy, pleased, surprised, excited 等; 表示运气的形容词如 lucky, fortunate 等; 表示确信、可能的形容词如 certain, sure, likely 等。例如:

I'm sorry to hear your mother is ill.

It's likely to rain tomorrow.

I'm sorry that your mother is ill.

It's likely that it will rain tomorrow.

We're sure/certain to succeed.

It's certain that we will succeed.

此时句子的主语也是不定式动作的执行者, 而且不定式既可以是及物动词, 也可以是不及物动词。

(2) 不可以转换成其他结构:

这类主要是表示心理状态的形容词如 eager, anxious, keen, determined, willing, prepared, ready 等。例如:

He is eager to become an English teacher.

They were determined to carry out the experiment.

We're ready to help others.

(3) 不定式与句子主语构成动宾关系:

在这种结构中, 句子的主语是不定式的逻辑宾语, 此时的不定式只能为及物动词。常见的此类形容词有 difficult, easy, hard, heavy, pleasant, dangerous, cheap, expensive 等。例如:

The question is difficult to answer.

Mrs Wang is hard to please.

The box is heavy to carry.

如果不定式是不及物动词, 则必须在其后加上一个在结构或意义上所需的介词, 使其相当于一个及物的短语动词。例如:

The chair looks rather hard, but in fact it is very comfortable to sit on.

Mr Smith is hard to work with.

The ice is smooth to skate on.

The photo is pleasant to look at.

### 4. 不定式的否定式和被动式

(1) 不定式的否定式:

动词不定式的否定结构由“not+不定式”构成。不管是不定式的哪一种形式, 都必须把 not 放在不定式的小品词 to 之前, 绝不可以把 not 置于 to 与动词之间。例如:

We hurried up in order not to be late.

The boy promised not to quarrel with others.

不定式前也可以用 never 表示否定。例如:



The man disappeared never to be seen again.

(2) 不定式的被动式:

① 不定式被动式的意义:

当不定式的逻辑主语是不定式动作的承受者时, 不定式则用被动语态 to be + *p. p.*。例如:

The only animal to be seen in the desert was the camels.

The girl disliked to be praised in public.

② 主动形式表示被动意义:

句中存在名词或代词作为不定式的逻辑主语, 构成逻辑上的主谓关系。例如:

Lili gave the cat some meat to eat.

如果句中不存在这种主谓关系, 不定式还用被动式。例如:

The news reporter raised a few questions to be answered.

Do you have any clothes to be washed?

Do you have any clothes to wash?

注意上面这组句子意义的区别。前一句中 wash 这个动作不是主语去执行, 而是由别人去完成; 在第二句中 wash 这个动作是由主语执行。

在“形容词+不定式”这个结构中, 如不定式与句子主语构成逻辑上的动宾关系时, 不定式都用主动式。例如:

The machine is hard to control.

在 there be 结构中, 有时用不定式主动式表示被动意义。例如:

Is there anything to do tonight?

下列句子中习惯上用不定式的主动态。例如:

She is to blame for that.

What's to pay?

但在 be+不定式及 be likely+不定式的结构中, 如果主语是不定式动作的承受者, 则不定式须用被动态。例如:

She is likely to be made monitor of our class.

The results of the exams are to be seen.

The collection of poems is to be published within a week.

5. 不定式的一般式、进行式和完成式

动词不定式表示的动作或状态与句子谓语动词所表示的动作或状态在时间上有三种关系, 即一般式、进行式和完成式。

(1) 不定式的一般式:

不定式的一般式表示的动作或状态与句子谓语动词表示的动作或状态同时发生。例如:

The officer made the soldiers stand at attention.

They were happy to meet us.

Everyone knows her to be a film star.

(2) 不定式的进行式:

不定式的进行式表示一个正在进行的动作, 其含义与进行时态相似。例如:

I happened to be telephoning when he came in.

The boy pretended to be listening when the teacher looked at him.

Just to be doing something is a help.

(3) 不定式的完成式:

不定式的完成式表示的动作或状态发生在谓语动词所表示的动作之前。例如:

I seem to have met her somewhere before.



She is too young to have seen the old society.

There was no need to have bought a new pair of glasses for me.

He was happy to have received so many nice gifts.

{ We must be off now. We're pleased to have met you all.

{ Pleased to meet you, Mr Smith.

前一句为分手告别时用, 后一句为初次见面时说。

#### 6. 动词不定式的复合结构

不定式复合结构的构成有两种形式:

{ for sb. to do sth.

{ of sb. to do sth.

##### (1) 由 for 引导的不定式复合结构:

在这种结构中, for 本身无意义。由 for 引导的名词或代词宾格在形式上是不定式的宾语, 但在意义上可以说是不定式的逻辑主语。这种结构可以在句中作主语、宾语、表语、定语和状语。

##### ①作主语。

由 for 引导的不定式的复合结构作主语时, 表示不定式所表示的动作的特征。例如:

For Tom to think of such things was madness.

For a child to do this job is just inconceivable.

这种复合结构常常可以转换成 it 作形式主语, 而把真正的主语不定式复合结构放在句末。例如:

It's dangerous for a small boy to ride on a horse.

Lincon said that it was not right for the South to break away from the Union.

##### ②作宾语。

由 for 引导的不定式复合结构作宾语时常常用 it 作形式宾语, 把真正的宾语不定式复合结构放于句末。构成的结构为:

主 + v. + it + adj. / n. + for sb. to do sth.

例如:

Do you consider it worth while for Mr Zhang to do that experiment?

We think it a shame for the naughty boy to do such a thing.

##### ③作定语。例如:

That would be a matter for the people to decide.

There is a lot of work for the students to do.

如果不定式为不及物动词, 后面同样要接上相搭配的介词。例如:

She had even had a comfortable house for her friends to live in.

The teachers in our nursery bought some toys for the children to play with.

##### ④作状语。例如:

We opened the window for the fresh air to come in.

You walked too fast for your friend to catch up with.

##### ⑤作表语。例如:

My requirement is for you not to interfere with my work.

His wish is for him to pass the exam this time.

##### (2) 由 of 引导的不定式的复合结构:

由 of 引导的动词不定式的复合结构在句中一般作主语, 而且作主语时用 it 作形式主语, 真正的主语 of sb. to do sth. 放于句末, 结构为:

It be + adj. + of sb. to do sth.



例如:

It's very nice of you to invite me.

It was careless of him to break the coffee cup.

It's foolish of Tom to do such things.

结构 It be + *adj.* + of sb. to do sth. 表示不定式逻辑主语的特征, 所以由 of 引导的不定式复合结构常用在以 foolish, clever, stupid, nice, kind, careless, silly, good, cruel, wise, wrong, right, rude, impolite 等描写人物特征或品德的形容词为表语的结构中。这时, of 后的名词或宾格代词是动词不定式的逻辑主语, 但同时与前面的形容词也有主语和表语的关系。所以, It be + *adj.* + of sb. to do sth. 结构可以转换成: sb be + *adj.* + to do sth. 上面的例句也可以转换为以下句子:

You're very nice to invite me.

He was careless to break the coffee cup.

Tom is foolish to do such things.

**注意:** a. 上述转换方式只能在介词 of 引导的动词不定式复合结构在句中作主语的情况。

b. 介词 for 引导的动词不定式复合结构在句中作主语时, 不能够转换成以上句型结构。例如:

It's important for us to learn a foreign language. 不能变为

We're important to learn a foreign language.

7. 不定式的小品词 to 代替不定式的几种情况

一般说来, 在一些形容词、动词后面的不定式内容如果是重复前面的内容, to 后的成分可省略, 用不定式的小品词 to 来代替不定式结构。这种情况常见于英语对话或写作中, 它有以下几种形式:

(1) 表示主观情感的动词, 如 want, wish, should/would like, hate, hope, happy, try 等词后常用 to 代替不定式。例如:

— Did you see the new film?

{ — No, I wanted to, but there was no time.

— Did you get a ticket?

{ — No, I tried to, but there wasn't any left.

The boy wanted to ride his bicycle in the street, but his mother told him not to.

— I'll be away on a business trip. Would you mind looking after my cat?

{ — Not at all. I'd be happy to.

(2) 半情态动词如 have to, ought to, used to 等中的 to 可以用来代替动词不定式。例如:

— Do you do your own work?

{ — I used to, but now I have two assistants to help me.

— Ought I to do the work at once?

{ — Yes, you ought to.

— Do I have to come here every day?

{ — No, you don't have to.

(3) 短语 be able to 和 be going to 也可以用其后的 to 代替不定式。例如:

— Have you had supper?

{ — No, I haven't. But I'm going to.

— Are you able to do the work by yourself?

{ — Yes, I'm able to.

## 练习题

1. The professor wants the work \_\_\_\_\_ with great care.

A. to do

B. to have done

C. doing

D. to be done



2. Why not \_\_\_\_\_ for a walk?  
A. go out      B. going out      C. to go      D. went
3. "Please \_\_\_\_\_ some water", my father said.  
A. to fetch      B. fetching      C. to take      D. fetch
4. I often heard the little girl \_\_\_\_\_ the song.  
A. singing      B. to sing      C. sung      D. sing
5. Our teacher had us \_\_\_\_\_ compositions on Monday.  
A. to write      B. written      C. write      D. writing
6. The old man was seen \_\_\_\_\_ the concert hall.  
A. enter      B. to enter      C. to enter in      D. entered
7. Mr. Corset was made \_\_\_\_\_ his teaching because of his poor health and old age.  
A. to give up      B. to give in      C. giving up      D. give up
8. The doctor advised his patient \_\_\_\_\_ more rest.  
A. to get      B. would get      C. will get      D. get
9. The water is good \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. to be drunk      B. to drink it      C. to drink      D. at drinking
10. He is too honest a boy \_\_\_\_\_ a lie.  
A. to tell      B. not to      C. telling      D. that tell
11. It is foolish \_\_\_\_\_ such a mistake.  
A. for you making      B. of you making  
C. for you to make      D. of you to make
12. The boy pretended \_\_\_\_\_ when his mother came in.  
A. writing      B. to have written      C. to be writing      D. to write
13. The government has taken action \_\_\_\_\_ SARS.  
A. to control      B. controlling      C. controls      D. controlled
14. The work had better \_\_\_\_\_ right now.  
A. do      B. done      C. to be done      D. to do
15. I wanted to have her \_\_\_\_\_ the job, but she asked her friend \_\_\_\_\_ it.  
A. to do; to do      B. do; to do      C. doing; to do      D. does; do

## 第五节 动名词



### 一、动名词的构成和特征

(参见视频 2-9-4)

动名词的基本形式由动词原形加词尾-ing 构成, 而且及物动词的动名词又有主动和被动之分; 从动名词所表示的动作与谓语动词所表示的动作的先后关系上来看, 动名词有一般式和完成式, 其具体构成形式如下:

|     | <i>vi.</i><br>(以 go 为例) | <i>vt.</i> (以 write 为例) |                     |
|-----|-------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------|
|     |                         | 主动态                     | 被动态                 |
| 一般式 | going                   | writing                 | being written       |
| 完成式 | having gone             | having written          | having been written |

动名词具有形容词和名词的特性, 同时又保留有动词的特征, 可以带上自己的宾语或状语从而构成动名词短语。例如:

I hope they don't mind my saying that.



Are you for or against staying home?

## 二、动名词的句法功能

动名词可以在句中作主语、表语、宾语和定语。

(1) 作主语。

动名词作主语，常表示概括性或一般性的行为。例如：

——What do you think made Mary so upset?

——Losing her new bicycle.

Seeing is believing.

Watching English TV news is a good way to learn English.

但在一些句子中，常常可以用 it 作形式主语，而把真正的主语动名词或动名词短语放在句末，这样便构成结构：It be + *adj.* + 动名词。能够用于这种结构中的形容词有 good, nice, useless, wonderful, difficult, foolish 等。例如：

It's useless trying again.

It's good hearing English spoken.

It's so nice sitting here with you.

在这种结构中，除了用上面的形容词之外，也可以用某些名词如 fun, use, luck, pleasure, relief 等。例如：

It's great fun boating on the lake.

It's no use crying over spilt milk.

动名词还可以用在“*There is no* + 动名词”结构中作主语，意思为“不可能……”。例如：

There is no knowing where they are going for their holidays.

另外，“*No* + 动名词”这种固定省略结构表示“禁止……”。例如：

No parking.

No photoing in the exhibition hall.

No spitting.

(2) 作表语。

动名词作表语表示一般性、经常性的动作。例如：

My job is teaching English.

Her main extravagance is reading.

动名词作表语和作主语应该遵循对称原则，即主语用动名词，表语也用动名词。当然前面我们已经了解到不定式也可以作主语、作表语。同样不定式作表语和主语也应前后一致，即主语用不定式，表语也用不定式。切不可主语用动名词，表语用不定式，或者主语用不定式，表语用动名词。例如：

Seeing is believing.

To see is to believe.

另外必须注意动名词作表语时与进行时态中的现在分词形式相同，但其所属结构各异，二者不可混淆。试比较下面一组句子：

{ Her job is washing clothes.

{ She is washing clothes.

前句中 washing 是动名词作表语，后句中 washing 是现在分词，与 is 构成进行时态，作谓语。

(3) 作宾语。

① 作及物动词的宾语。

常用动名词作宾语（不可以用不定式作宾语）的及物动词有：mind, finish, enjoy, keep, imagine, practise, suggest, consider, appreciate, avoid, escape, delay, fancy,



miss, risk, excuse, advise等。例如:

Our monitor suggested climbing to the top of the power to have a view of the whole city.

Would you mind mailing this letter for me?

The American enjoyed having meals in the Chinese restaurant.

Have you finished reading the English novel?

动词 think, consider, feel, find 等后常用 it 作形式宾语, 而把真正的宾语动名词短语放在句子后面。例如:

We don't think it any good having too many sweets before going to bed.

Do you consider it worth while doing such a thing?

②在某些词组和结构中作宾语。

常见的词组和结构有: give up, put off, can't help, can't stand, insist on, set about, depend on, feel like, devote...to, be/get used to, look forward to, pay attention to, excuse sb. for..., prevent sb. from..., succeed in, be worth, have trouble in doing, spend time in doing 等。例如:

A man certainly loses when he gives up trying.

They put off holding the sports meet because of the bad weather.

We are all looking forward to visiting your uncle.

They couldn't help laughing when the student was making faces.

The teacher was devoted to teaching the blind.

The young fellow is tired of reading detective stories.

③动名词作介词的宾语。例如:

Is there any hope of passing the exam?

Having broken a vase, the boy stood still without daring to raise his head.

By watching TV, we can know about many places in the world.

The driver was fined because of parking his car in the wrong place.

④作动词 want, need, require 的宾语。

动名词在 want, need, require 这几个动词后作宾语时, 动名词用主动形式, 表示被动意义(这时, 也可以用不定式的被动式)。例如:

This sentence needs improving.

The house wants repairing.

These children need looking after.

⑤作定语。

动名词作定语时, 说明其所修饰的名词的目的或用途, 所以可以转换为 for... 结构。例如:

The old man climbed to the top of the tower with a walking stick.

There is a swimming pool at the back of the garden.

类似的例子还有:

operating table, waiting room, building material, shopping centre, fighting post, reading room, dining hall.

### 三、动名词的一般式和完成式

(1) 动名词的一般式:

动名词一般式所表示的动作与谓语动词所表示的动作同时发生。例如:

She enjoys listening to classic music.

We spent about two hours in writing the composition.

有时动名词一般式表示的动作与谓语动词表示的动作不是同时发生。例如:

They will never forget seeing the Great Wall for the first time. (发生在谓语动词之前)



Jack insisted on going to work in spite of his illness. (发生在谓语动词之后)

#### (2) 动名词的完成式:

动名词完成式表示的动作或状态发生在谓语动词所表示的动作之前。例如:

He apologized again and again for having troubled us.

She denied having done that.

由于动名词的一般式和完成式都可以表示发生在谓语动词之前的动作, 所以二者意思基本相同, 只不过是一般式比较简洁。例如:

I regret not working when I should have studied.

I regret not having worked when I should have studied.

但是有些动词如 enjoy, mind 等后只能接动名词的一般式, 而不可以接动名词的完成式。

### 四、动名词的否定式和被动式

#### (1) 动名词的否定式:

动名词的否定式由 not 或 never 加动名词构成。例如:

He hated himself for not having worked hard.

I must apologize for not letting you know ahead of time.

#### (2) 动名词的被动式:

动名词的被动式表示动名词的逻辑主语是动名词所表示的动作的承受者。例如:

The girl hates being interrupted when she is speaking.

The squirrel was lucky that it just missed being caught.

The student came in without being seen.

动名词完成式的被动式表示动名词动作发生在谓语动词表示的动作之前, 常可用其一般式来代替。例如:

I remember having been taken to Beijing when I was a child.

She still remembers being praised/having been praised by a famous scientist.

### 五、动名词的复合结构

#### (1) 动名词复合结构的构成:

动名词复合结构由名词所有格或物主代词后接动名词构成。在这一结构中, 名词所有格或形容词性物主代词是动名词的逻辑主语。例如:

I would appreciate your calling back tonight.

Mary's marrying Jim made her mother angry.

在口语和非正式文体中, 位于句中的动名词常常用名词普通格或宾格人称代词作逻辑主语。但位于句首时动名词的逻辑主语多用名词所有格或形容词性的物主代词。例如:

We are quite certain about him keeping his promise.

I can hardly imagine Peter sailing across the Atlantic Ocean in five days.

Their offering to help us pleased us greatly. (这里 their 不可以用 them 替换)

Tom's being knocked down by a car worried us. (这里不可用 Tom 代替 Tom's)

当动名词的逻辑主语是无生命事物或名词词组时, 一般用名词普通格或宾格人称代词。例如:

The noise of desks being opened and closed could be heard out in the street.

The news of the new hotel catching fire shocked us all.

I clearly remember Dr. Jackson and his assistant saving the dying person.

动名词的逻辑主语是不定代词或指示代词时也用普通格。例如:

We don't mind this being done by a girl.



He was woken up by someone knocking at the door.

(2) 动名词复合结构的句法功能:

①作主语。例如:

His father's being ill made them worried.

Their sayings meant nothing to us.

It's no use your pretending that you didn't know anything about it.

②作宾语。例如:

Please excuse my interrupting you.

Would you mind my using your dictionary?

(3) 动名词复合结构的否定式:

动名词复合结构的否定式是把 not 放在动名词之前, 而不是放在动名词逻辑主语的前面。

其构成如下: 名词所有格/物主代词+not+动名词。例如:

His not coming to the party made us disappointed.

### 练习题

- I am looking forward to \_\_\_\_\_ Guilin with my friends.  
A. visit B. visiting C. be visited D. visited
- The house needs \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. being painted B. painting C. to paint D. painted
- No one enjoys \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. to be laughed at B. to laugh at  
C. being laughed at D. laughing at
- We are considering \_\_\_\_\_ a plan for the summer holidays.  
A. making B. to do C. doing D. to make
- Reading books \_\_\_\_\_ one wise.  
A. made B. make C. get D. makes
- Would you mind \_\_\_\_\_ me what this word means?  
A. telling B. to tell C. told D. tell
- It is no use \_\_\_\_\_ a lot without doing anything.  
A. talking B. to talk C. say D. speaking
- It is no good \_\_\_\_\_. The doctor suggested that I \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. smoking; would give it up B. to smoke; give it up  
C. smoking; should give up it D. smoking; give it up
- You must pay attention to \_\_\_\_\_ the teacher in the classes.  
A. listening to B. listening C. hearing D. hear to
- Some of people prefer \_\_\_\_\_ TV to going to the cinema.  
A. watching B. seeing C. noticing D. to watch
- She devoted her life to \_\_\_\_\_ her husband and her child.  
A. serve B. save C. serving D. served
- The film is \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. worth to read B. worth reading  
C. worthy of reading D. to read
- The boy doesn't raise his hand to answer any question, for he is afraid of \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. being laughed at B. laughing at  
C. laughed at D. being laughed



14. I clearly remember \_\_\_\_\_ him. I gave him five yuan.  
A. to pay      B. paid      C. paying      D. to have paid
15. Don't worry about Susan; she just feels like \_\_\_\_\_ home alone tonight.  
A. to stay      B. stay      C. staying      D. having stayed

## 第六节 分词



(参见视频 2-9-5)

分词也是一种非限定动词。分词有现在分词和过去分词两种形式。

### 一、现在分词 (The Present Participle)

(1) 现在分词的构成和特征：

现在分词由动词原形加词尾 *-ing* 构成，及物动词的现在分词有主动和被动之分。同样地，从现在分词所表示的动作与谓语动词动作的时间先后关系上，现在分词分为一般式和完成式，及物动词的现在分词有主动和被动之分，其具体构成形式如下：

|     | <i>vi.</i><br>(以 <i>go</i> 为例) | <i>vt.</i> (以 <i>do</i> 为例) |                  |
|-----|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------|
|     |                                | 主动态                         | 被动态              |
| 一般式 | going                          | doing                       | being done       |
| 完成式 | having gone                    | having done                 | having been done |

现在分词具有形容词和副词的特性，同时又保留有动词的特征，可以带上自己的宾语或状语，一起构成现在分词短语。例如：

Going downtown, she met a friend.

Do you know the boy reading the book under the big tree?

Deng Xiaoping was an inspiring leader.

(2) 现在分词的句法功能：

由于现在分词具有形容词和副词的特征，所以它可以在句中作表语、定语、宾语补足语和状语。

① 作表语。

现在分词作表语，说明主语的性质或特征，意为“令人……”。能够在句中作表语的现在分词有 *exciting*, *moving*, *amusing*, *surprising*, *interesting*, *disappointing*, *shocking*, *frightening*, *astonishing* 等。而且当它们作表语时可有比较形式，也可以被 *very* 等副词修饰。例如：

This film is very interesting.

This story is more exciting than any that we have ever heard.

His speech was very encouraging.

② 作定语。

单个的现在分词作定语，放在它所修饰的名词之前。如果是现在分词短语作定语，则放在所修饰的名词之后，这时其作用相当于一个定语从句。例如：

China is a developing country.

He told us the exciting news.

The bus waiting by the roadside will take the children to school.

I don't know the boys playing football on the playground.

③ 作宾语补足语。

现在分词作宾语补足语时构成以下结构：“主 + *v.* + 宾语 + *v. -ing*”。在此结构中，现在



分词表示一个主动的正在进行的动作,即宾语是现在分词动作的执行者。能够用于这个结构中的动词,一类是表示感觉、心理状态的动词,如 see, hear, feel, notice, watch, observe, find, look at, listen to 等。例如:

I saw her coming into the classroom.

We heard the wind blowing.

The missing boys were last seen playing near the river.

另一类是表示“使役”意义的动词,如 get, leave, have, make, catch, keep 等。例如:

Can you get the clock going again?

They had the lights burning all night long.

④作状语。

现在分词作状语时,可以表示时间、条件、原因、方式或伴随状况。

A. 表示时间,其作用相当于一个时间状语从句。例如:

Entering the room, I found he was reading.

Stepping carelessly off the pavement, the old man was knocked down by a car.

如果强调现在分词表示的动作与谓语动词所表示的动作同时发生,则可以用 when/while + v. -ing 结构。例如:

When crossing the street, you must be careful.

While looking through the paper, I noticed a few grammatical mistakes.

B. 表示原因,其作用相当于一个原因状语从句。例如:

Being sick I didn't go to school this morning.

Thinking that she might be at home, we telephoned her.

Henry used the phone to cancel his lunch date with Thomas, having suddenly remembered a previous engagement. (位于句末的现在分词的完成式也可以表示原因)

C. 表示条件,其作用相当于一个条件状语从句。例如:

Come in, Xiao Wang, it's raining hard. You'll catch cold, standing in the rain.

D. 表示伴随状况,其作用相当于 and 连接的并列句。例如:

He sat at the table reading.

They watched the sad movie weeping and sighing.

E. 表示方式。例如:

The secretary worked late into the night, preparing a long speech for the president.

He stood leaning against the wall.

(3) 现在分词的一般式和完成式:

①现在分词的一般式。

现在分词的一般式即 v. -ing 形式。现在分词一般式表示的动作与谓语动词表示的动作同时发生。例如:

Staying in China, Miss White felt quite happy.

Being a child, Elizabeth enjoyed studying art and music.

如果谓语动词的动作紧接着现在分词的动作发生,还用现在分词的一般式。例如:

Hearing the bell, the students entered the classroom.

Opening the door, he found his room broken.

②现在分词的完成式。

现在分词的完成式即 having + p. p.。现在分词完成式所表示的动作发生在谓语动词所表示的动作之前。例如:

Not having received the reply, he wrote another letter.

Having finished their homework, the students went home.



注意现在分词的完成式不能在句中作定语修饰名词。例如：

- { (误) The students having finished the work on time were praised.  
{ (正) The students who had finished the work on time were praised.

(4) 现在分词的否定式和被动式：

① 现在分词的否定式。

现在分词的否定式是由 not+现在分词构成。例如：

Not understanding the meaning of the word, he took out his dictionary and looked it up in it.

Not being seen by anyone, he escaped.

Not having done it right, we decided to do it again.

② 现在分词的被动式。

现在分词一般式的被动语态即 being+p.p., 表示一个被动的正在进行的动作。例如：

The building being built is a big project.

Being surrounded, the enemy troops were forced to give up the post.

Being written in Russian, the article will be difficult to understand.

现在分词完成式的被动语态即 having been+p.p., 表示一个被动的动作发生在谓语动词动作之前。例如：

Having been built in the 15th century, the tower attracted many tourists.

The boy still remembers having been shown around the ancient place.

(5) 现在分词作状语的逻辑主语：

① 现在分词作状语时，其逻辑主语必须与句子主语一致，即句子的主语是现在分词动作的执行者。例如：

Having answered the letter, she went on to listen to the radio.

Examining the patient, the doctor wrote down something on paper.

Turning off the TV set, she went out.

当现在分词的逻辑主语与句子的主语不一致时，不可以用现在分词短语作状语，如下列句子：

Walking along the street, an accident happened.

Listening to the radio, there was a knock at the door.

这两个句子都是错误的，因为句子的主语不是现在分词动作的执行者，所以需要作如下改动：

Walking along the road, I saw an accident.

Listening to the radio, I heard a knock at the door.

② 独立主格结构。

前面讲过，现在分词作状语时，其逻辑主语必须和句子主语一致。但是有时现在分词的逻辑主语可以和句子的主语不一致，也就是说现在分词的前面有其逻辑主语，这个逻辑主语可以由普通名词或代词主格来充当，这样就构成独立主格结构。这种结构可以在句中作状语表示时间、原因、条件或伴随状况。例如：

The dark clouds having gone, the sun shone again. (表时间)

The question being settled, they went home. (表时间)

It being Sunday, we didn't go to school. (表原因)

Weather permitting, we'll have the party in the garden. (表条件)

Time permitting, we'll do it better. (同上)

He watched the scene, his mouth being wide open. (表伴随状况)

在独立主格结构中，除了可以用现在分词表示外，还可以用过去分词、不定式、形容词、副词或介词短语表示。例如：



Here are the first two volumes, the third one to come out next month.

Their work done, they went out.

She always sleeps, the window open.

The meeting over, all the people walked out of the hall.

Peter was sitting near the fire, his back towards the door.

另外,在口语中常可用“with+宾语+宾语补足语”(即 with 复合结构)结构来代替独立主格结构。

③含现在分词的固定用语。

在英语中,有些表示说话人态度或观点的现在分词结构已成为固定用语,不遵循其逻辑主语与句子主语一致的原则。这类固定用语有:

judging from/by 据……判断; honestly speaking 说实话; strictly/generally speaking 严格/一般来说; talking/speaking of 谈起/谈到 等。例如:

Judging from/by her accent, she must be from Guangdong province.

Generally speaking, the living costs are usually high in cities.

Speaking of the sea bottom, it's irregular.

## 二、过去分词 (the Past Participle)

(1) 过去分词的构成和特征:

过去分词的构成有规则和不规则两种。规则动词的过去分词由动词原形加-ed 构成,不规则动词的过去分词需要记忆。

过去分词只有一种形式即 *v. -ed* (规则动词)、过去分词常表示被动和完成。过去分词具有形容词和副词的特性,同时又保留有动词的特征可以带上自己的状语,一起构成过去分词短语。例如:

The first text books written for teaching English as a foreign language came out in the 16th century.

I saw the ball thrown into the garden.

She is very worried.

(2) 过去分词的句法功能:

过去分词具有形容词和副词的特征,所以可以在句中作表语、定语、宾语补足语和状语。

①作表语。

过去分词作表语,如果是物作主语,表示主语所处的状态,或主语的特征;如果是人作主语,表示“主语对……感受怎样”。例如:

The novel is well written.

The cup is broken.

The door is closed.

She was greatly encouraged.

They were surprised at the result.

这类过去分词还有 excited, moved, amused, astonished, frightened, interested, satisfied, worried, tired 等。

另外某些及物动词的过去分词作表语说明主语的状态,某些不及物动词的过去分词作表语,同样可以说明主语的状态。例如:

Susan is married.

Japan is highly developed.

The summer is gone.



## ②作定语。

某些表示情感心理的及物动词的过去分词可以作前置定语修饰名词。例如：

The excited children jumped with joy.

The amused audience laughed all the time.

过去分词除了修饰人以外，还可以修饰一些表示神态的名词，说明主语的心理状态。例如：

She had an excited expression in her eyes.

He talked in a frightened voice.

另外过去分词作定语多表示分词的动作在谓语动词动作之前或没有一定的时间性，单个的过去分词作前置定语，过去分词短语作后置定语，作用相当于一个定语。例如：

USA is a highly developed country.

He is a leader respected by the people.

Most of the artists invited to the party were from America.

## ③作宾语补足语。

过去分词作宾语补足语构成的结构是：

主 + v. + 宾语 + 过去分词

在这个结构中，过去分词作宾语补足语，表示一个被动的动作，即宾语是过去分词动作的承受者。能够用于这个结构中的动作有：see, hear, feel, watch, keep, get, make, leave, have 等，例如：

They were glad to see the story printed.

He heard the door shut.

We can't get the car started.

在这里 have 后接过去分词作宾语补足语时，过去分词所表示的动作由别人去完成，还可以表示主语的遭遇或经历。例如：

Something is wrong with my bicycle, I'll have it repaired.

Yesterday he had his hair cut.

The girl had her leg broken when she fell off her bicycle.

注意 have sth. done. 和 have done sth. 的区别。have sth. done 中 have 为“使役动词”，sth. done 为它的复合宾语，done 所表的动作由别人去做；而在 have done sth. 中，have 为“助动词”，在这里构成现在完成时态，done 的动作是由句子主语去完成。如：

He had the work done.

He has done the work.

另外，动词 like, want, wish, order 等后可以接含不定式的复合宾语，当不定式用被动语态时，to be 可以省略，则成为：主 + like, want, wish, order + (to be) + p. p.。例如：

She didn't like her essay (to be) discussed in the newspaper.

The teacher ordered the work (to be) done.

## ④作状语。

过去分词作状语时可以表示时间、条件、原因、方式或伴随状况。

A. 表示时间，其作用相当于一个时间状语从句。例如：

Shown around the city, we were impressed by the city's beauty.

如果强调过去分词的动作与谓语动词的动作同时发生时可用结构 when/while + p. p.。例如：

When heated, ice changes into water.

B. 表示条件，其作用相当于一个条件状语从句。例如：

Given more time, we could have done it better.



Seen from the hill, the city looks more beautiful.

C. 表示原因, 其作用相当于一原因状语从句。例如:

Tired out, they stopped and had a rest.

Gone from home so long, he could hardly recognize his hometown.

D. 表示方式或伴随状况, 其作用相当于一个 and 连接的并列句。例如:

She hung up the phone, satisfied with a smile on her face.

The teacher came in, followed by a group of children.

(3) 过去分词的否定式与过去分词作状语

①过去分词的否定式。

过去分词的否定结构是由 not 接过去分词构成, 即 not + *p. p.*。例如:

Not worried by our failure, we went on with our experiments.

②过去分词作状语。

过去分词作状语时, 其逻辑主语也必须和句子主语一致。由于过去分词表示被动, 那么当过去分词作状语时, 句子的主语应该是过去分词动作的承受者。例如:

Followed by some officials, Napoleon inspected his army.

同样地, 当过去分词的逻辑主语和句子的主语不一致, 即过去分词带有其逻辑主语时, 则构成独立主格结构, 这种结构常在句中作状语。例如:

The work done, we went home.

All their money used up, they started looking for jobs.

(4) 过去分词两种用法的比较:

及物动词的过去分词既可以在句中作表语, 又可以用于被动语态, 要注意二者之间的区别。

过去分词作表语时, 其作用相当于形容词, 表示主语所处的状态; 而及物动词的过去分词用于被动语态时, 则表示主语是过去分词动作的承受者。比较下列每组句子:

{ The novel is well written.

{ His grandfather is buried there.

{ The novel was written by Lao She.

{ His grandfather was buried there last year.

{ The road is covered with snow.

{ We were surprised at the news.

{ The road is covered by the mud.

{ We were surprised by the news.

## 练习题

- The boy \_\_\_\_\_ over there is my brother.  
A. stood                      B. who was standing                      C. stands                      D. standing
- Why do you stand and watch the milk \_\_\_\_\_ over?  
A. to boil                      B. boiling                      C. boil                      D. to be boiled
- All students \_\_\_\_\_ to the cinema must sign your names in the list.  
A. go                      B. going                      C. are going                      D. who went
- \_\_\_\_\_ the good news, we were excited.  
A. Hearing                      B. To hear                      C. Having heard                      D. We heard
- I walked as fast as I could, \_\_\_\_\_ to get there on time.  
A. to hope                      B. being hoped                      C. hoping                      D. hoped



6. Most of the children like the stories \_\_\_\_\_ by the young writer.  
A. write B. writing C. being written D. written
7. \_\_\_\_\_ from the Tower, the whole city of Beijing looks very beautiful.  
A. Seeing B. Seen C. See D. Having seen
8. \_\_\_\_\_ carefully, the patient left the hospital.  
A. Having examined B. Being examined C. Examining D. Having been examined
9. \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow's lessons, I have no time to go out with you.  
A. Not having prepared B. Not preparing C. Not being prepared D. Prepared
10. Please have the candles \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. burnt B. burn C. burning D. to burn
11. \_\_\_\_\_ many times, he still couldn't understand it.  
A. Having been told B. He was told C. Though had been told D. Having told
12. \_\_\_\_\_ his homework, he went to play football.  
A. Having finished B. Finished C. Having been finished D. In order to finish
13. My grandpa is sitting in the living room, \_\_\_\_\_ a news paper.  
A. to read B. read C. reading D. reads
14. Don't make her \_\_\_\_\_ it if she doesn't want to.  
A. do B. to do C. doing D. done
15. I'm sorry, but I must say your English needs \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. to be improving B. improving C. improve D. to improve

## 第七节 动词短语

多字动词：必须逐个记住，尤其要记住其构成是及物动词还是不及物动词，以免用错。

### 一、动词+介词

act as 充当……角色  
believe in 相信，信任  
care for 喜欢；照料  
care about 关心  
deal with 处理；打交道  
fight for 争取获得  
go against 违背，违反

answer for 对……负责任  
break into 强行进入  
come across/upon 偶尔碰上  
come to 共计  
depend on 依赖，依靠  
get through 设法完成；通过  
go over 仔细检查；审视



go through 仔细研究以发现  
hear from 收到……来信  
hear of 听说  
laugh at 嘲笑  
live on 以……为食/生  
look for 寻找  
pass by 经过  
run across 偶然遇见  
stand for 代表  
think about 考虑; 想起

go without 没有……勉强对付  
hear from 收到……来信/电话  
insist on 坚持  
let up 减弱, 缓和; 减小; 放松  
look after 照看  
look into 调查, 了解  
play with 随意摆弄 (和某人/物玩耍)  
send for 去请  
stick to 坚持  
think of 考虑



## 二、动词+副词

break away 摆脱  
break in/ into 破门而入  
bring back 使回忆起来  
bring up 培养大  
burn up 烧掉  
carry on 继续  
clear away 清除  
come out 出来  
come along/on 加油! 赶快  
come down 着陆; 落下  
cut down 砍倒  
die out 灭绝  
get along/on 进展  
get back 返回; 找回, 取回  
get through 打通电话; 通过  
give away 分发  
give out 耗尽  
go by 时间过去  
go out 熄灭  
go through 被通过  
hand in 交纳; 呈交  
hold back 阻挡  
hurry up (使) 赶快  
keep back 扣下; 挡住  
kick off 踢掉  
let out 发出; 泄露  
look on 旁观; 认为  
look round 环顾  
look through 仔细检查  
move on 继续行进  
pay back 付还

break down 坏了  
break out 突然发生  
bring down 使……下降  
burn down 烧毁  
call up 打电话  
carry out 实施, 执行  
clear up 整理, 收拾  
come about 发生  
come back 回来  
come out 出现; 洗出照片  
cut off 切断; 停止供应  
find out 查出  
get away 离开; 逃脱  
get in 收获, 收割  
get up 起来, 起床, 使起床  
give in 屈服, 让步  
give out 放弃尝试; 放弃  
go on 继续  
go over 仔细检查; 复习  
grow up 长大  
hand out 分发  
hold (sth.) on 等一下; 将某物固定住  
join in 参加  
keep on 继续  
knock down 击倒, 撞倒  
live on 继续活着  
look out 小心  
look up 查阅; 仰看  
make up 编造; 构成  
pass by 经过  
pick out 挑选出



pick up 拾, 捡; 收听到; 获得  
 push on 打进  
 put down 记下  
 put on 穿上; 戴上; 演出  
 run away 逃走  
 sell out 售完  
 set out 动身  
 set about doing 着手做某事  
 shut off 关掉煤气、水等  
 take back 撤回, 带回  
 take off 起飞; 脱(衣)  
 think over 慎重考虑  
 throw off 摆脱  
 try out 试验, 考验  
 turn off 关掉  
 turn over (使) 翻转  
 wear out (使) 筋疲力尽  
 work out 计算出; 制定出

point out 指出  
 put away 收起来  
 put off 推延  
 put up 举起; 建立; 树立  
 see off 送行  
 set off 开始  
 set up 建立; 树立  
 settle down 安定下来  
 take away 拿开; 带走  
 take down 取下; 记下  
 take out 带出; 取出  
 think through 全面考虑(问题等)  
 try on 试穿  
 turn down 关小, 调低  
 turn on 开灯等  
 turn up 开大音量; 出现  
 wipe off 擦去  
 write down 写下

### 三、动词 + 副词 + 介词

add up to 总计  
 break away from 摆脱; 打破  
 do away with 结束; 去除; 杀  
 get on with 与……相处  
 go on with 继续  
 keep out of 避开  
 look down on 瞧不起  
 记忆和掌握大量短语是学习语言的有效方法。

如: be about to do sth.

be caught in a snowstorm

be seated

be / get used to (doing)

catch sight of

do / try one's best to do sth.

do well

get in a word

get rid of

get to know

go on doing sth.

go on strike

drop in on 顺便拜访  
 catch up with 赶上  
 get along with 进展; 与……相处  
 get down to 着手做, 认真处理  
 go over to 改变立场, 投向  
 keep up with 跟上  
 look forward to 期待

打算做某事

遇上暴风雨

就座

习惯做某事

一眼瞥见

尽力去做某事

干得不错

插话

摆脱; 去掉

认识

继续做某事

举行罢工



|                         |          |
|-------------------------|----------|
| had better do sth.      | 最好做某事    |
| have / take a look      | 看一看      |
| have nothing to do with | 与……无关    |
| keep in touch with      | 与……保持联系  |
| make fun of             | 拿……开玩笑   |
| make one's way          | 排除困难前进   |
| make sure that          | 查明, 确保   |
| never mind              | 没关系      |
| pay attention to sth.   | 注意……     |
| spend time (in) doing   | 做某事花……时间 |
| take care of            | 负责; 照顾   |
| take part in sth.       | 参加       |
| take place              | 发生       |
| take pride in sth.      | 以……自豪    |
| think well of sb.       | 对某人印象好   |

### 例题解析

例 1. You \_\_\_\_\_ return the bike right now. You can keep it until he wants to use it himself.

- A. mustn't                      B. may not                      C. can't                      D. needn't

解析: 在所给的四个选项中, A 项意为“不准, 禁止”, B 项也为“禁止, 不可以”, C 项意为“不可能, 不能”, 均不符合题意, 所以本题答案为 D, 意为“不必现在就还给他……”。

例 2. We must help the old, \_\_\_\_\_ we?

- A. mustn't                      B. must                      C. needn't                      D. need

解析: 本题考查含 must 的句子变为反意疑问句的用法。在所给的四个选项中, C 项 needn't 是对 must 问句的否定回答, 在这里不合题意, 应排除; B、D 两项为错误的表达方式也应排除。must 表示“必须”这一情态意义时, 反意疑问部分仍用 must 的否定形式。所以, 本题答案为 A。

例 3. In this sense, bad things \_\_\_\_\_ good things.

- A. can be turned to                      B. can be turned into  
C. can turned into                      D. can be turning into

解析: 带有情态动词的被动语态是由“情态动词+be+过去分词”构成。从这个意义上说, C、D 两项首先可以排除, 再者 A 项中介词的搭配不当, 所以本题答案为 B。

例 4. Do you know \_\_\_\_\_ happened in the shop?

- A. that's                      B. that was  
C. what's                      D. What has been

解析: 在所给的四个选项中, A、B、D 三项均为被动语态, 而 happen 为不及物动词, 不可以用于被动语态。所以本题答案为 C。



例 5. The football match we watched last Sunday was \_\_\_\_.

- A. excite      B. excited      C. exciting      D. excitement

解析: 现在分词作表语时, 主要表示主语所具有的特征和性质, 其主语主要指事和物。A 项是动词原形不能作表语; B 项是过去分词, 只能表示主语的状态, 其主语往往指人, 亦是错误的; D 项显然不合题意, 也应排除。所以本题答案应为 C。

例 6. ——Thank you very much.

——Not at all. I was \_\_\_\_\_ glad to help.

- A. too      B. only too      C. not so      D. much

解析: 在这里 A、C 两项不合题意, 应排除; D 项 much 不修饰 glad 这样的原级普通形容词, 也排除。only too...to, just too...to, simply too...to 等, 后面的不定式表示肯定, 故本题答案为 B。

### 自我测试

1. ——X can't \_\_\_\_ the third problem.

——Then, Z'll help you.

- A. do      B. make      C. set      D. take

2. ——When did you go to work?

——As soon as they came, we \_\_\_\_ to work.

- A. went      B. were going      C. had gone      D. go

3. ——What is the teacher doing now in the classroom?

——She is \_\_\_\_ a problem to the students.

- A. asking      B. talking      C. describing      D. explaining

4. ——What did Joe do?

——He \_\_\_\_ asleep all morning."

- A. lain      B. laid      C. lay      D. lying

5. ——English?

——English \_\_\_\_ all over the world.

- A. is speaking      B. speaking      C. is spoken      D. has spoken

6. ——Is this the test we have to take?

——Yes, but there \_\_\_\_ another test three months from now.

- A. will have been      B. will be      C. is      D. was

7. ——What do you need?

——Could you \_\_\_\_ me ten dollars?

- A. borrow      B. borrowing      C. lend      D. lending

8. ——Does he believe in God?

——No, he \_\_\_\_ in God.

- A. isn't believing      B. wasn't believing  
C. doesn't believe      D. don't believe



9. If he didn't promise it yesterday, he \_\_\_\_ it still tomorrow.  
 A. would not promise                      B. will not promise  
 C. should not promise                      D. could not promise
10. —I usually go dancing at night.  
       — \_\_\_\_ do that.  
 A. You had not                              B. You had better not to  
 C. You have better not                      D. You had better not
11. —Shall I turn on the television?  
       —No, I'd rather not \_\_\_\_ television tonight.  
 A. watching              B. to watch              C. watch              D. for watching
12. —Do you have to leave?  
       —Sorry, but I really \_\_\_\_.  
 A. have              B. had to              C. do so              D. must
13. \_\_\_\_ to have lunch with us today?  
 A. Do you like    B. Would you like    C. Will you like    D. Have you like
14. On entering another country, a tourist will have to \_\_\_\_ the Customs.  
 A. pass through    B. pass by              C. pass over              D. pass for
15. Carey didn't go to the party last night because she \_\_\_\_ the baby for her sister until 9:30.  
 A. must have looked after                      B. would have to look after.  
 C. had to look after                              D. should have looked after
16. —How was your weekend?  
       —Tiring, My friend rented a new apartment, so I helped him \_\_\_\_.  
 A. move it              B. move              C. moving it              D. moved
17. —My brother says he won't help us.  
       —Oh, perhaps I can persuade him \_\_\_\_.  
 A. to help              B. for helping              C. helping              D. that he helps
18. —Why were you so late for work today?  
       — \_\_\_\_ to the office was very slow this morning because of the traffic.  
 A. Driving              B. To drive              C. I drove              D. That I drove
19. It seems very difficult \_\_\_\_.  
 A. to stop the child to cry                      B. keeping the child cry  
 C. to keep the child from crying                      D. holding the child's crying
20. In 1938 Pears Buck became the first American woman \_\_\_\_ the Nobel Prize for Literature.  
 A. receive              B. received              C. to receive              D. she received



## 第十章 常用介词和连词

### 考试要点

1. 介词的定义、分类、句法功能和用法。
2. 连词的分类、定义和用法。

### 复习内容

### 第一节 介 词

#### (一) 介词的定义

介词又称前置词，是一种虚词，表示它后面的名词或代词（或相当于名词的其他词类，短语或从句）与其他句子成分的关系。介词不能单独用作句子成分，只能用于一个名词或代词（或相当于名词的其他词语）前面，介词后的词或词语叫介词宾语，介词和介词宾语一起构成介词短语。

#### (二) 介词的分类

1. 简单介词 例如：at, in, on, after...
2. 复合介词 例如：into, within, inside...
3. 双重介词 例如：from under, until after...
4. 短语介词 例如：in front of, because of...

#### (三) 介词短语的句法功能

1. 作状语。例如：  
I can write in English .  
They went there by plane .
2. 作定语。例如：  
The students under the tree are singing.  
Beijing is the capital of China .
3. 作表语。例如：  
We are at table .  
I am from the north .
4. 作宾语补足语。例如：  
We consider education of great importance .  
They found the map quite out of date .
5. 作主语补足语。例如：  
The book is considered of great use .



The equipment must be kept in good condition.

#### (四) 常用介词主要用法的举例

##### 1. about

(1) 关于, 有关, 对于

What do you know about mild deer?

I have heard so much about her.

(2) 表示地点: 在……周围, 在各处, 在……附近

Everything about the village is so beautiful.

about 表示在……周围

Books were lying about the room.

about 表示在各处, 到处

I dropped my bag somewhere about here.

about 表示在……附近

(3) 表示时间: 大约……, 近于……时刻前后

They got there about five o'clock.

The reporter will come about half past two.

(4) 固定搭配

① be about to do: (正要) 做, 即将做

② What (How) about...? ……怎么样?

The train is about to start.

What (How) about going there by bike?

##### 2. above

(1) 表示位置: 高于, 在……上方

The moon was now above the trees in the east.

A bird is flying above the woods.

(2) 表示数量、年龄、价钱、重量等大于, 超过, 在……之上

There are above thirty boys in Class Two.

表示数量: 30 多名

The young man is above twenty.

表示年龄: 超过 20 岁了

It weights above five tons.

表示重量: 5 吨多重

The chair costs above forty yuan.

表示价钱: 20 多元

(3) 引申意义: 非……能力所及, 不致(做出……), 超过

The problem is above me.

这个问题太难, 我不懂。非我能力所及。

He is above doing such things.

他还不至于干出这等事来。不致做出……

Mary is above any other student in Chinese in her class. 超过

(4) 习惯用语

above all 首先, 最重要的是

Children need many things, but above all they need love.



Above all , We must study hard.

### 3. across

(1) 表示动作方向, 位置: 横过、穿过

I walked across the zoo.

The girl helped the old man across the street.

The tree fell down across the railway line.

(2) 表示地点: 在……对面

The school is across the river.

The post office is just across the street.

(3) 表示时间: 经过 (整个一段时间)

The revolution developed across the whole ten years.

The scientific achievements across the 19th century exceeded those of preceeding centuries.

(4) 习惯用语

across from: 在……对面

My house is across from the river.

### 4. after

(1) 表示时间或位置: 在……之后

She came after two p. m. .

Please line up one after another.

Shut the door after you.

(2) 引申意义: 由于; 虽然

After failing in the last two English tests, he made up his mind to spend more time on English study.

after 表示“由于”, “鉴于”

After all his efforts, he has failed.

after 表示“虽然”, “尽管”

(3) 引申意义: 仿照, 按照

Please make sentences after the model.

They named the school after the hero.

(4) 引申意义: 追求, 追寻

Who is he after ? 他追赶谁?

What are you after?

(5) 习惯用语

after all: 毕竟, 终究

one after another: 一个接一个地

She is my mother after all .

They came in the classroom one after another.

### 5. against

(1) 表示位置: 撞到, 紧靠, 倚着, 碰着

He has hit his head against a wall and hurt himself.

The girl is sitting on a bench against the tree.

The rain was beating against the windows.

(2) 引申意义: 反对; 禁止

Are you for or against the plan?



He is against this proposal.

(3) 引申意义: 违背

These are against the interests of the people.

I'll do what you order me, but it is against my own will.

(4) 引申意义: 防备, 以防

They saved money against old age.

They save fire wood against the winter.

(5) 习惯用语

over against: 正对着, 在……对面

He lived over against the factory.

6. along

表示动作方向, 位置: 顺着, 沿着

They walked along the river.

We walked along the street.

7. among

表示位置等: 在……中间, 在……之中 (通常用于三者或三者以上)

Divide these apples among the five of you.

I found her among the crowd.

8. at

(1) 表示时间: 在某一时刻, 时候, 时期等

at dawn 在黎明, at midnight 在半夜, at Christmas 在圣诞节, at the moment 在那时, at noon 在正午, at night 在夜晚, at the beginning of 在……之初

I usually get up at six.

I left school at the age of 18.

(2) 表示地点: 在某一地点或场合

at home 在家, at my aunt's 在我姑姑家

at the door 在门口, at the clinic's 在诊所

Let's meet at the station.

(3) 表示状态或一种活动: 在……, 正在……, 在……中

They are at meeting. at meeting 指在开会

at school 在上学, at play 在玩, at rest 在休息, at peace 在和平中

(4) 表示速度、价格等: 按……速度, 值……钱

The car runs at a speed of 50 miles an hour.

at a speed of 50 miles 以每小时 50 英里的速度……

This pencil-box was sold at two yuan.

at two yuan 卖两块钱

(5) 表示动作方向: 朝, 向

He threw a stone at the dog.

Don't laugh at him.

look at 看着, aim at 向……瞄准, smile at 向……微笑, rush at 向……冲去, shoot at 向……射击, throw at 向……扔

(6) 表示原因: 因为, 由于

He was surprised at the news.

She felt glad at what he had said.



(7) 表示能力：擅长于

He is good at English.

He is an expert at chess.

9. as

(1) 作为，当作

We treat him as a child.

My father works in that hospital as a doctor.

(2) 习惯用语

as for (as to): 至于，关于

As for me, I don't mind going there by bus.

10. before

(1) 表示时间：在……以前

Only four days remained before the examination.

(2) 表示位置：在……前面，当着……的面

He wanted to show off before her.

We must put the interests of the people before all else.

(3) 表示顺序：先于，在……之前

Think it over before you act.

Ladies before gentlemen.

(4) 表示选择：宁可、宁愿

I would die before surrendering to them.

我宁愿死也不向他们投降。

11. behind

(1) 表示地点：在……背后；在……后面

The garden is behind the house.

He came out from behind the door.

(2) 表示时间：迟于，晚于

The plane is behind time.

Your ideas are behind the times.

(3) 引申意义：力量或能力不如，落后，低于

He is behind other students in English.

It is far behind its neighbouring countries.

12. below

(1) 表示位置等：在……之下

Her hair came below the shoulder.

The sun sank below the horizon.

(2) 表示数量，程度，价值，座次，能力，年龄等：低于，在……以下

The temperature is 15°C below zero.

He is below me in the class.

He can not be much below fifty.

13. beside

(1) 表示地点：在……旁边，在……附近

He sat beside me at dinner.

She drew up a chair close beside the bed.



(2) 引申意义: 与……相比

My study is poor beside yours.

I felt so weak and useless beside them.

(3) 引申意义: 在……之外, 与……无关

That is beside the question. 那是离题了。

He was beside himself with anger. 他气得难以自制。

14. besides

除……以外(还有……, 不再有……)

There are in China over fifty minorities besides the Hans.

What else did you do besides writing the letter?

15. between

(1) 表示时间、位置、数量: 在……之间

The lunch hour is between 11: 00 and 13: 00 o'clock.

I sat between Lucy and Lily.

He is a man between fifty and sixty.

(2) 表示两者关系: 在……之间

There had been a life long friendship between them.

What's the difference between A and B?

16. beyond

(1) 表示位置: 在……那边, 在……之外

The woods go for about two miles beyond the river.

The lake is beyond that hill.

(2) 表示时间: 迟于, 过了, 比……晚

She came back beyond the fixed time.

They arrived beyond nine o'clock.

(3) 表示范围, 限度: 超出, 越出, 超过, 为……所不及

The book is beyond me.

He is living beyond his income.

(4) 除……外(用于否定式或疑问句中)

I know nothing beyond this.

除此以外, 我什么都不知道。

17. but

除了……, 多和 nobody, nothing, who 等代词连用

He eats nothing but fruit.

I haven't told anybody but you.

Who but a fool would do such a thing.

He took everything but that.

18. by

(1) 表示地点: 在……旁, 在……身边

He put it on the table by the window.

Come and sit by me.

(2) 表示方式、手段: 靠, 用, 通过

Did you come by train or by air?

He makes a living by selling newspapers.



(3) 表示时间：到……时候（为止），不迟于

By the end of last year, they have learned 2000 words.

He is sure to come by three o'clock.

(4) 表示动作方向、位置：经过，沿着

I go by his office every day.

He passed by me without saying anything.

(5) 表示程度、尺寸、数量：按，以

Don't judge a man by his looks.

He is paid by the hour.

Eggs are sold by the pound.

The room is 25 feet long by 15 feet wide.

(6) 表程度相差

She missed the train by five minutes.

He is older than his wife by several months.

19. down

(1) 表示动作方向：沿……向下

She walked down the street.

The boy went down the stairs.

(2) 表示动作方向：（由北）往南；（由郊区）往市区；（由住宅区）往商业区

They went down town together that afternoon.

I was down Wangfujing street doing a bit of shopping.

20. during

表示时间：在……期间，在……时间

The child woke three times during the night.

They played during the afternoon.

21. except

除……之外（没有其他人或物）

We have lessons everyday except Sunday.

Everyone was present except me.

22. for

(1) 表示行为目的、对象：为……，替（代）……，对于，给……

He came here for a meeting.

Would you go and post the letter for me?

Here are some books for children.

(2) 表示方向、倾向、能力：向，往

The train started for Shanghai.

The young manager hungered for knowledge of management.

(3) 表示时间、距离、数量：历经、计、达

I won't be here for long.

They walked for miles.

(4) 表示交换、补偿：与……交换，用

He bought the bike for 200 yuan.

He exchanged his horse for a cow.



## (5) 支持、赞成

I'm all for it.

Who says for a picnic?

## (6) 表示原因：因为、由于

Thank you for helping me.

She could not speak for tears.

## (7) 当作、作为

What did you have for supper?

I took her for a good girl.

## (8) 至于、关于、就……而言

It is cold for Spring.

She is young for her age.

## 23. from

## (1) 表示起点、来源：自，从……起，从……来

The train starts from Xi'an to Baoji.

Mathilde worked from morning till night.

## (2) 表示距离：间隔、离

The school is far from here.

Far from eyes, far from heart.

## (3) 表示原因、动机、理由：出于、由于

He acted from a sense of duty.

He is suffering from a cold.

## (4) 表示原料，材料：用……制成

Steel is made from iron.

Wine is made from grape.

## 24. in

## (1) 表示地点，场所：在……里，在……内

The old man lives in a village.

The table stood in the middle of the room.

## (2) 表示时间：在……，在……后，在……期间

I will come back in two days.

She became a doctor in 1985.

## (3) 表示状态、情况、服饰：在……之中，处于……

She is in red.

His life was in danger.

He is in good spirits.

## (4) 表示范围、领域：在……方面，在……之内

He is weak in Chinese.

I have some difficulty in doing it.

## (5) 表示方式，方法：用，以

The teacher told us to say it in English.

He took me there in his car.



(6) 表示动作的方向：进，入，朝

She put the book in her bag.

They walked in the direction of the village.

25. into

(1) 表示动作方向：到……里

The students went into the classroom.

The child fell into the river.

(2) 表示时间：进入（到）

They usually work far into the night.

We passed out of childhood into manhood.

(3) 表示变化状态：成为，变成

Turn the following sentences into Chinese.

Put this into good English. 把这译为正确的英文。

26. like

(1) 像、似、如、跟……一样

She is a bit like her mother.

The moon looks like a silver plate.

I wish I could fly like a bird.

(2) 好像

It looks like snow.

They look like winning.

27. near

表示时间、空间：接近，靠近，在……近旁

Wu Dong is sitting near the window.

She is near thirty.

It's near six o'clock.

He came near being killed in the earthquake.

28. off

(1) 表示距离：从……离开，与……相隔离

Keep off the grass.

The book fell off the desk.

The island is off the coast.

(2) 在临近……的海面上

The ship sank five miles off the coast of France.

29. on

(1) 表示地点：在……上（与……相接触）

She puts the book on the desk.

There is a map on the wall.

(2) 表示时间：在……（星期几，某日，某日的早、午、晚、夜等的）时候

She came on the afternoon of July 2.

They will go there on Saturday.



(3) 表示状态: 处于……情况中, 从事……

I am on duty today.

The building is on fire.

(4) 表示关系: 关于, 有关, 论及

What about your idea on the subject?

I bought a book on farming.

(5) 表示动作方向: 向着, 朝着

He smiled on me.

She called on me yesterday.

30. past

(1) 表示动作方向: 从……旁过去

He walked past me.

The car drove past the house.

(2) 表示时间: 超过

She is a girl past ten.

It's half past seven.

31. round (round 〈英〉和 around 〈美〉, 意义基本相同)

(1) 表示动作趋向: 围绕着, 向……四周

The earth goes round the sun.

She took her teacher round the city.

(2) 表示地点: 在……周围, 在……附近

The children sat round the fire.

The post office is just round the corner.

(3) 大约

The dress costs round fifty yuan.

It's round 2 o'clock.

32. since

自……以来, 自从

I have studied English since 1985.

She had not been out once since her had been ill.

33. through

(1) 表示空间: 穿过, 通过, 贯穿

The river flows through the town from west to east.

Light comes in through the window.

(2) 表示时间: 从……开始到结束, 在……之中

He worked through the night.

The hospital is open Sunday through Saturday.

(3) 表示方式, 手段, 原因等: 经由, 以……通过, 因为

She learned English through radio.

I heard of it through Zhang Li.

We can observe the sky through the telescope.



## 34. till

(1) 直到……为止 (not... till / until)

The meeting lasted till midnight.Never put off till tomorrow what may be done today.

(2) 直到……才

We didn't know anything about it till yesterday.She didn't come till nine o'clock.

## 35. to

(1) 表示方向：到，向，往，到……去

She went to the America last year.Guangzhou lies to the south of Shanghai.

(2) 表示对象关系：给，于

The watch belongs to my mother.Did she send the book to you?

(3) 表示行为目的：为了

They sat down to dinner.He came to help her.

(4) 表示时间，程度：直到……为止，在……（时刻）以前

She studied from morning to night.It's five to two.

## 36. toward (s)

(1) 表示动作方向：向，朝

They were walking towards the village.He sat with his back towards the window.

(2) 表示关系：对于

They are friendly toward me.I changed my attitude toward him.

(3) 表示时间：接近，将近，左右

I got up toward 7 o'clock.She is toward twenty years old.

## 37. under

(1) 表示位置：在……下面，在……之下，在……之内

There is a bike under the tree.You will find it under the table.

(2) 表示年龄、数量、程度、地位、价格等：低于，少于，在……之下

She is under five years old.Its population is under 2000.

(3) 表示过程，在……中，在……过程中

The house is under repair.The question is under discussion.



(4) 表示关系: 在……统治下, 在……领导下, 在……指导下

We work hard under the leadership of the Party.

England was under the Charles II at that time.

38. up

(1) 表示动作方向: 向……上, 向上……沿着

She ran up the hill.

The boy climbed up the tree quickly like a monkey.

(2) 表示位置: 在……上面, 在……内地

The house stands up the river.

They walked together up the garden path.

39. with

(1) 表示同伴, 共同关系: 和……一起

Come with me.

He went with his friends.

(2) 表示工具, 手段: 用, 以, 被

Write with a pen.

The ground was covered with snow.

(3) 表示附有, 携带: 具有, 有

I saw an old woman with grey hair.

He gave me a book with a lot of pictures in it.

(4) 表示原因: 由于, 因为

She jumped with joy.

Their eyes shone with delight.

(5) 表示时间: 与……同时, 随着

Temperatures vary with the time of the year.

With these words she went out.

(6) 表示对立, 或协调关系: 与……对

She quarrelled with her father.

As a teacher, he gets on well with his students.

(7) 表示让步: 尽管, 虽然

With all his money, he is unhappy.

With all her shortcomings, she is hardworking.

40. without

(1) 不带, 没有

She went out without her hat.

They left without locking the door.

(2) 表示条件: 如果没有

Without water, we could not live.

### (五) 部分介词的用法比较

1. 表示时间的介词 in, on 与 at

(1) 在某世纪、年代、年、月、季节、早、晚用 in。例如:

in the 20th century, in the nineties, in 1998, in May, in winter, in the afternoon



(2) 在某日（星期几和日期）或某日的上下午和晚上用 on。例如：

on Saturday, on June 3, on Monday afternoon, on Christmas morning, on the afternoon of May 5

(3) 在午间、夜间，在开始、末尾，在某个具体的时刻用 at。例如：

at noon, at night, at the beginning, at the end, at the weekend, at two o'clock, at half past five

2. 表示时间的 in 与 after 的用法

in 表示在某段时间之后，常与将来时连用。例如：

He will come back in an hour.

after 表示在某段时间之后，常与过去时连用。例如：

He came back after two days.

after 表示在某一特定的时间点之后，既可用于过去时，也可用于将来时。例如：

He will be back after one o'clock.

He came back after one o'clock.

3. 表示“一段时间”的介词 for 与 since 的用法

for 表示一段时间，可以指过去、现在或将来，着重说明“多久”。例如：

I have been here for two days.

He stayed there for two years.

She will work in the city for five months.

since 后跟表示时间点的词语，多与完成时态连用。例如：

I have been here since two o'clock.

4. 表示地点的介词 at, in 与 on

(1) at 常指小地方，in 一般指大地方。例如：

at the gate, at the station

in Beijing, in the park

(2) at 含义不太明确，表示“在……附近（旁边）”。in 含义明确，表示“在……里面”。例如：

She is sitting at the desk.

He works in the hospital.

(3) in 指“在……内部”，on 指“在……表面”。例如：

There is something important in today's newspaper.

Don't put your glass on the newspaper.

5. 表示方位的 in, to, on

方位词 north, east, south, west 前，用 in 指“在内部”；用 to 指“在外部”；用 on 指“接壤”。例如：

Japan is in the east of Asia. (在该地区内)

Guangxi lies to the south of Wuhan. (在该地区外)

The Pacific is on the east of China. (与该地区相接)

6. 表示“用”的介词 with, through, by 与 in

(1) with 表示“以……工具、手段”，一般接具体的手段和工具。例如：

You can cut it with a knife.



He wrote the letter with a pen.

(2) 表示“通过……途径”。例如:

Some people learn a foreign language through radio.

She has improved her English through reading.

(3) by 表示“以……方式(方法、手段)”等常接名词或动名词。例如:

You must learn these words by spelling.

He reads by lamplight.

(4) in 表示“以……方式, 用……语言”等。例如:

Answer my questions in English.

Write it in blue ink.

7. 表示上下的介词 above、over、on 与 below、under。

(1) above 表示相对高度。“在……上方”, 与 below 相对。例如:

She puts the picture above the blackboard.

The village is below sea level.

(2) over 表示垂直高度, “在正上方”, 与 under 相对。例如:

There is a lamp over my head.

Now the bridge is under the plane.

(3) on 表示在某物上面并与之接触。

She put the book on the desk.

8. 表示运动方向的介词 across, over 与 through 的用法

(1) across 意为“横过”, 表示动作是在某个物体的表面进行的, 与 on 有关。例如:

He swam across the river.

(2) over 意为“越过”, 表示跨过一段距离。例如:

The Great Wall runs over many mountains.

(3) through 意为“穿过”, 表示动作是在某一物体的内部空间里进行的。例如:

The guide led them through the woods.

9. 表示“除了”的介词 besides, except but 与 except for 的用法

(1) besides 表示“除了……之外还有”, (其余都相同) 含有“加”的关系。例如:

Besides Li Ping, we also went to see the film. (李平也去了)

(2) except 表示“除……之外”, “只有……除外”。含有“减”的关系。例如:

We all went to the cinema except Wang Hong. (王宏没去)

(3) except for 表示“除了”, “只有”, 是从整体中除去一部分, 但它只是在说明基本情况后, 再作细节上的补充。它的前后不是“相称的同类语”。例如:

Your composition is excellent except for some spelling mistakes. (在说明作文的基本情况后, 再对“拼写”这个细节加以补充说明。“作文”和“拼写错误”不是“相称的同类语”。)

The village is quiet except for some birds singing in the woods. (除了鸟儿在森林中啼鸣之外, 村子还是清静的。)

(4) but 表示“除了……没有”, 常与 nothing, no 连用。

例如: I have nothing to do but to play.



## 例题 析

例 1. The boy ought to have gone to school \_\_\_\_\_, but he slept \_\_\_\_\_ noon.

- A. in the morning; at                      B. that morning; until  
C. in that morning; until                  D. that morning; at

解析: in the morning, at noon 是固定搭配, 泛指“在早上”“在中午”。但从题干设置的语境看, 句子谓语动作不属于经常行为, 而是已经过去的某个行为, 需要一个特定时间状语 that morning, 而以 that 开头的的时间状语不需加介词, 因此, A、C 两项均被排除。从句意看, “那孩子那天早上该去上学的, 但他一直睡到中午”。可排除 D。答案为 B。

例 2. Mary is away at the moment. She's \_\_\_\_\_ holiday.

- A. at                      B. in                      C. for                      D. on

解析: 英语中常用 on+名词表示“从事……之中”。如 on duty, on fire, on strike, on board, on foot 等。答案为 D。

例 3. I'll leave \_\_\_\_\_ three o'clock, that is I'll leave \_\_\_\_\_ about ten minutes.

- A. at; after              B. in; after              C. after; in              D. after; after

解析: in 和 after 均可表示“在……(时间)之后”, in 接时间段, 与将来时连用, after 接某个特定的未来时间点与将来时连用, 它不能接一段时间。A、B、D 三项均不符题意。答案为 C。

例 4. They offered me their congratulations \_\_\_\_\_ my passing the college entrance examinations.

- A. at                      B. on                      C. for                      D. of

解析: 动词 congratulate (祝贺) 与名词 congratulations 其后都接 on/upon 来引出所祝贺的内容。答案为 B。

## 练习题

- Where is she sitting?  
—She is sitting \_\_\_\_\_ me.  
A. near to              B. next by              C. next              D. next to
- Let's play checkers, David.  
—No, I'd rather not, I am \_\_\_\_\_ that game.  
A. tired about              B. tired with              C. tired of              D. fed up
- I think John will win the race.  
—Yes, he started off \_\_\_\_\_ a great speed.  
A. with              B. at              C. through              D. by
- Where's Baltimore?  
—It isn't \_\_\_\_\_ Washington D. C..  
A. far away              B. far off              C. far to              D. far from
- \_\_\_\_\_ the whole affair was a waste of time.  
A. Opinion ated              B. Of my opinion              C. In my opinion              D. Opinions of mine



6. \_\_\_\_ to school, I met an old man.  
A. On the way B. By the way  
C. In my way D. Using the way
7. Vegetables are an excellent source \_\_\_\_ vitamins.  
A. of B. has C. where D. that
8. I need a book dealing \_\_\_\_ anti-pollution problems.  
A. about B. on C. with D. to
9. Science has brought \_\_\_\_ many changes in our lives.  
A. out B. into C. about D. forward
10. You'd better act \_\_\_\_ the doctor's advice.  
A. on B. in C. to D. for

## 第二节 连词

### (一) 连词的定义

用来连接词、短语、从句与从句的词叫连词。连词是一种虚词，在句中不重读，不能独立担任句子成分。

### (二) 连词的分类

1. 根据在句中所起的作用，连词可以分为并列连词和从属连词两类。

(1) 并列连词：连接具有并列关系的词、短语或句子的连词叫并列连词。根据其意义，并列连词又分为表示联合、转折、选择和因果等四种关系的连词。

(2) 从属连词：用来连接主句和从句的连词叫从属连词。从属连词可分为两类：引导名词性从句的从属连词和引导状语从句的从属连词。

2. 按照连词本身的形式来分，可分为：

(1) 简单连词：如：but, and, for, since, when 等。

(2) 关联连词：如：both... and..., not only... but also..., as... as 等。

(3) 分词连词：如：supposing, provided, considering 等。

(4) 短语连词：如：as if, as soon as, in order that 等。

### (三) 常用并列连词的用法

1. 表示联合关系的并列连词

(1) and (和)

Let's help each other and learn from each other.

(2) both... and... (既……又……)

We should pay attention both to industry and to agriculture.

(3) neither... nor... (既不……也不……)

Neither I nor she has read the book.

(4) not only... but also... (不但……而且……)

The old worker not only gave me a lot of advice, but also helped me to do the job.



(5) as well as (除……外, ……也……)

She has experience as well as knowledge.

2. 表示转折关系的并列连词

(1) but (但是, 可是, 而)

He tried hard but he was unsuccessful.

(2) yet (可是)

We have studied English for only a year, yet we can act English plays already.

(3) however. (然而, 可是)

She worked hard, however, he failed.

(4) while (而, 然而)

He is tall, while his brother is short.

(5) still (但是, 然而)

His legs were badly hurt, still he did not complain.

(6) nevertheless (然而, 不过)

She met with difficulties, nevertheless he went on working

3. 表示选择关系的并列连词

(1) or (或, 否则)

You may do it yourself, or ask someone else to do it.

Let's hurry, or we'll be late.

(2) either...or... (或……或……, 不是……就是……)

Come either today or tomorrow.

Everything around us is either solid, liquid or gas.

(3) otherwise (要不然, 较 or 和 or else 语气强)

You must work hard, otherwise you will not learn English well.

(4) or else (否则)

Seize the chance, or else you'll regret it.

(5) rather than (而不, 也不)

He went rather than stay as an unwelcome guest.

4. 表示因果关系的并列连词

(1) for (因为)

It must be snowing, for it is so bright outside.

(2) so (所以)

It was already rather late, so we decided to go home.

#### (四) 常用从属连词的用法

1. 引导名词性从句的从属连词

(1) 连接代词: who, whose, whom, which, what. 它们在句中可作主语、宾语、定语等。例如:

Who will go there is not important? (主语从句)

That's what I want. (表语从句)

Please show me which bus I should take to get to the No. 108 Middle School. (宾语从句)



I want to know whose notebook is left on the desk in the classroom. (宾语从句)

(2) 连接副词: when, where, why, how. 它们在句中可作状语。例如:

When he will leave for Shanghai is not yet decided. (主语从句)

Do you know where the Great Wall is? (宾语从句)

Why he failed the physics exam wasn't clear. (主语从句)

I don't know how old she is. (宾语从句)

(3) 连接词: that, whether, if, as if. 这些连接词在句中不充当任何句子成分。例如:

That Li Ming will come is certain. (主语从句)

The question is whether you can help him. (表语从句)

It is not known to us whether/if he will attend the meeting. (主语从句)

I wonder if it doesn't rain. (宾语从句)

It looked as if it was going to snow. (表语从句)

## 2. 引导状语从句的从属连词

(1) 引导时间状语从句的从属连词:

when (当, 当……时候)

It began to rain when we were working in the fields.

while (在……期间)

Look after my little sister while I am away.

as (当……时, 一边一边)

As he walked along the street, he sang happily.

before (在……之前)

Take the medicine before you go to bed.

after (在……之后)

After we finished the work, we sat down to have a discussion.

since (自从……以来)

It is just a week since we arrived here.

till (until) (直到, 直到……才)

She didn't go to bed until (till) her mother came back.

once (一旦……)

Once you begin, you must go on.

as soon as (一……就……)

As soon as she came to the classroom, she began to review her lessons.

no sooner... than... (刚……就……)

No sooner had I arrived at the cinema than the film began.

hardly... when (刚……就……)

Hardly had he entered the classroom, when the teacher began his lecture.

(2) 引导原因状语从句的从属连词:

as (由于)

They couldn't send the children to school as life was very hard in those days.

because (因为)



She didn't go to school because she was ill.

since (既然)

Since everybody is here, let's begin.

(3) 引导地点状语从句的从属连词:

where (在……地方)

I'll go where work conditions are difficult.

wherever (无论……在哪儿)

Wherever he may be, he will be happy.

if (如果)

You'll be late for the meeting if you don't hurry.

unless (除非)

He will not go unless he is invited.

so (as) long as (只要)

You may use the book so long as you will return it on time.

(4) 引导目的状语从句的从属连词:

that (以便)

We set off half an hour earlier that we might get there in time.

so that (为了)

I came here so that I might take a good look at the Great Wall.

in order that (为了)

They all got up early in order that they might start at seven.

(5) 引导结果状语从句的从属连词:

so (结果)

He studied hard, so he passed the exam.

so that (结果)

It was very cold, so that the river froze.

so... that (such... that) (如此……以致)

The box is so heavy that nobody can move it.

He is such a good teacher that everyone admires him.

(6) 引导让步状语从句的从属连词:

though (although) (虽然)

He studied very hard, though he is very old.

Although it rained heavily, they still went out.

as (虽然)

Poor as he is, he is honest.

even if (even though) (即使)

Even if the weather is bad tomorrow, he will want to go out.

however (无论怎样)

However much I tried, I failed to work out the maths problem.

whatever (无论什么)



Whatever you say, I will not change my idea.

no matter how (无论多么)

She keeps doing morning exercises in the winter no matter how cold it is.

(7) 引导方式状语从句的从属连词:

as (正如)

You may do as you please.

as if = (as though) (好像, 似乎)

The old man runs very fast as if he were a young man.

(8) 引导比较状语从句的从属连词:

as (如……)

You must do as I told you.

as... as... (像……一样)

Her elder brother is as tall as her father.

not so... as... (与……不一样)

The radios produced in that factory are not half so good as those produced in this factory.

than (比)

He studies harder than before.

## (五) 部分连词的用法比较

### 1. when 和 while

(1) 两个词都可以表示“当……时”, 引导时间状语从句。when 引导时间状语从句的谓语动词既可以是延续性的, 也可以是终止性的; while 引导的时间状语从句的谓语动词只能是延续性的。例如:

I was doing my homework when my friend came in.

While (When) I was watching TV, my sister fell asleep.

(2) when 还可作“这时”讲, while 还可作“而”讲。例如:

I was playing basketball outside when it began to rain.

Lucy is tall while Lily is short.

### 2. because, as, since 和 for

这四个词都可以表示“因为”。其中 for 是并列连词, 其余三个均为从属连词。

(1) for 语气最弱, 引出的分句一般置于句尾, 其前常有逗号, 它所表示的原因只是一种补充性的说明或辅助性的理由, 不像 because 那样表示强烈的因果。例如:

The oil must be out, for the light went out.

(2) because 意为“因为……”。语气最强, 引导的从句可以置于句首或句末。例如:

I learn from him because he studies hard.

Because it was wet, we went there by bus.

(3) as 表示原因时, 语气不如 because 那么强, 引导的从句常置于句首。例如:

As he is a student, he must do his homework.

(4) since 意为“因为……”、“既然”, 语气比 because 稍弱, 表示关系上的自然结果, 特别用于对于已经清楚了的事情。引导的从句常置于句首。例如:

Since you don't want to go to see the film, I won't go, either.



Since a lot of students made mistakes, that teacher decided to give Wu Dong a chance.

### 3. if 与 whether

(1) 在表示“是否”的意思时, whether 和 if 都能引导宾语从句。例如:

I wonder if (whether) he is at home.

(2) if 一般用在口语中, 不跟 or not 连用, 而 whether 常与 or not 连用。例如:

I don't know whether she is in Beijing or not.

(3) 引导主语、表语、同位语从句, 只能用 whether, 不能用 if。例如:

Whether it is true (or not) remains a question. (whether 引导主语从句)

The question is whether he should go. (whether 引导表语从句)

Answer my question whether you are coming. (whether 引导同位语从句)

(4) whether 用在不定式前, 构成 whether to do。例如:

I have not decided whether to go or stay.

(5) 作 discuss 等词的宾语时, 只用 whether, 不用 if。例如:

They discussed whether they could work out the problem without their teachers' help.

(6) 表示“假如”的意思, 引导条件状语从句时, 只能用 if, 不用 whether。例如:

If it is fine tomorrow, I'll go to the countryside.

(7) 表示“不管”、“无论”的意思, 引导让步状语从句, 用 whether。例如:

Whether he agrees with me or not, I must do that.

### 例题 析

例 1. If we work with a strong will, we can overcome any difficulty, \_\_\_\_\_ great it is.

A. what                      B. how                      C. however                      D. whatever

解析: what 与 whatever 不能修饰形容词, 首先排除 A 和 D。B 项 how 虽然可以放在形容词前, 但本句不是感叹句。C 项 however 是副词, 可以修饰 great 引导让步状语从句。答案为 C。

例 2. \_\_\_\_\_, mother will wait for him to have dinner together.

A. However late is he                      B. However late he is  
C. However is he late                      D. However he is late

解析: 从全句及选项可看出本题考查对让步状语从句语序的掌握情况。副词 however 修饰形容词 late 引导的从句, 语序为: “however + 形容词 + 主 + 谓”。答案为 B。

例 3. I remember \_\_\_\_\_ this used to be a quiet village.

A. when                      B. how                      C. where                      D. what

解析: 这道题的关键一是要弄清题干的意思及 used to 的用法, 二是要注意选项中四个关联词的细微差异。从形式上看, 该题考查宾语从句; 从内容上看, 全句意思为: “这里曾是一个静静的村庄”。只有用 when 连接, 才能说得通顺。答案为 A。

例 4. Though \_\_\_\_\_ he said was of little help to me, I thanked him all the same.

A. what                      B. which                      C. that                      D. who

解析: 这是一个复合句, 由 though 引导的让步状语从句中又带有一个主语从句, what he said 在从句中充当主语。答案为 A。

1. We must speak a lot of English \_\_\_\_\_ in class \_\_\_\_\_ outside class.  
A. both; and  
B. both; as well as  
C. as well; and  
D. as well; as well as
2. You will never pass the examination \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ harder.  
A. unless; don't study  
B. unless; study  
C. if; study  
D. if; not study
3. I had \_\_\_\_\_ knocked at the door \_\_\_\_\_ she opened it.  
A. no sooner; when  
B. no sooner; than  
C. hardly; than  
D. scarcely; than
4. She was crossing the street \_\_\_\_\_ we saw her.  
A. while  
B. when  
C. after  
D. since
5. Mary isn't fond of study of any kind, \_\_\_\_\_ she loves music and dancing \_\_\_\_\_ she sings very prettily.  
A. but; and  
B. and; and  
C. and; but  
D. either; or
6. We have won great victories \_\_\_\_\_ more serious struggles are still ahead of us.  
A. or  
B. for  
C. not  
D. yet
7. When you read the book, you'd better make a mark \_\_\_\_\_ you have any questions.  
A. where  
B. at which  
C. at where  
D. the place where
8. How can I possibly offer you help \_\_\_\_\_ I myself fall in trouble?  
A. when  
B. as if  
C. though  
D. because
9. \_\_\_\_\_ does she sing well, \_\_\_\_\_ she dances well.  
A. Either; or  
B. Not only; but  
C. Both; and  
D. Only; but
10. The rain didn't stop \_\_\_\_\_ made us stay at school.  
A. which  
B. and it  
C. that  
D. so that
11. Fewer people remained \_\_\_\_\_ I had expected.  
A. as  
B. like  
C. than  
D. while
12. It will be warmer and warmer, \_\_\_\_\_ more and more trees are turning green.  
A. because  
B. for  
C. since  
D. while
13. Ask her \_\_\_\_\_ come with me.  
A. if she will  
B. if will she  
C. whether will she  
D. will she
14. Mr John was busy, \_\_\_\_\_ he could not come.  
A. but  
B. therefore  
C. and  
D. nor
15. He wrote the book in simple English \_\_\_\_\_ everybody might understand it.  
A. so as to  
B. in order to  
C. in order that  
D. so as that
16. He doesn't like coffee and \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. so I don't  
B. so don't I  
C. either I do  
D. neither do I



## 第十一章 句子种类

### 考试要点

一、陈述句、疑问句、祈使句和感叹句

(一) 陈述句 (肯定式与否定式)。

(二) 疑问句 1. 一般疑问句; 2. 特殊疑问句; 3. 反意疑问句; 4. 选择疑问句。

(三) 祈使句。

(四) 感叹句。

二、简单句、并列句和复合句

(一) 简单句。

(二) 并列句。

(三) 复合句。

1. 名词性从句: 主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句、同位语从句。

2. 定语从句。

3. 状语从句: 比较状语从句、时间状语从句、地点状语从句、方式状语从句、条件状语从句、目的状语从句、结果状语从句、原因状语从句、让步状语从句。

### 复习内容

句子和句子的分类。

句子是一个语法单位, 也是人们进行交际和表达思想的基本语言单位, 它由词按语法规律构成, 它能单独存在并能表达一个相对完整的意思, 它是一定的语法结构、语音结构和语义结构的统一体。在口语体中, 句子和句子之间有停顿; 在书面体中, 要想表达清楚, 就需要依靠标点符号。处于句首的第一个字母必须大写。

句子依据使用目的可以分为四类: 陈述句 (DECLARATIVE SENTENCES)、疑问句 (INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES)、祈使句 (IMPERATIVE SENTENCES) 及感叹句 (EXCLAMATORY SENTENCES)。

句子依据其结构分可以分为三类: 简单句 (SIMPLE SENTENCES)、并列句 (COMPOUND SENTENCES)、复合句 (COMPLEX SENTENCES)。

## 第一节 陈述句、疑问句、祈使句和感叹句



### 一、陈述句

陈述句说明一个事实或者是陈述说话人的看法。它的主要功能是传递信息和提供情况。陈述句一般用于直接陈述事实或看法, 主语在前, 谓语在后。常规情况下陈述句用降调。例如:

We went there early yesterday morning. (事实)



They must have finished the work. (看法)

陈述句有两种：肯定陈述句和否定陈述句。这两种陈述句即考试大纲中所说的陈述句的肯定式和否定式。现在对两种陈述句分别叙述如下：

### (一) 肯定陈述句

肯定陈述句表达肯定意义的事实或者看法。它一般通过不同的说话口气和不同的肯定手段(如词重读、强调词、双重否定、反问句也叫修辞性问句等)表达千变万化的肯定意义。有时,由于说话口气的差异产生肯定程度的差异。例如:

The girl might be Ella. (可能性最小)

The girl may be Ella. (可能性稍大)

The girl should be Ella. (较上句大)

The girl must be Ella. (可能性最大)

有时,由于词重读的不同产生不同的肯定效果。例如: I finished the work yesterday.

I finished the work yesterday. (强调是 I)

I finished the work yesterday. (强调 finished)

I finished 'the' work yesterday. (强调 the work)

I finished the work 'yesterday'. (强调 yesterday)

有时,由于强调词的不同,肯定陈述句的效果也不同。例如:

I am indeed very happy.

She is really a good girl.

有时,双重否定(DOUBLE NEGATIVE)也是一种强调,它采用迂回曲折的说法,达到了强化肯定的效果。例如:

I can't live without her.

Nobody can succeed without working very hard.

有时,通过反问句这个表面上的疑问句形式达到肯定陈述的效果。例如:

Isn't he a lovely boy? (=He is indeed a lovely boy)

### (二) 否定陈述句

否定陈述句主要用来否定句子的肯定意向或提出对比。

1. 否定陈述句按否定范围的大小可分为全否定和半否定陈述句。全否定一般通过这些词如: not, no, never, none, nobody, nothing, no one, nowhere 等表现出来。例如:

I don't like playing football.

Nobody saw him here yesterday.

Nothing can change my mind now.

而半否定则通过对另外一些词如: all, both, always, every, everything, everybody, everywhere 等词的否定来实现。例如:

Not everyone likes the film.

All my friends do not smoke.

Not both answers are right.

2. 否定陈述句中有一种情况是要求把从句中的否定转移至主句,这在语法上叫转移否定(TRANSFERRED NEGATION)。转移否定一般要求不能因为否定的转移而产生意义上的变化或违反惯用法的现象。例如:

I don't believe that she can do it.

We don't think that he is right.

转移否定适应的动词主要是表示看法和感觉的动词如: think, believe, suppose, expect, imagine, appear, seem, look as if, feel as if 等。



转移否定有时可发生于含有非谓语动词的句子中, 例如:

He doesn't seem to be ill. (=He seems not to be ill.)

同时需注意对于有些动词来说, 如: hope, fear, be afraid 等不发生否定转移。动词 wish 在含有不定式短语的句子中可发生转移否定, 但在宾语从句中如含有否定词, 不能发生转移否定。例如:

My son doesn't wish to be impolite (不礼貌). 不能说: I don't hope you were ill those days.

对于否定转移的简短回答一般有两种: 一种是用“not...so”型; 另一种是“动词+not”型。这两种简短回答中, 以第一种更为常见。对于动词 hope 来说, 由于它没有转移否定的形式, 只能采用“动词+not”这种简略回答。例如:

——Will it snow tomorrow?

——I hope not.

转移否定是一种约定俗成的语言现象, 在各类考试中经常出现, 考生应引起足够重视。

## 二、疑问句

疑问句用于提出问题。按照句法结构和交际功能, 可将疑问句分为四种类型: 一般疑问句、特殊疑问句、反意疑问句和选择疑问句。现在分别叙述如下:

### (一) 一般疑问句

一般疑问句常用来询问一件事或证实一种情况。它经常由一个助动词、情态动词、be 动词或 have 开头, 其答案通常是 yes 或 no, 或者是含有 yes 或 no 意义的其他词语, 因此有些语法书把这种问句也叫 Yes-No Question。口语体中的一般疑问句在没有特殊含义时用升调。书面体中的一般疑问句句末要用问号。例如:

Have you anything to eat?

Did you do it yourself?

Can you drive a car?

1. 一般疑问句的否定形式有两种: 一种是助动词、情态动词、be 或 have+not+主语, 通常用于非正式语体; 另一种形式是助动词、情态动词、be 或 have+主语+not, 通常用于正式语体之中。例如:

Can't you answer the question?

Can you not answer the question?

对于上述第一种含有否定意义的疑问句, 有时属于反问句(或叫修辞性问句), 可译为“难道不……”的意思。像上述例句就可如此翻译。这时, 一般疑问句中常带有惊异、失望或者有时还可能带有责备或者赞叹等意义。例如:

Can't you do it in this way?

Isn't it a wonderful play?

有时, 一般疑问句的否定形式可提出建议、邀请、看法等。例如:

Won't you come in and have a drink?

2. 回答一般疑问句通常用 yes 或 no。yes 后接肯定陈述句, no 后用否定陈述句来回答。例如:

——Have you anything to eat?

{ ——Yes, I have.

——Can you drive a car?

{ ——No, I can't.

回答一般疑问句的否定形式时, 应当排除汉语的影响, 遵循英语习惯, 回答时必须是: Yes+肯定陈述句或者 No+否定陈述句。

——Can't you answer the question?

{ ——Yes, I can.

——Isn't it a wonderful play?

{ ——No, it isn't.



在交际英语中,回答一般疑问句并非只有两种回答方式。有时也可灵活一点,不用 yes 或者 no 来回答,例如:

- May I use your bike?
- { —— All right.
- Won't you come in and have a drink?
- { —— It's very kind of you, but I'm afraid I have an urgent business to do.

## (二) 特殊疑问句

特殊疑问句是对句子中某一特殊部分提出疑问。特殊疑问句以一个疑问代词或疑问副词开头,一般用倒装语序,这和一般疑问句相类似。但当主语是疑问代词或由疑问代词修饰时,句子用自然语序。常见的疑问代词有 who, whose, whom, what, which 等。who 和 what 后有时可加 ever 来加强语气。常见的疑问副词有: where, when, why, how 等。特殊疑问句常读降调。

特殊疑问句用倒装语序,例如:

Why did you ask me for a bike?

What does your wife do?

How far is it from our school?

特殊疑问句用自然语序,例如:

Who fell off the bike yesterday?

Which dictionary belongs to you?

特殊疑问句在表达惊奇、愤怒、高兴、悲伤等强烈感情色彩时,可将 ever, on earth, in the world, just, exactly 等词放在疑问代词或疑问副词之后,表示“究竟”“到底”“准确”等意义,它们可起到强调的作用,使句子的语气得到加强。例如:

Who ever won the first place in the contest?

What on earth did you see there?

What exactly does it belong to?

在特殊疑问句中,还有一种由特殊疑问词开头的复杂问句,这种特殊疑问句一般用来征询对方对某事的看法、判断、意见、请求等。在这种特殊疑问句中,特殊疑问词可在宾语从句中充当各种不同的语法成分。例如:

What do you think has happened to her? (What 作主语)

Where do you suppose he went? (Where 作状语)

How high do you think the mountains are? (How 作状语)

Who do you believe is the best one to do the work? (Who 作主语)

Which way do you imagine they went? (Which 作定语)

Who do you say the man is? (Who 作表语)

What do you suppose he said? (What 作宾语)

上述复杂特殊疑问句在理解上可看作是 Do you think (suppose, believe, imagine, say 等词) + 宾语从句演化而来,只不过习惯上不这么表达罢了。习惯上将宾语从句的引导词提至句首作疑问代词或疑问副词来使用。高考中多次考查复杂特殊疑问句的问题。能否做好这种类型题目的两个关键:首先根据句子各成分和词的用法确定好应当使用的是疑问代词还是疑问副词,再确定用哪个疑问代词或疑问副词;其次应当注意复杂特殊疑问句后面部分是陈述句语序,也就是自然语序(因为是“宾语从句”演化而来的)。

## (三) 反意疑问句

反意疑问句先陈述情况或看法,然后询问对方是否同意。这种问句由两部分组成,前一部分是一个陈述句,后一部分是一个附着在前一部分上的简短问句。如前一部分为肯定陈述句,后一部分通常用否定形式;如前一部分是否定陈述句,后一部分通常用肯定形式。不论是哪一



种形式的反意疑问句，反意疑问句两部分的时态、人称和数必须一致。例如：

He teaches English, doesn't he?

She didn't work hard, did she?

John has been to Beijing twice, hasn't he?

从理论到实践，我们看到反意疑问句前面部分总是陈述句，后面部分总是疑问句，那么在一般情况下，反意疑问句前一部分总是用降调，而后一部分用升调的情况较多，因为升调能表示说话人对所说的内容把握性不大，希望对方加以证实或者是说话人语气婉转以表示客气。有时，说话人确信自己所说的话或者希望对方同意自己的观点、看法或仅仅是为了吸引对方的注意力，反意疑问句的问句部分也可用降调。例如：

It is fine today, isn't it?

We cannot step twice into the same river, can we?

回答反意疑问句时，要是答案是肯定的，前面要用 yes；要是答案是否定的，前面用 no。当反意疑问句的第一部分是否定时，英汉的回答方式完全不同。总之，反意疑问句和答案中的肯定否定关系可以用下面的公式直观地表现出来。如果用 + 表示肯定，用 - 表示否定，则公式是：

(1) 反意疑问句的构成：+，- 或 -，+

(2) 反意疑问句的回答：+，+ 或 -，-

在复习反意疑问句时，还应准确把握反意疑问句和附加疑问句之间的差异。目前，英语复习资料繁多，再加上语法学派百花齐放，反映在这个具体问题上，有些人并未搞清楚这个问题。反意疑问句等同于附加疑问句。实质上，这是一种误解。准确地讲，反意疑问句从属于附加疑问句，而且反意疑问句是附加疑问句的主体，是附加疑问句最主要的构成成分；附加疑问句中包含反意疑问句。用公式表现其差异性再明显不过了。如果我们把上述意义具体化表现出来，则附加疑问句的公式如下：

(1) 肯定意义的陈述句 + 否定意义疑问句

(2) 否定意义的陈述句 + 肯定意义疑问句

(3) 肯定意义的陈述句 + 肯定意义疑问句

(4) 否定意义的陈述句 + 否定意义疑问句

很明显前两个公式正好是反意疑问句，而且前两个公式的使用频率很高。例如：

— Carry is not going to Japan, is he?

{ — Yes, he is. 或者 No, he isn't.

— They haven't met each other for a long time, have they?

{ — Yes, they have. 或者 No, they haven't.

另外两个公式的应用在一般情况下也能见到，例如：

You have a car, have you?

He doesn't like the car, doesn't he?

Have another bowl of rice, will you?

Let's do it together, shall we?

以下将谈谈反意疑问句在实际操作过程中应当注意的事项：

1. 当反意疑问句的陈述部分的主语是：everybody, everyone, somebody, someone, nobody, no one 等复合不定代词时，反意疑问句后部的主语在非正式场合用 they；正式场合最好用 he。例如：

Everybody wants to read it, doesn't he?

Someone went there just now, didn't he?

Nobody was hurt, was he?

2. 当反意疑问句的陈述部分的主语是：everything, something, nothing, anything 等时，反意疑问句疑问部分的主语常用 it。例如：



Everything is all right, isn't it?

Something is better than nothing, isn't it?

3. 以 this, that, these, those 作反意疑问句陈述部分的主语, 其疑问部分常用 it 或 they 作主语。

例如:

This is a bike, isn't it?

These dictionaries are useful, aren't they?

4. 当反意疑问句陈述部分是 there be 结构时, 其疑问部分的主语用 there。例如:

There are a lot of students on the playground, aren't there?

There is nothing dangerous here, is there?

5. 当反意疑问句的陈述部分含有 seldom, few, little, hardly, rarely, nothing, scarcely, never, nowhere 等否定词或半否定词时, 反意疑问句的疑问部分的动词用肯定形式。例如:

Few students know the teacher, do they?

He seldom goes home these days, does he?

如果该问句的陈述部分的否定词含有否定词前缀, 则陈述部分常当作肯定句对待, 后面的疑问部分一般采用否定形式。例如:

It's unfair, isn't it?

He was an unknown boy when he was young, wasn't he?

6. 如果反意疑问句的陈述部分以 I wish 开头, 则疑问部分常用 may I。

I wish to be a scientist, may I?

I wish I could go to Shanghai, may I?

7. 如果反意疑问句的陈述部分是 I'm... 结构时, 其疑问部分一般用 aren't I。例如:

I'm a teacher, aren't I?

8. 如该类问句的陈述部分用不定代词 one 作主语, 疑问部分的主语在正式场合用 one; 在非正式场合用 you。例如:

One can't do it well, can one (you)?

One went this way, didn't one?

9. 当反意疑问句的陈述部分含有表示“所有”意义的动词 have 时, 该句的疑问部分可用 have 形式, 也可用 do 形式。如果陈述部分的动词是 have 的否定形式, 则疑问部分用 have 形式还是 do 形式主要取决于陈述部分的动词形式。例如:

You have a pencil, { don't you?  
haven't you?

She hasn't a lot of money, has she?

The old man doesn't have any children, does he?

当陈述部分中的 have 不表示“所有”意义时, 反意疑问句的疑问部分必须用 do 的某种形式。例如:

You often have your breakfast at 9, don't you?

Tom had a pleasant journey, didn't he?

当陈述部分中谓语动词含有 have to 或 had to 时, 则该反意疑问句的疑问部分常用 do 的适当形式。例如:

They have to work until 4 in the afternoon, don't they?

We had to start off early, didn't we?

10. 当反意疑问句的陈述部分含有情态动词时

(1) 当陈述部分含有情态动词 ought to 时, 疑问部分仍用 ought (to) 或 oughtn't (to), 一般多见省去 to, 这种情况在英国英语中比较普遍。在美国英语中, 该类问句疑问部分常用



should 形式。成人考试中以第一种更正式。例如：

They ought to do it at once, oughtn't they?

We ought not to go there, ought we? (或者也可用 should we?)

(2) 当陈述部分含有情态动词 used to 时, 反意疑问句的疑问部分用 used to 形式或者 did 形式。例如:

He used to live in Xi'an, usedn't he?

She used to smoke before she came here, didn't she?

(3) 当陈述部分含有情态动词 needn't 时, 该句疑问部分常用动词 need, 有时也可用 must。

例如: You needn't do it again, need you?

She needn't explain the problem to me, must she? (或者也可用 need she?)

(4) 当反意疑问句的陈述部分含有情态动词 must 表示“必须”时, 反意疑问句的疑问部分一般用 mustn't。例如:

You must do it yourself, mustn't you?

当陈述部分所用的 must 含有“有必要干某事”时, 该句疑问部分常用 needn't。例如:

Tom must tell us the truth, needn't he?

当陈述部分利用 mustn't 表示“禁止”意义时, 则该反意疑问句的疑问部分多用 must。例如:

You mustn't smoke here, must you?

当陈述部分的 must 用于推测性用法时, 表示“想必”或“一定”讲时, 反意疑问句的疑问部分不能用 must, 而要根据陈述部分的不定式采用相应的动词形式。例如:

He must be a soldier, isn't he? (=I'm sure he is a soldier.)

They must be reading now, aren't they? (=It is certain that they are reading now.)

Mary must have been away for about two months, hasn't she?

My classmates must have planted a lot of trees yesterday, didn't they?

(5) 当反意疑问句的陈述部分含有 dare 时, 如 dare 为情态动词, 则疑问部分利用情态动词 dare 构成; 如 dare 为实义动词, 常借助助动词构成疑问部分。例如:

He daren't come here any more, dare he?

He didn't dare to come here any more, did he?

need 的使用情况与 dare 相类似。

(6) 如反意疑问句的陈述部分含有 'd rather, 'd like, 则疑问部分利用 wouldn't 构成。例如:

You'd rather go home late this afternoon, wouldn't you?

11. 如果反意疑问句的陈述部分是一个带有 that 引导的宾语从句, 则反意疑问句的疑问部分应与主从复合句的主句部分的主语和谓语互相对应。例如:

Betty said that she would call again this evening, didn't she?

He told me that Li Ying had left her dictionary in my room, didn't he?

可是如果陈述部分的主句是 I think, I believe, I suppose, I expect 等时, 反意疑问句的疑问部分一般应与 that 引导的宾语从句中的主语和谓语相对应, 同时应注意转移否定语法现象的应用 (有关转移否定这个语法项目在本章否定陈述句部分已有讲解)。例如:

I suppose that the meeting is important, isn't it?

I don't think she will come back, will she?

12. 在祈使句+简短问句的结构中, 祈使句之后的疑问部分可以采用 will you, won't you, would you, 再灵活一下还可用 can you, can't you, why don't you 等。例如:

Don't make any noise, will you?

Lend me your book, would you?

Relax yourself, can't you?



对于以 Let's 开头的祈使句, 疑问部分即简短问句部分一般用 shall we。例如:

Let's go fishing, shall we?

Let's do it right now, shall we?

以 Let's 开头的句子经常包括听话人在内。但是, 以 Let us 开头的祈使句经常不包括听话人在内, 简短问句构成的疑问部分一般都用 will you。例如:

Let us go now, will you?

Let us sing a song for you, will you?

13. 当处于反意疑问句陈述部分的是一个感叹句时, 其疑问部分常用 to be 的否定形式。

例如: What a beautiful girl she is, isn't she?

What a funny man, isn't he?

#### (四) 选择疑问句

选择疑问句是说话人对问题提供两个或两个以上的答案, 供对方选择其中的一种。选择疑问句可供选择的答案之间由 or 连接起来。选择疑问句可供选择的答案之中除最后一个用降调外, 其余全部用升调。例如:

Do you want a ↗ pen, or a ↗ book, or a ↘ dictionary?

有时候, 当说话人在最后一个可供选择的答案上也用了升调, 即全部可供选择的答案上都用升调的情况下, 表明说话人认为自己对可能选择的答案并未穷尽, 可能选择的答案中没有该问题的答案。尽管说话人没有明确表达出来, 却暗含着有另外的选择答案候选, 此乃言外之意。同样的是上面一句话, 全用升调表达出来, 效果截然不同, 它使人想到除了钢笔、书和字典之外听话人是否想要别的什么东西。

选择疑问句有两种形式: 一般疑问句型的选择疑问句和特殊疑问句型的选择疑问句。一般疑问句型的选择疑问句形式如下, 例如:

Do you speak English or French?

Will you come in or stay outside the door?

Shall we do it on Friday or Saturday?

特殊疑问句型的选择疑问句形式如下, 例如:

Which do you like better, this one or that one?

What is this, a monkey or a gorilla (猩猩)?

How will they go to school, by bus or by bike?

选择疑问句中由 or 连接的并列的句子成分多种多样。它们可能是宾语、谓语、表语、状语, 有时还可能是并列的句子。对于选择疑问句的回答一般不用 yes 或者 no, 直接回答所提问题即可。

Does she like maths or Chinese? (宾语)

Shall we wait or go home early? (谓语)

Are you a teacher or a nurse? (表语)

——Will they meet at the gate of our school or at the railway station? (状语)

——They will meet at the railway station.

——Shall I help you or can you manage? (句子)

——I can manage.

### 三、祈使句

祈使句表示命令、请求、劝告、要求等意义。祈使句利用动词原形来体现, 没有时态和数的变化。祈使句一般用降调, 句末用感叹号或者句号。祈使句一般不带主语。例如:

Read after me, please.



Stop talking!

Come in and sit down.

有时当要明确向某人提出请求或命令，以示强调，主语也可表示出来。例如：

You stand here and Jack there.

Raise your hand, Wei Fang.

祈使句的否定式一般由 Don't 引起，有时也可将 never 置于祈使句的句首以表示否定。例如：

Don't make any noise!

Don't move or I will beat you.

Never come in again.

祈使句的强调形式是在祈使句之前加 Do，这常用于省去了主语的第一人称、第二人称的祈使句。例如：

Do get here before eight tomorrow morning.

Do bring me a glass of hot water.

带有第一、第三人称主语的祈使句常以 Let 开头。第一人称由 Let me 或者 Let us 构成。

Let us 不包括说话的一方，而 Let's 包含对方。例如：

Let me have a look at it.

Let us go now.

Let him be here.

Let's go there together.

Let's 的否定形式由 Let's 后加 not 构成。例如：

Let's not read it here.

Let us 的否定形式同上。例如：

Let us not talk about it any more.

#### 四、感叹句

感叹句表示说话时的惊奇、喜悦、赞赏、愤怒等感情。感叹句通常由 what 或 how 引导。what 常用来修饰一个名词，而 how 修饰一个形容词、副词或者动词。感叹句一般用自然语序，句末要加感叹号。例如：

What a difficult job it is! (单数名词)

What good news it was! (不可数名词)

What fools they are! (复数名词)

How fast he runs! (修饰副词)

How beautiful the city is! (修饰形容词)

How I hate him! (修饰动词)

感叹句在读的时候一般用降调。

当感叹成分作介词的宾语时，介词一般情况下置于句末。在特别正式的语体中，才将介词放在感叹句的句子开头。例如：

What a different world she is in!

In what a different world she is!

在解决较难的感叹句问题时，需要注意使用以下两个公式：

How + 形容词 + 不定冠词 + 单数名词 + 主语 + 谓语

What + 形容词 + 复数名词或不可数名词 + 主语 + 谓语

例如：



|   |                                 |   |                               |
|---|---------------------------------|---|-------------------------------|
| { | How clever a boy he is!         | { | What good ideas you have!     |
| { | How difficult a problem it was! | { | What bad weather it is today! |
| { | How wonderful a film it was!    |   |                               |

除了 what 和 how 引导的感叹句之外,感叹句还有一些其他形式,这尤其在非正式语体中比较明显,仅供参考。例如:

I hate him!  
My God! What has happened to him?  
Isn't it wonderful!  
Very good!

## 第二节 简单句、并列句和复合句

### 一、简单句

只有一个主谓结构,且句子各成分均由单词或短语充当的这么一个句子就是简单句。不论两个或多个主语共用一个谓语,还是一个主语部分对应两个或两个以上谓语,都属于简单句的范围。例如:

Tom, you and I will plant some trees here.  
We went there and visited an old English teacher of ours.

我们在第一节中所涉及的陈述句、疑问句、祈使句和感叹句从结构上看一般都属于简单句的情况。

在使用简单句的时候,必须以五个基本句型和一个 there be 结构为基础。这五个基本句型是:主语+谓语(即 SV 型),主语+谓语+宾语(即 SVO 型),主语+谓语+间接宾语+直接宾语(即 SVOO 型),主语+谓语+宾语+宾语补足语(即 SVOC 型),主语+系动词+表语(即 SVC 型,成考大纲称之为 S+Link-V+P)。活学活用好基本句型和 there be 结构,避免句子成分遗漏或多余,依照英语习惯,才可能写好简单句。

### 二、并列句

#### (一) 什么是并列句

如果句子包含有两个或两个以上互不依从的意义相关、层次相同、句法功能也相同的主谓结构就是并列句。并列句中分句通常由并列连词来连接。有时并列句中的分句通过一定的标点符号如逗号、分号等来表现这种并列关系。例如:

I turned on the TV and we sat down and watched it.  
I help you and you help me.  
You may go with us, or you may stay at home today.

上面的三个句子通过并列连词实现并列关系。而下面的两个句子则通过标点来体现并列关系。例如:

It was getting late; we had to go back for the city.  
Stand up; it is your turn to speak now.

#### (二) 并列连词是构成并列句的一个关键

英语中的并列句绝大多数是通过并列连词来实现的,因而并列连词在并列句的构成中起着



相当重要的作用，是构成并列句的关键。不带并列连词通过标点符号来表现并列句的情况在英语中的使用很少。学习和掌握好并列连词的用法才可能深层次的理解和应用好并列句。以下将简要介绍一些并列连词的情况和一些重要的并列连词的用法。

总的说来，英语中的并列连词的数量不多。其中最主要、最典型的并列连词有 and, or 和 but。除上述三个最常用的并列连词之外，还有几个并列关联连词，如 both... and, either... or, not... but, neither... nor, not only... but also。yet 和 so 也可作并列连词使用。并列连词中还有一类介乎于并列连词与从属连词或介词之间的一些词组如 as well as, rather than, more than, as much as 也可作并列连词使用，它们在新编英语语法中称之为“边际并列连词”。

并列连词 and 表示引申意义；or 表示选择意义；but 表示转折意义。这是常见的、最典型的三个并列连词的基本差别。例如：

Give him an inch and he will take a yard.

Get out of the house or I will beat you.

I'm very busy today but I will be free tomorrow.

并列连词 not only... but also 可连接两个并列成分，其中包括并列的句子，但侧重点在后一个并列句上。例如：

Not only is he himself interested in computer (计算机) but also his son is beginning to show an interest in it.

并列连词 not... nor 可连接两个并列的句子，后一个句子要用倒装。例如：

Mr Black doesn't smoke, nor does his son.

You've never seen him since 1993, nor have I.

并列连词 while 表示对比和转折意义，可以连接并列的句子。例如：

Tom is weak while his wife is strong.

并列连词 for, so, therefore 表示因果关系，可用来连接并列的句子。例如：

You'd better put off your jacket, for it is too hot outside.

My father is coming, so I must stay here and wait for him.

You are a good student, therefore we should believe in you.

### 三、复合句

#### (一) 什么是复合句

当一个句子中含有两个或更多的主谓结构，且其中有一个或更多的主谓结构充当该句子的某一个或某一些成分，诸如主语、宾语、表语、同位语、定语、状语等，这样的句子就叫复合句。充当该句子成分的主谓结构叫作从句。例如：

Whoever will do the work is not important to us.

I heard that the leader was going to inspect (视察) our factory this Friday.

It looked as if it was going to rain.

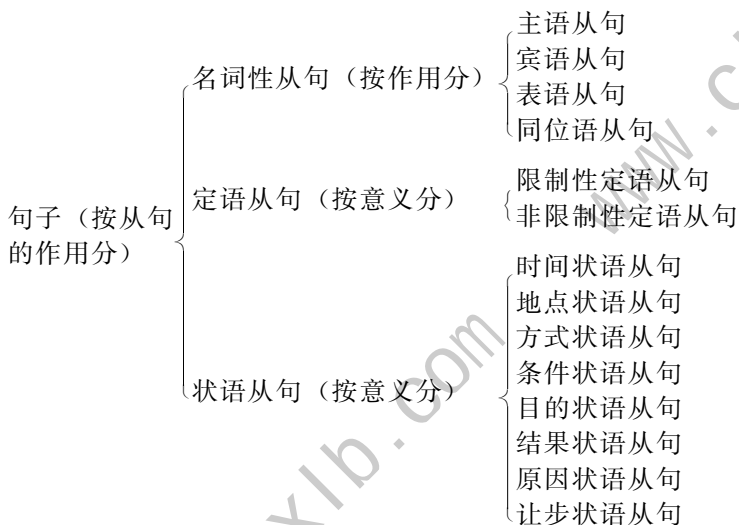
The news that he failed in the examination surprised everyone there.

Is that the woman whose daughter is in my class?

When I last saw you, you were wandering in the street.



## (二) 从句的种类



## (三) 名词性从句

☞ (参见视频 2-11-1)

### 1. 主从句

#### (1) 主从句的意义

主从句是指在复合句中作主语的主谓结构。这个主谓结构所形成的句子就叫主从句。主从句在复合句中的作用相当于名词，因此它属于名词性从句。

(2) 主从句的引导词 主从句的引导词有连词 that, whether; 连接代词 who, what, which whom, whose, whoever, whichever, whatever 等; 连接副词 when, where, why, how 等。主从句的引导词一般处于主从句的句首。例如:

That Mr Smith was elected chairman of the club (俱乐部) made people here very happy.

Whether we are right or not is still a question.

Who will go there first should be decided by the next meeting.

What he said is right.

Why she has gone to New York is quite clear.

Is what you told me really true?

(3) 用 it 作形式主语的主从句将主从句放在主从复合句的句首，句子显得有点笨重，有时也显得头重脚轻。正因为如此，人们现在多习惯于把主从句移到句子的后面，前面用引导词 it 来作形式主语。这样，句子的平衡性也比较好。利用形式主语 it 常见的几种情况如下：

① It + be + 形容词 + that 从句。例如：

It is certain that our team will win the match.

It is strange that she didn't finish the work yesterday.

It was impossible that he saw Betty that day.

在这种情况下，为了要表示与客观事实相反的假设、愿望或建议，可以使用虚拟语气。例如：

It is important that he should go there on time. (表示建议)

② It + be + 名词 + that 从句。例如：

It is a pity that she can't go shopping with you this time.

在用 it 作形式主语的主从句中，如果要表达惊奇、可惜的意义时，在 that 从句中可用情态动词 should 的推测性用法，例如：

It is no surprise that Wang Ying should have passed the examination.



在这种情况下，要注意用 it 作形式主语的主语从句与强调句的区别。例如：

It was Tom that saw Sue in the street yesterday.

这个句子形式上很像上面讲的 it 作形式主语的主语从句的情况，但实际上是个强调句，其中 that 引导的从句不是名词性从句，这种 that 引导的从句不能作主语。判断一个句子是形式主语 it 型的主语从句还是强调句的一个简单方法是去掉 It + be 和 that，在不添加或减少词语和还原为正常语序的条件下，观察句子是否成立。凡是按上述方法操作能在语言上成立的句子一般是强调句；不能成立的句子一般是主语从句。

③ It + be + 过去分词 + that 从句。例如：

It is known to all that paper was first made in China.

It is said that he went to Japan last year.

当表示建议、请求、命令等意义时，that 从句的谓语动词常用情态动词 should 以示“推断”。

It is suggested that we should hold a meeting tomorrow.

④ It + seem 的某种形式或某些不及物动词 + that 从句。例如：

It seems that you have known it.

It appeared that he made a funny mistake.

(4) 使用主语从句时应当注意的事项：

① 在主语从句中，当 that 从句位于句首时，其连词 that 不能省略。例如：

That we need more people here is quite clear now.

That she failed in the work made us very sad.

② 如果以 that 从句作主语的句子是一个疑问句，必须使用形式主语 it 开头的主语从句。例如：

Is it true that he will take part in the English contest?

Is it possible that he was hurt by the car?

③ 在现代英语中，一般情况下不用 who 引导主语从句，常用 whoever 代替 who。who 一般多用于特指，而 whoever 既用于特指又用于类指。例如：

Who did the work is not important.

上述句子的语言表达效果不如下面的句子，Whoever did the work is not important.

可是 who 引导的主语从句在英语的谚语中仍然使用。例如：

Who receives a gift (礼物), sells his liberty (自由)。

吃人的嘴软，拿人的手短。

Who understands ill, answers ill.

理解错误答不对。

Who breaks, pays. 罪有应得。

④ 主语从句中应当注意时态呼应规律的应用。例如：

It hasn't been decided who was to answer for the accident.

## 2. 宾语从句

宾语从句在复合句中作主句的宾语。宾语从句的连接词为连接代词、连接副词和连词。连接代词和连接副词范围同于主语从句。连词较主语从句中的连词 that 和 whether 多了一个 if。上列三类词都可连接宾语从句。例如：

I think that the car is expensive to us.

Do you know where he works?

Can you tell me who wrote the book?

I took it for granted that I was quite right at that time.

在有些动词如：suggest, demand, order, desire 等表示建议、要求、命令等意义的动词之后的宾语从句中常用 should 或 be 型虚拟语气。

He demanded that all the books should be returned within two days.



在使用宾语从句时应当注意的事项:

(1) that 从句不能直接跟在介词之后作介词的宾语,也不能作介词动词和词组介词动词的宾语。如果要做介词动词的宾语,必须去掉介词。例如:

The leader insisted that he had done the work very well. (不能用 insist on)

I'm sure that I will have a wonderful time there. (不能说 be sure of).

但是连接代词和连接副词和连词 whether 引导的宾语从句可以作介宾。例如:

The boy was not sure of which one was correct.

The result depends on what you have done.

The man was interested in whether you had told him the truth.

(2) 当特殊疑问句和一般疑问句作宾语从句时,原来的特殊疑问词转化为连接代词或连接副词。一般疑问句则借助连词 whether 或 if 转化为宾语从句。此时的宾语从句一般情况下全都用陈述句语序。例如:

Can you tell me what you are looking for?

Could you explain to us why it is impossible?

She didn't care if the man would come here.

The policeman asked me where I had been.

(3) 在 that 引导的宾语从句中,如果宾语从句较短时,连词 that 一般可以省去;如果 that 从句较长时,连词 that 不能省略;如果 that 从句处于简短回答中,连词 that 不能省略;如果谓语动词之后有两个或两个以上的宾语从句时,只有第一个连词 that 可以省略。例如:

We found (that) everything was all right.

He expects that I may go there and visit him when I have time.

——What conclusion do you want to reach?

——That he is a thief.

She said (that) Mary was right and that we should praise her for it.

(4) 当主句的谓语动词是 think, believe, expect, suppose, believe, imagine 等动词时,可将宾语从句中的否定转移到主句,形成否定转移。例如:

I don't think he will come here again.

I don't believe it is true.

以上这类句子如果要构成反意疑问句时,疑问部分的谓语动词应采用肯定形式。例如:

I don't believe it is true, is it?

(5) 在使用宾语从句时,应当注意复合句中的主句和宾语从句在时态上的呼应规律(有的书称之为时态一致),即如果主句的时态为现在或将来时态时,其从句动词时态不受影响;如果主句的时态是过去时态,则在从句中时态要作相应的变化,将从句中的谓语动词的时态改为相应的过去时态,但当宾语从句表示客观真理、格言等时例外。例如:

He has told me that he is going to Dalian next Monday.

The mother said she would do anything for her son.

The teacher said light travels faster than sound.

(6) 连词 whether 与 if 在引导宾语从句时的异同点:一般情况下,whether 和 if 在引导宾语从句时可以互换,但有时却不能:

① 宾语从句是否定句,只能用 if; 用 whether 为错误。例如:

I wonder if it doesn't snow.

② if 引导的宾语从句不能直接放在 or not 之前,但 whether 却能这么用。例如:

I'm not sure whether or not I have done a good job.

③ 用 if 可能引起误解时,就必须用 whether.

You should let us know whether you like it.



### 3. 表语从句

表语从句在复合句中作主句的表语。引导表语从句的词有连接代词和连接副词，其范围基本同于引导主语从句和宾语从句的同类词的范围。但引导表语从句的连词的范围相对于前两类名词性从句要大一些。引导表语从句的连词有 that, whether, as if, because 等。引导表语从句一般不用连词 if。例如：

These are just what I want now.

It looks as if someone has already done it.

This is how we succeeded in the past.

That is why Mr. John didn't go to the factory yesterday.

My suggestion is that we should tell her all about it.

The question is whether he will agree with me.

表语从句中也应当注意时态的呼应。例如：

What is troubling me most is that I'm a new comer here.

What I was uncertain about was whether they could do the work well.

### 4. 同位语从句

在主从复合句中用作同位语的从句叫同位语从句。同位语从句表示与之同位的名词的实际内容。同位语从句主要由连词 that 和连接副词 how, when, where 等连接。例如：

I have no idea where he was born.

The fact that they refused my suggestion surprised everybody here.

同位语从句前常出现的名词有：fact, idea, news, promise, answer, decision, hope, doubt, discovery, opinion, problem, truth 等。

同位语从句可以不直接跟在它所说明的名词后面，而和名词保持一定距离。这种情况主要出现在谓语动词和其后成分较短时以及名词带有其他修饰语的情况下，从而形成分隔性的同位语。例如：

The idea came to me that I was cheated by them.

The story goes that he was arrested the day before yesterday.

同位语从句也应注意主句从句时态的呼应。例如：

She expressed her hope that she would become a soldier in the future.

①在由 that 连接的同位语从句中，that 是连词，在从句中不作任何成分；而定语从句中的 that 是关系代词，在从句中作主语、宾语等成分。试对比下列句子：

The news that the country had declared war on them filled them with anger.

那个国家已经向他们宣战的消息使他们义愤填膺。

The news that they had heard filled them with anger.

他们听到的那个消息使他们义愤填膺。

②that 引导的同位语从句中谓语动词常为陈述语气；当所说明的名词为 command, demand, order, suggestion 等表示要求、建议的名词时，谓语动词用动词原形或 should + 动词原形。如：

They received the command that the prisoner (should) be shot.

### 练习题

- No one will be sure \_\_\_\_\_ man will look like in a million years.  
A. that                      B. what                      C. how                      D. if
- I wonder \_\_\_\_\_ daughters are valued as much as sons in the countryside.  
A. what                      B. that                      C. if                      D. when



3. We can easily get from the computer \_\_\_\_\_ has been stored in it.  
A. what                      B. that                      C. which                      D. anything
4. I don't know \_\_\_\_\_ he will come or not to the meeting tomorrow.  
A. if                          B. that                      C. what                      D. whether
5. \_\_\_\_\_ is well known that the earth moves round the sun.  
A. That                      B. As                          C. It                          D. What
6. \_\_\_\_\_ he failed in the exam is a fact.  
A. How                      B. That                      C. What                      D. Which
7. \_\_\_\_\_ you go or stay at home won't make you difference.  
A. If                          B. That                      C. When                      D. Whether
8. The news \_\_\_\_\_ he told you yesterday is not true.  
A. that                      B. when                      C. why                      D. which
9. The reason for her success is \_\_\_\_\_ she worked hard.  
A. why                      B. because                      C. that                      D. for
10. I couldn't agree with \_\_\_\_\_ at the meeting.  
A. all what you said                      B. what you said  
C. that you said                          D. which you said



#### (四) 定语从句

参见视频 2-11-2

##### 1. 定语从句的意义

在主从复合句中, 修饰某一个名词或代词或相当于名词或代词的短语(或者句子)的从句叫作定语从句。例如:

Do you know the man who is standing over there?

The boy who helped me is my brother.

##### 2. 定语从句的构成

先行词(Antecedent) + 关系代词或关系副词引导的从句

##### 3. 定语从句的分类

###### (1) 按定语从句所修饰的对象分:

定语从句 { 修饰先行词的定语从句(普遍)  
                  修饰先行词组的定语从句(少见)  
                  修饰先行句子的定语从句(少见)

定语从句所修饰的对象叫先行项。先行项可能是一个词或一个词组或一个句子或一个从句。定语从句的修饰对象并不一定只是一个先行词。毫无疑问, 定语从句修饰先行词的情况最为普遍。也正因为如此, 传统语法将定语从句所修饰的对象统称为“先行词”。例如:

Here is the letter that Jack wrote to me.

This is the place where comrade Li lives.

The young man who wears yellow jacket is our physics teacher.

定语从句可修饰先行词组:

The two students who didn't finish their homework went out of the classroom themselves.

All the books that had pictures in them were sent to the library.

定语从句可修饰先行句子:

She likes the pet(宠物) very much, which surprises us all.

He is against the idea, as could be expected.

Mary arrived at school two hours later, which made the headmaster very angry.

定语从句所修饰的先行项前(除句子和某些代词等以外)常见带有定冠词 the, 但不能由



此得出结论：先行项前都带 the。这实际是一种误解。准确的理解是先行项之前不一定是定冠词。例如：

The man who borrowed a bike from Mr Wang disappeared yesterday.

The brown truck (卡车) which overtook (超越) us was stopped by a policeman.

She went to a cat which was looking at her hopefully.

He lives in a building that is two stories high.

It is a beautiful place which a lot of people want to visit.

同一个先行项之后可能带有多个定语从句。例如：

He is the best man I can find who can finish the work in three days.

The bike which Dick bought in 1996 and which was lost a month later is found in front of a shop near our school.

(2) 按照定语从句和先行项的语义关系分：

定语从句按照它和先行项之间的关系来划分可分为限制性定语从句和非限制性定语从句。限制性定语从句和先行项之间在意义上有着不可分割的关系，缺少了它，主句的意思就不完整或失去意义，先行项所指的对象就不明确。由于先行项所带的定语从句和主句的关系十分密切，故书写时一般不用逗号。例如：

He was the only person in office who was invited to the meeting.

This is the boy whom you took good care of two months ago.

Can you tell me the reason why you are in favour of the proposal (提议)?

非限制性定语从句和它的先行项之间关系松散，它和主句之间的关系也不密切，定语从句只是对先行项提供一些附加说明。如果去掉了这种定语从句，并不影响先行项所指的意义，主句的意思仍然清清楚楚。这种定语从句和主句之间往往用逗号隔开。它一般情况下不能由关系代词 that 引导。例如：

Abraham Lincoln, who led the United States through these years, was shot on April 14, 1865 at a theatre in Washington D. C. .

This is my friend Mike, who works in a junior middle school.

She lives in a small town, where there is an iron tower about 50 metres high.

同样的一个句子，用不用逗号分隔有时在意义上大相径庭。例如：

The girls who wanted to play cards left the classroom just now.

The girls, who wanted to play cards, left the classroom just now.

前面两个句子中，第一个句子说的那些想玩纸牌的女孩刚离开了教室；而第二个句子说的是那些女孩想玩纸牌，她们刚离开了教室。很显然，第一个句子是限制性定语从句；第二个句子是非限制性定语从句。

究竟该怎样区别定语从句是限制性定语从句或者是非限制性定语从句呢？严格地说，带逗号与否仅是区别限制性定语从句与非限制性定语从句的一个标准，而不是绝对的标准。在语言实际应用中，并不是所有的非限制性定语从句都带分隔逗号，也并不是所有的限制性定语从句都不带逗号。在区别这两类定语从句时，要根据先行项所指的意义或从上下文加以判断，也就是说应从句子意思是否完整的角度来认识这个问题。去掉定语从句意义完整的是非限制性定语从句，否则就是限制性定语从句。例如：

One of the important players in the team was Tom who was born in 1981.

The workers, who have finished the work, should be praised.

上面的第一句中间没有分隔逗号，去掉定语从句，句子意思仍然清楚，因而是非限制性定语从句。上面的第二个句子有分隔逗号，去掉定语从句，表达意义不清，它是限制性定语从句。

综上所述，有无分隔逗号是划分限制性定语从句与非限制性定语从句的一个标准，但其划分并非绝对标准。有无逗号是表象，句子意义成立与否是实质的划分标准，这才是划分限制性



定语从句与非限制性定语从句的真正的标准。

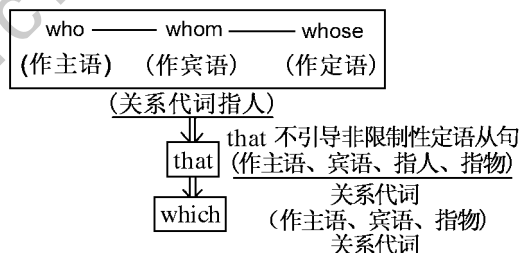
#### 4. 关系代词的用法

(1) 关系代词的作用：关系代词能够引导定语从句。在引导定语从句时，关系代词像人称代词一样有所指的对象，关系代词所指的对象就是其前的先行项，这是具体的指代。也正因为如此，定语从句中的主谓一致关系是由先行项的数的变化决定相应的谓语动词数的变化。例如：The workers who work in the factory are on strike. 另外，关系代词还起着引导作用，它和定语从句“情同手足”，它在定语从句中充当着一定的句子成分，如主语、宾语、表语或者定语。关系代词在定语从句和先行项之间起着介绍作用和联系作用，它是先行项和定语从句之间的桥梁。下面以具体的例子来说明这个问题。例如：

A plane is a machine that can fly.

在上面的例子中，machine 是先行项，that 是关系代词，that can fly 是定语从句。关系代词 that 所指的对象就是 machine，关系代词 that 在定语从句中作主语。要是没有关系代词，定语从句和主句就没有了联系，先行项和定语从句之间也缺少了联系的纽带，定语从句也出现了成分不全的现象。

(2) 常见的关系代词及其使用场合在成人高考复习范围内，主要应当掌握六个关系代词，它们是 who, whom, whose, that, which, as (当然，在整个英语中，关系代词不止六个)。下面谈谈以上六个关系代词的使用场合，先观察下图，注意关系代词使用场合上的差异：



从上图中，我们可看到第一行关系代词都指人，所作成分不同；第二行只有一个 that 既指人又指物，处于过渡阶段；第三行 which 只能用于指物。上图说明了关系代词使用的大体情况，但并没揭示关系代词使用的细节。以下将讲一下关系代词使用时应注意的事项：

① 关系代词 who/that 指人时，who 使用的较 that 多，它们都可在定语从句中作主语。关系代词 which/that 作主语、指物，that 使用的场合较 which 要多。

② 关系代词 whom 指人，作宾语。在非正式场合可用 who 代替 whom 作宾语。关系代词 which 指物，作宾语。在非正式语体中，可用 that 代替 which 作宾语。但当关系代词作介词的宾语时，指人只能用关系代词 whom，指物只能用关系代词 which。例如：

This is the man whom (who, that) I saw yesterday afternoon.

The student to whom I spoke yesterday is the monitor of his class.

The day on which he met professor Li was August 7, 2000.

可是，如果定语从句中关系代词作含有介词的短语动词的宾语时，含有介词的短语动词一般不拆开，介词仍放在动词的后面。例如：

This is the key which you are looking for.

The children whom the nurses took good care of in the hospital are very healthy now.

关系代词 that 在定语从句中作介词的宾语时，介词不能置于 that 的前面，只能放在定语从句中相关动词之后。例如：

The girl that you were talking about has come to our factory.

The room that professor Wang lives in is a small one.

当介词放在从句中相关动词的后面时，关系代词 that, whom, which 在口语和非正式文



体中经常省略。例如：

The room professor Wang lives in is a small one.

Who is the man you just shook hands with?

③关系代词 whose, 有的语法称之为形容词性关系代词, 它不仅可以指人, 而且也可以指物, 它在句中作定语。例如:

Here is the girl whose brother works in this shop.

This is the room whose door is broken.

④关系代词 which 与 as 的异同点:

关系代词 which 和 as 在定语从句中都能作主语、宾语和表语。例如:

The student finished his homework, as/which was natural.

She is fond of listening to the radio, as/which I'm glad to.

但两者的用法又有所不同。关系代词 as 在使用中, 常含有方式、理由、比较、让步、等同等意义, 但关系代词 which 则不具备上述意义, 其他关系代词也不具备。也正因为如此, 关系代词 as 才与“众”不同, 才有它的存在价值。例如:

Franz is an honest man, as can be seen from his eyes.

关系代词 as 常用在某些固定结构中, 如 the same...as, such...as, as...as 等。例如:

Such a comrade as you describe is very difficult to deal with.

We met the same problem as you did.

关系代词 as 引导的定语从句可以放在句末, 也可放在句首或句中, 但 which 引导的定语从句只能放在句末。例如:

As we have seen, oceans cover more than 70 percent of the earth.

(3) 常使用关系代词 that 的情况如下:

①当先行项为某些不定代词, 如: all, anything, something, everybody, everyone, none, much 等时, 常使用关系代词 that。例如:

All that glitters is not gold.

He observed anything that happened.

②当先行项被 all, any, every, no, few, much, little 等修饰时, 常用 that。例如:

You are the only person that I can believe.

I have read all the novels (小说) that she has written.

③如果先行项被形容词的最高级或序数词 the last, the former, the next 等修饰时, 常用 that。例如:

She is the cleverest student that I have ever taught in this class.

④当先行项既指人又指物时, 常用 that。例如:

I wanted a lot of men and books that interested me.

We talked for an hour of things and persons that we remembered in the school.

⑤当主句中有疑问代词 who 和 which, 为了避免重复, 关系代词不再用 who, which, 而用 that 取而代之。例如:

Who is the old man that is standing over there?

Which of us that knows something about physics doesn't know this?

Which of the buildings that are being built will be the hospital?

⑥当关系代词在主系表结构中作表语或者 there be 结构中作“真正主语”时, 常用 that 来指人或指物。例如:

He talks like the man that he was twenty years ago.

This is the fastest bus that there is to Nanzhou.

(4) 关系代词的省略

①当关系代词作及物动词或介词的宾语时, 常省去关系代词。例如:



I don't know the man (that) my father was talking to.

This is not the girl (whom) you have been looking for.

②当关系代词在定语从句中作表语时,常省去关系代词。例如:

He talks like the man he was twenty years ago.

She will be the singer she always wanted to be.

③当 there be 结构的句子作定语从句时,作“真正主语”的关系代词常可省略。

We should make full use of the time there is left to us.

④当关系代词在定语从句中作主语时,如果主句是 it is 或 that is, 关系代词才可省略。例如:

That was her teacher just went by.

It isn't everybody can do the work well.

### 5. 关系副词的用法

(1) 关系副词的作用:引导定语从句的词除关系代词外,还有关系副词。关系副词指向其前指时间、地点、原因等的先行项。什么样的先行项对应什么样的关系副词。关系副词又引导着后面的从句,而且它是从句的一个部分,它在从句中充当状语的作用。关系副词把先行项和其后的句子紧密地联系起来。

(2) 关系副词的用法:常见的关系副词有 when, where, why 等。关系副词 when 指时间,它在定语从句中作时间状语。例如:

I will remember the first day when I came into the university.

He thought of the days when he worked in the company (公司).

关系副词 where 指地点,它在定语从句中作地点状语。例如:

This is the house where he lived five years ago.

I know of a place where I can stay for the night.

关系副词 why 只能引导限制性定语从句,并作从句的原因状语。例如:

That is the reason why I came to school late.

I know the reason why he did it in that way.

(3) 关系副词的省略:关系副词在有些情况下可以省略。关系副词 when, where, why 都有省略的情况。例如:

You may come any time you like.

I forgot the place we bought the books a few days ago.

在 reason 之后的定语从句可用 why 引导, why 常常可以省略。例如:

I know the reason he did it in that way.

以 way 作先行项的限制性定语从句可不用引导词,也可由 in which 或者 that 引导。例如:

That was the way he dealt with the problems.

The way in which she does things is very strange to us.

### 6. 关系代词与关系副词之间的联系

某些介词+关系代词=关系副词。例如:

(用于正式语体) (用于非正式语体)

This is the school in which (where) we works.

I will never forget the day on which (when) I became a Party member.

不论关系代词或关系副词在引导非限制性定语从句时都不能省略。

### 练习题

1. The old temple \_\_\_\_\_ I visited last year was destroyed.

A. who B. that C. whose D. when

2. That is the old lady \_\_\_\_\_ handbag was robbed.



- A. who                      B. whose                      C. that                      D. which
3. Do you know the young man \_\_\_\_\_ was sitting beside the girl?  
A. which                      B. what                      C. whom                      D. who
4. We'll never forget the days \_\_\_\_\_ we spent during the holiday.  
A. when                      B. which                      C. where                      D. why
5. I'll never forget the day \_\_\_\_\_ my brother joined the army.  
A. which                      B. that                      C. when                      D. who
6. This is the best dinner \_\_\_\_\_ I have ever eaten before.  
A. which                      B. that                      C. whose                      D. when
7. The girl \_\_\_\_\_ I spoke yesterday is my roommate.  
A. who                      B. which                      C. to whom                      D. that
8. Mr Brown, \_\_\_\_\_ everyone loves, has returned to the USA.  
A. whom                      B. that                      C. /                      D. which
9. This is the washing machine \_\_\_\_\_ we have had so much trouble.  
A. at which                      B. with which                      C. of which                      D. in which
10. If a shop has chairs \_\_\_\_\_ women can park their men, women will spend more time in the shop.  
A. that                      B. where                      C. which                      D. when



### (五) 状语从句

参见视频 2-13-3

由从句表示的状语叫作状语从句。状语从句可以用来修饰谓语，这在新编英语语法中称之为修饰性状语从句。这种状语从句按照意义又可分九类：即比较状语从句、时间状语从句、地点状语从句、方式状语从句、条件状语从句、目的状语从句、结果状语从句、原因状语从句、让步状语从句。例如：

When Tom returns, I'll give him the key.

He works where he studied and lived.

He didn't do it as I had told him.

We'll go to the Great Wall if it is fine tomorrow.

We climbed high so that we might get a better view.

A TV set can be made so small that it may be easily placed in a watch.

Since it has stopped raining, the game will be held as planned.

He passed the exam although he has been ill for some time.

状语从句可以修饰整个主句，表示说话人对话语的看法或态度。这时状语从句类似于插入语，与主句关系松散，这在现代语法中叫评注性状语从句。例如：

As you know, I'm going to Beijing.

As far as I know, paper was first made in China.

有些状语从句不是在句中起修饰作用，而是在句子之间起连接作用，这种从句常位于句首。例如：

We became very tired. What was worse, most of us were very hungry and we could not find anything to eat.

状语从句就其位置来讲，可以放在句首；也可以放在句末；有的状语从句还可放于句中。



状语从句就其连接词来讲,状语从句通常可由一个连词引导,有时可由一个相当于连词的一个词或词组引导,有时甚至不需要连词直接和主句连接。例如:

When I got to the railway station, the train had already left.

I will tell my father all about the accident the moment he comes.

Say what you say, I will do it all by myself.

状语从句的种类比较多,就知识的完整性来讲,上面对状语从句作了简要的介绍,我们了解了状语从句的概况。下面重点介绍九类状语从句:

### 比较状语从句

比较状语从句,表示行为或事物的比较,通常由 than, (as/so)...as 等从属连词引导,只能置于主句之后。

如: I admire and respect you more than everybody else.

Mr. Jackson is as/isn't so (as) rich as Mr. Black.

注意:从句中与主句相同的成分常可省去,谓语动词也可如此(或仅留下一个助动词);但不可造成歧义:

She loves her mother more than her brother.

她爱她母亲超过爱她的兄弟或她比她兄弟更爱她母亲。

最好改为:

She loves her mother more than she does her brother.

She loves her mother more than her brother does.

### 时间状语从句

时间状语从句是表示主句谓语动词发生时间的从句结构。

时间状语从句可用 when, whenever, before, after, till, until, while, as, once, since, now that, as soon as, as long as, so long as 等从属连词引导。例如:

When you come into your room, you'd better turn on the light at night.

I will write to you as soon as I get to Shanghai.

Now that you are middle school students, it is not necessary to tell you the importance of English.

She didn't go to bed until her mother came back.

有一些词如: immediately, directly, instantly 在意义上近似于 as soon as, 也能引导时间状语从句。例如:

My father went home directly he received the letter.

I rang up my friend immediately I got his message.

有些表示时间的名词词组如: every time, the moment, the minute, the instant, next time 等也能引导时间状语从句。例如:

Every time I fall ill, my mother takes good care of me in my own house.

I will do it the moment I'm free.

He will bring me a toy next time he comes to our city.

有些关联从属连词如: no sooner... than, hardly... when, scarcely... when 也能引导时间状语从句。例如:



No sooner had I got to the railway station than it began to rain.

We had hardly started to work when some difficulties appeared.

### 地点状语从句

地点状语从句是表示主句动作发生地点的从句结构。地点状语从句一般由 where, wherever 引导。地点状语从句可置于主句之前,也可放于主句之后。例如:

My granny found her wallet where she left it.

Wherever you go, you should tell your parents about it.

地点状语从句不但能表示具体意义,而且也能表示抽象意义。例如:

Where there is a will, there is a way.

有时,还可利用-where 构成的合成词来引导地点状语从句。例如:

I will go anywhere our country wants me to go.

### 方式状语从句

方式状语从句用于描述谓语动作发生的方式。方式状语从句一般由 as, as if, as though 引导。例如:

You must do it as I show you.

The thief acted as though nothing had happened.

The man talks as if he knew all about it.

有时还可用 the way (that) 引导方式状语从句。例如: You must do it the way I show you.

在方式状语从句中可以使用虚拟语气。例如: He walks very slowly as if he were ill.

### 条件状语从句

条件状语从句可用来表示主句谓语动词动作发生的条件或前提。

条件状语从句分两大类:真实条件状语从句和非真实条件状语从句。真实条件状语从句所表示的条件是事实或者有可能成为事实;非真实条件状语从句所表示的条件一般与事实相反或成为事实的可能性小。真实条件状语从句一般使用陈述语气,而非真实条件状语从句一般使用虚拟语气,两者在动词的使用上也不一样。引导条件状语从句的连词通常是 if 和 unless。例如:

If she is not in the classroom, she must be on the playground now. (真实条件状语从句)

If you don't come into the office, I will ask your headmaster to come here. (真实条件状语从句)

If I were you, I would go there alone. (非真实条件状语从句)

条件状语从句除前面所讲的两个连词外,还可以由 as long as, so long as, in case, supposing (仅在疑问句中用), on condition that, provided (that) 等引起。例如:

As long as you are here, I will not be afraid of anything.

You may go out on condition that you have finished your homework.

Supposing you can't find your wallet, what will you do?

### 目的状语从句

目的状语从句用来表示主句谓语动词的动作或行为的目的。引导目的状语从句的连词通常是 so that, that, in order that, for fear that, in case 等,其中以 so that 用得较多, in order that 用于正式语体。例如:

He studies English very hard so that he can learn it well.



The teacher speaks English very slowly so that his students may understand well.

We live in order that we can serve the people heart and soul (全心全意).

由 that 引导的目的状语从句在现代英语中用得比较少, 而且常被 so that 或 in order that 替换。

He ran to the railway station that (so that/in order that) he could catch the train.

for fear that “以免”, “免得”, 在现代英语中使用的比较多, 类似的表达还有 so that... not, in order that... not。例如:

The man changed his name for fear that he should be recognized by the people there.

The man changed his name so that he should not be recognized by the people there.

The man changed his name in order that he should not be recognized by the people there.

### 结果状语从句

结果状语从句表示主句谓语动词所涉及的动作或事件的结果。结果状语从句一般情况下主句是原因, 从句是结果。结果状语从句可由 that, so that, so... that, such that, such... that 等词引导。通常情况下, 表示相同的因果关系, 既可用原因状语从句, 也可用结果状语从句。原因状语从句可位于主句的前面或后面, 而结果状语从句只能放在主句的后面。例如:

I was ill yesterday, so that I didn't go to work in the factory.

(=I didn't go to work in the factory because I was ill yesterday.)

The mother worries about her son faraway that she sleeps badly these days.

(=Because the mother worries about her son faraway, she sleeps badly these days.)

The bus was so crowded that I couldn't get in.

I left his house in a hurry such that I forgot to wear my jacket.

She made such rapid progress that she did very well in the final examination.

There were such a lot of people that I could hardly move on.

在使用结果状语从句时应注意以下事项:

1. 注意 so that 和 such that 的区别:

so that 和 such that 同属于复杂从属连词, 但两者又有所不同。so that 只表示结果意义, 而 such that 既含有方式意义, 又具有结果意义。

I had an urgent business to do, so that I could not finish the work the day before yesterday.

He drove the truck carelessly that day such that a terrible accident happened to him.

2. 注意 so that 引导的目的状语从句和 so that 引导的结果状语从句的区别:

(1) 从句前有没有逗号或停顿:

We started very early, so that we got there early. (结果状语从句)

We started very early so that we could get there early. (目的状语从句)

(2) 从句中是否有情态动词:

一般情况下状语从句中有 can, may, could, might, will, would, should 的常常是目的状语从句, 没有上述情态动词的多数是结果状语从句。例如:

Turn on the light so that we can see it clearly. (目的状语从句)

She turned on the light so that I saw it clearly. (结果状语从句)

(3) 从句能否移到句子开头:

目的状语从句不论放在主句之前或主句之后都行。可是, 结果状语从句只能放在主句之后。例如:

So that we could get there early, we started very early.



She turned on the light so that I saw it clearly. (此句中 so that 引导的从句不用于句首)。

3. 注意 so... that 和 such... that 的异同点:

so... that 和 such... that 都能引导结果状语从句, 基本意义都是“如此……以至于”。一般来说, so 是副词, 起加强意义的作用, 它常修饰形容词或者副词; 而 such 是形容词, 它常修饰名词。此所谓“so+形容词或副词+that 从句”的结构和“such+复数名词或不可数名词+that 从句”和“such a/an+单数名词+that 从句”。例如:

Tom is such a good student that all of us like him.

She worked so hard that she was famous at the time.

Whales are such smart animals that they can make many kinds of sounds and talk to each other.

### 原因状语从句

原因状语从句是表示原因或理由的从句。原因状语从句可置于主句之前或之后。引导原因状语从句的从属连词有: because, since, as, for, now that 等。引导原因状语从句时, because 所表示的原因最强, since 次之, as 又次之, for 最弱。for 表达的原因状语从句的从属关系接近于并列, 有的语法书把它归纳入并列连词的范畴。now that 在口语体中出现的比较多。例如:

Because it was raining heavily, I didn't want to go out for a walk.

He didn't go there because he missed the train.

because 表示很直接的原因或说话人认为这种原因是听话人所不知道的, 所以在回答以 why 开头的问句时, 只有 because 最合适, 其他则不行。在强调句中, 如果要强调原因状语从句, 只能用 because 从句, 不用 since, as 或 for 引导的从句。例如:

—Why were you late?

—Because I missed the bus.

It is because I like it that I do it.

since 和 as 引导原因状语从句, 除原因强弱程度有差异外, 其他差别不大。它们引导的状语从句都偏重于原因状语所引起的结果, 原因仅为附带说明。例如:

Since/As I didn't see her today, I rang her up just now.

since 和 as 所引导的状语从句所表示的原因均比较明显。for 引导的状语从句仅是对主句的内容进行解释或推断, 以 for 引导的原因状语从句不出现在句首, 当有上下文时例外。例如:

She asked me to stay there, for she had something to tell me.

now that, on the ground that, for the reason that 等也可引导原因状语从句。例如:

Now that you have finished the work, you may go home.

### 让步状语从句

让步状语从句是表示让步意义的从句。让步状语从句常由 though, although, even if, even though, no matter, whatever 等词引导。例如:

I decided to do it well, though I was short of money at that time.

You should work harder than ever even if you are an advanced worker.

Whatever you say, I will keep calm.

However often he goes home, it is none of my business.

No matter where you work, you should not forget your parents.

当 as 引导让步状语从句时, 常用倒装语序。

Old as he is, he can climb the trees.

Whether... or 也可能引导状语从句。例如:

Whether you drive or take the train, you should attend the meeting on time.

有时甚至不用从属连词, 在一定的语境中, 也能形成让步状语从句。例如:

Come what may, I will do it all the same.



## 例题解析

例 1. The room is \_\_\_\_\_ small \_\_\_\_\_ hold so many things.

A. too; and      B. much; to      C. so; to      D. too; to

解析: 本题考查 too... to... 结构。too... to... 结构意义为“太……而不能……”, 不定式作结果状语。本题意思为“这房间太小, 容纳不下如此多的东西”。但这和 too + glad, ready, anxious, eager, please 等 + to do 不同。后面所讲的用法实则表示肯定意义, too 和 very 意义相同。故本题的正确选项为 D。

例 2. \_\_\_\_\_ boxes useful to you?

A. Are these      B. Are theirs      C. Is that      D. Are they

解析: 本题考查疑问句的语序。当含有助动词、系动词、情态动词的陈述句改为疑问句时, 只需把这些动词提到主语的前面即可。要是句子的谓语动词为实义动词, 而前面无助动词、系动词、情态动词时, 必须借助助动词构成疑问句。本题只涉及前述第一种情况, 而且 boxes 是复数, 其前应当用 these, 再结合主谓一致关系, 故该题的正确选项为 A。

例 3. \_\_\_\_\_ is known to all, he went to Paris last week.

A. As      B. Which      C. That      D. What

解析: 本题考查定语从句。可先排除 D, what 不能引导定语从句。从句所处的位置先后和意义分析, 前者是定语从句。而关系代词 that 和 which 引导的定语从句不能置于整个主从复合句的句首。只有关系代词 as 可置于句首, 可作从句的主语, 又可代替先行句子“he went to Paris last week”。故本题的正确选项为 A。

例 4. You'd better speak slowly \_\_\_\_\_ she may understand you better.

A. because      B. for      C. so that      D. if

解析: 本题考查状语从句。从本题句意分析, 主句动作的目的就是其后的从句意义, 因而后面的句子应为目的状语从句。so that 可引导目的状语从句, 又可引导结果状语从句。so that 引导目的状语从句时, 句中常含有情态动词。从状语从句种类上可排除 A、B 和 D。故该题的正确选项为 C。

例 5. \_\_\_\_\_ you have found, you should give it back to its owner.

A. That      B. No matter what      C. Because      D. No matter how

解析: 本题考查状语从句。本题从句意上分析, 前面的状语从句应为让步状语从句, 而非因果关系, 排除 C 项。that 不能引导让步状语从句, 排除选项 A。又因 find 为及物动词, 发现的东西是 found 的宾语, 而不是发现方法或方式, 排除选项 D。no matter what 可引导让步状语从句。故本题的正确选项为 B。

## 自我测试

- Since when \_\_\_\_\_ Mr Wang?  
A. did he know      B. does he know      C. has he known      D. he knows
- Go and get your coat. It's \_\_\_\_\_ you left it.  
A. there      B. where      C. there where      D. where there
- Please lend us \_\_\_\_\_ dictionary as was used a few days ago.  
A. which      B. that      C. whose      D. the same
- Is this the reason \_\_\_\_\_ you are against the proposal?  
A. that      B. why      C. which      D. for that



5. She is \_\_\_\_\_ an old woman \_\_\_\_\_ she cannot go there herself.  
A. so; that                      B. too; to                      C. such; that                      D. so; and
6. \_\_\_\_\_ difficult the subject may be, we ought to try our best to learn it well.  
A. However                      B. Though                      C. No matter                      D. What
7. \_\_\_\_\_ the truth, nothing can be done.  
A. As soon as you tell me                      B. Until you tell me  
C. Till you tell me                      D. No sooner had you tell me
8. Small \_\_\_\_\_ it is, the ring is very expensive.  
A. because                      B. so                      C. if                      D. as
9. Unless my brother works hard, \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. he will be able to do it well                      B. he will earn a lot of money  
C. he will not succeed                      D. he will become a scientist
10. You can stay in my office \_\_\_\_\_ you keep quiet.  
A. unless                      B. as long as                      C. where                      D. after
11. I doubt \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. whether he can come                      B. if he can come or not  
C. while he will be here                      D. what will he do
12. "Why didn't you help him?"  
"I would have \_\_\_\_\_ I didn't have the money."  
A. still                      B. but                      C. otherwise                      D. or
13. I spent every summer on a farm \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. until my age was about twelve                      B. until I was about twelve  
C. up until when I was about twelve                      D. until twelve years old
14. "Those shirts are very expensive."  
"Do you know \_\_\_\_\_?"  
A. how much cost them                      B. what do they cost  
C. they cost how much                      D. what they cost
15. The farmer uses wood to build a house \_\_\_\_\_ to store grains.  
A. with which                      B. where                      C. which                      D. in which
16. \_\_\_\_\_ to New York, her father was not heard from her.  
A. Because she went                      B. After she went  
C. When she went                      D. Since she went
17. \_\_\_\_\_, Alexander Graham Bell was still a young man.  
A. He invented the telephone                      B. The telephone was invented  
C. His invention of the telephone                      D. When he invented the telephone
18. Almost all economists agree \_\_\_\_\_ by trading with one another.  
A. nations that are gained                      B. nations they gain  
C. gaining nations                      D. that nations gain
19. The states of Maine generally has cooler temperature than \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. there are most other states                      B. most other states which have  
C. most other states have                      D. having most of her states
20. I am sure \_\_\_\_\_ you said is wrong.  
A. which                      B. all                      C. this                      D. what



## 第十二章 句子成分

### 考试要点

主语、谓语、表语、宾语、定语、状语、补足语、直接宾语和间接宾语。

### 复习内容

#### 一、常见的和最主要的句子成分有哪些

如前所述，句子是人们进行语言交际和思想交流的基本语言单位。句子的种类繁多。可是千变万化的句子都是由词按语法规律构成的。按一定语法规律，围绕一定中心词所结合的一组词就叫词组。词和词组在句子中分别充当着一定的句子成分即主语、谓语、表语、宾语（其中包含直接宾语和间接宾语）、定语、状语、宾语补足语等。句子按逻辑意义来讲又是一个主谓结构，因此，主语和谓语应该是句子的最主要的构成成分。

#### 二、句子成分的重要性

长期以来，尤其是英语交际法教学思想繁荣和发展的今天，有相当一部分学英语的人重视传情达意的言语交际，忽视基本的词法和句法以及对英语句子成分的分析。反映在阅读理解方面，由于缺乏对句子成分的分析，读不懂句子，理解不了文章中心。在高中学生中，有一部分学生由于词法、句法知识欠缺，使得在单词拼写、短文改错、书面表达等方面错误连篇。句子成分方面的问题屡见不鲜，连基本的主语用什么词或词组充当，谓语如何构成，状语的基本顺序等基本知识都不知道，随心所欲写句子，凑凑合合写文章，出现了很多能让人笑掉大牙的错误。成人考试中也有短文识错这个题型，也需要我们立足于句子成分分析和词法进行分析，具体问题，具体分析，在语境中解决实际问题。这就是说，要学好英语必须学好句子成分这一部分。

从另外一个角度来说，学好句子成分，认真分析句子，分析各个句子成分的构成，如它用什么词充当，应置于什么位置等，这也有利于促进词法和句法的掌握。它们相辅相成，相得益彰。

以上从正反两个方面说明了学好句子成分这一部分是很重要的。

#### 三、句子各成分的表现方法及所处位置

##### （一）主语

##### 1. 主语的表现方法

主语一般表明句子所说的人是谁或事情是什么的情况。就大的方面而言，主语一般由名词或相当于名词的其他词类、短语或从句来充当。现分述如下：

（1）名词。例如：

My suggestion is that we should get up a little earlier.

The box is on the table.



(2) 代词。英语中一般代词都能作主语。例如：

These are workers from Tokyo, Japan.

Both of them like playing basketball.

在代词中，有一个比较特殊的代词 it，它具有常规代词的特点。例如：

① 用作人称代词，代替前文提到过的事物：

Tom has gone to New York. Have you heard about it?

Where is my dictionary? I can't find it anywhere.

② 非人称代词用法：

用作代替指示代词，起着指示代词的作用：

——Who is standing over there?

——It's me, Wilson.

It's rather hot today. (it 指天气)

It's summer now. (it 指季节)

It's eight o'clock in the morning. (it 指时间)

It's about a mile from here to the town. (it 指距离)

It was noisy just now. (it 指环境)

(3) 数词。例如：

Seventy percent of the students in our class are girls.

(4) 不定式。例如：

Not to grasp firmly is not to grasp at all.

To do it in that way means failure.

(5) 动名词。例如：

Talking mends no holes. (谚语)

There is no denying the fact that he has been there once.

(6) 词组及复合结构。例如：

Christmas Day is drawing near. (名词词组)

It is very difficult for him to understand the article. (不定式复合结构)

His going to the town made his father very angry.

(7) 从句。从句作主语即主语从句，它由连词、连接代词或连接副词引导。例如：

Whether it is right or wrong depends on the fact.

Who will do the work is none of your business.

Why he answered the question in that way is not quite clear.

(8) 相当于名词的其他词类。例如：

Two students are coming towards us. The former is Tom; the latter is Mary.

The sick should have been cured.

"Must" is a modal verb.

(9) 引导词 it 没有具体意义，作形式主语，将真正的主语置于句子后部，保持句子平衡。

在以下三种情况下，借助引导词 it 将主语后移。

① 不定式作主语。例如：

It's very kind of you to give me a hand.

It was difficult for her to learn in the noisy classroom.

② 动名词作主语。例如：

It is no use crying over the spilt milk.

It is dangerous drinking too much.



### ③从句作主语。例如:

It was clear that they had known it.

It happened that he didn't have money on him that day.

It was said that he refused to do the work.

④引导词 it 有时用于强调句, 例如: It was you who did it.

(10) 以 there 开头的句子。

不论传统语法还是新编英语语法都认为 there be 结构中的 there 是句子的主语, “真主语”在其结构之后。例如:

There is going to be a film this evening.

Is there going to be a film this evening?

There is going to be a film this evening, isn't there?

Then there came a terrible storm.

### 2. 主语所处的位置

一般情况下, 句子常用自然语序即主语在前, 谓语在后。本章前面所讲的例子中, 除 there be 结构略有分歧外, 一般都属于自然语序的例子。大多数情况下, 主语位于句首, 谓语居于主语之后。

但有时英语句子可能因为语法结构的需要或强调的需要而使用倒装语序。例如:

出于语法结构需要的倒装:

Where have you been these days?

There may have been a traffic accident.

有时出于强调的需要:

Only when class was over did I realize that I had made a mistake.

So frightened was she in the darkness that she burst into tears.

在使用倒装语序的句子里, 谓语的全部或一部分置于主语的前面。不过, 倒装语序在英语中使用的频度不及自然语序。主语与谓语或部分谓语的位置情况可参阅本书第十三章“倒装结构”。

## (二) 谓语

### 1. 谓语的表现方法

谓语说明主语的情况, 表示主语所做的动作或者所处的状态。它是除主语之外的另一个重要句子成分。谓语主要由动词或者动词短语来充当。有时谓语由系动词加上一个形容词或名词或其他词类或短语或从句构成。例如:

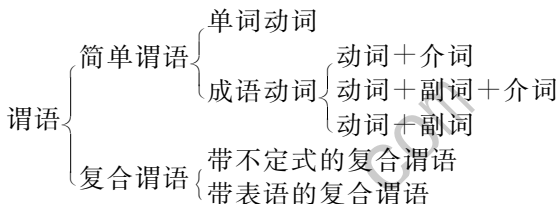
He studies very hard.

You shouldn't look down upon him.

The flower is beautiful.

### 2. 谓语的分类

谓语的分类



(1) 简单谓语。凡是由一个单词动词或成语动词构成, 不论是何时态、语态、语气, 统称简单谓语。现分述如下:

①简单谓语由一个单词动词构成, 即由一个词组成的动词构成。例如:

I like English very much.



②简单谓语由一个成语动词构成，即谓语由一个以上的词组成的动词构成。成语动词又可分为三种情况：

其一，动词+介词型，如：look after, break into, take care of, pay attention to, be fit for, be interested in 等，新编英语语法中称这类动词为介词动词。

其二，动词+副词型，如 break out, get up 等，新编语法称这类动词为词组动词。

其三，动词+副词+介词型，如 look down upon, put up with 等。新编语法称这类动词为词组介词动词。例如：

They look after the children in the nursery and the children are taken good care of by them.

The fire broke out last night.

The thief broke away from the police man.

(2) 复合谓语。复合谓语指的是由两部分动词组成的谓语，它又分两大类：

①带不定式的复合谓语

它一般由情态动词或某些动词+不定式构成。

You may ask your mother about it.

I have to go now.

They seem to like the song very much.

My father happened to meet a friend on his way to the factory.

②带表语的复合谓语

它一般由系动词加上一个形容词或名词或其他词类或短语或从句构成。这种复合谓语多用来表特征、状态、身份等多个方面。常见的系动词有：be, look, seem, smell, sound, appear, feel, get, become, turn, grow, come, remain, stay, keep, prove 等。例如：

She appears to be tired.

The food smelled delicious (美味的).

Something went wrong with my bike.

The young worker has turned to doctor.

Susan remains very weak.

在使用这种复合谓语时需要注意一定的系动词和一定的形容词搭配使用。如 run high, keep quiet, rest content, look fit, come easy, fall asleep, go crazy, go mad, go wrong, go sour 等。例如：

He fell asleep in the course of the class.

The milk has gone sour.

The sea runs high and it is dangerous for us to stay here.

She went mad last night.

They went wrong on their way to the company.

有些带有复合宾语（或者是宾语补足语）的句子在变为被动语态时，句中含有复合谓语。例如：

He was forced to leave his home town.

My son is expected to come back early this afternoon.

The door was forced open by a strong fellow.

### 3. 谓语的位置

说到谓语的位置问题，我们很容易联想起在自然语序中，谓语置于主语之后。在倒装语序中，谓语的全部或一部分置于主语之前，从而形成全部倒装或部分倒装的情况，其目的一般出于语法结构的需要或强调的需要。有关谓语的位置问题请参照本章主语所处的位置和本书第十三章“倒装结构”部分。在此就不用大费笔墨了。

### 4. 主谓的一致关系

说到谓语就不能不谈主谓一致问题，因为它直接涉及谓语的数的变化。一般说来，单数的主语对应单数的谓语动词形式；复数的主语对应复数形式的谓语动词，此所谓语法一致又称之



主谓一致。谓语的数的形式的采用还受到意义一致原则和就近原则的影响。究竟主谓怎样一致,即谓语怎样变化的具体问题可参阅本书第十四章“主谓的一致关系”。

### (三) 表语

#### 1. 表语的表现方法

有些谓语是由系动词和另一个形容词或名词或其他词类或短语或从句构成的,或系动词一起构成谓语的这个句子成分叫作表语。现分述如下:

##### (1) 名词。例如:

He is a soldier.

Mr Brown is president of the university.

##### (2) 形容词。例如:

These apples taste wonderful.

The dish was terrible.

##### (3) 代词。例如:

I'm not myself these days.

This book is yours and mine is on the floor.

##### (4) 数词。例如:

Nine minus three is six.

The students in the school this year are only three quarters of that last year.

##### (5) 副词。例如:

She is not in at the moment.

The light is on.

##### (6) 介词短语。例如:

We are in the same class.

He is in the middle of the procession (游行队伍).

##### (7) 词组。例如:

This line is three times the length of that one.

##### (8) 不定式。例如:

My wish is to become a pilot in the future.

Your mistake was to tell her the truth.

##### (9) 动名词。例如:

His job is teaching English.

##### (10) 分词。不论现在分词或过去分词都可作表语,只不过使用的情况不同罢了。例如:

The football match was exciting.

The play is boring.

The pair of glasses is broken.

I was terrified at a dog there.

##### (11) 从句。从句作表语即表语从句,表语从句由连词、连接代词或连接副词引导。例如:

These are just what we want at present.

That is how she did the work.

It looks as if it is going to rain today.

#### 2. 表语的位置

在表语部分的第一点“表语的表现方法”一部分有各种情况下的例句,利用不完全归纳法也能得出:表语和系动词构成复合谓语,表语必须置于系动词之后。表语的位置在语法理论和实践中也正是如此。有时,表语可置于系动词之前,产生倒装现象。



#### (四) 宾语

##### 1. 宾语的表现方法

宾语一般用于及物动词之后，用来完成动词的意思，表示动作行为的对象或者结果。宾语一般由名词或相当于名词的词类、短语或从句来充当。现分述如下：

(1) 名词。例如：

The students handed in their homework on time.

(2) 代词。例如：

The man can't express himself in French.

(3) 数词。例如：

—How many people do you want to finish the work?

—I want five.

(4) 相当于名词的其他词类。例如：

The government should help the poor in the rural (乡村的) areas.

You'd better leave off "a" here.

(5) 不定式。例如：

I want to go fishing this afternoon.

(6) 动名词。例如：

Do you mind my opening the door?

(7) 复合宾语。例如：

I have my car repaired.

They saw a boy crying over there.

(8) 从句。从句作宾语即宾语从句，它一般由连词、连接代词或连接副词引导。例如：

Li Ping said that she would go home this Friday morning.

除上面所谈的八种情况外，少数动词可能带有与它们同源的名词作同源宾语。例如：

She smiled a forced smile.

I dreamt a terrible dream last night.

有时引导词 it 也用来作形式宾语。例如：

I felt it my duty to clean the blackboard.

The leader thought it senseless (没意义) talking to him about it.

The woman took it for granted that the desk would be hers.

##### 2. 直接宾语和间接宾语

宾语主要分为：宾语  $\begin{cases} \text{直接宾语 (DIRECT OBJECT)} \\ \text{间接宾语 (INDIRECT OBJECT)} \end{cases}$

现分述如下：

(1) 直接宾语。直接宾语表示动作的承受者或结果。直接宾语一般跟在及物动词或相当于及物动词的成语动词之后。例如：

He returned the book to the library.

Peter saw a dog in the garden.

I'm looking forward to seeing you here.

Has the plan been carried out?

(2) 间接宾语。间接宾语表示动作的方向和目标，即表示动作是对谁做的或动作是为谁做的。间接宾语只用在双宾语的及物动词之后，常见的带双宾语的及物动词有：give, show, send, bring, offer, pass, leave, lend, read, hand, tell, return, write, pay, throw, allow, wish, promise, teach, refuse, deny, find, sing, make, buy, get, fetch, do, spare, save, cook, order, play 等。间接宾语多用来指人。例如：



Would you be so kind to lend me some books?

Smoking may do you great harm.

She gave me a pen.

一般情况下, 间接宾语和直接宾语一起使用, 而 cost, last 等动词例外, 间接宾语此时可单独使用。例如:

A bag of flour (面粉) will last them (间接宾语) about a month.

The bike cost me (间接宾语) three hundred yuan.

间接宾语在句中一般是在直接宾语之前。如果在直接宾语之后, 间接宾语前就必须加介词 to 表示动作是对谁做的, 或者加介词 for 表示动作是为谁做的。对于含有“给予”意义的动词一般多用介词 to, 否则一般可由 for 引起短语。例如: She gave a pen to me.

They ordered a room for me there.

间接宾语必须用介词短语表示的情况:

①当直接宾语是代词时。例如:

I will hand it to the teacher.

The little boy threw it to his mother.

My father said he would buy it for me.

②当间接宾语较直接宾语长时。例如:

You'd better fetch some chairs for the visitors standing over there.

③当间接宾语和直接宾语都是代词时。例如:

The professor left it to me.

Sue will lend them to us.

④当强调间接宾语时。例如:

The man bought a cake for his daughter, not for his wife.

⑤当间接宾语处于句子开头时。例如:

For them I sang an English song, not for the tourist from Thailand.

Who did you return the watch to?

### 3. 宾语的位置

总的来说, 宾语一般都处于谓语之后。如果带有双宾语的话, 间接宾语通常都置于直接宾语的前面。例如:

The plan will save them a lot of money.

对于及物动词中的带单宾语的单词动词而言, 宾语一般置于其后。例如:

The little girl found a diamond ring on her way to school.

对于成语动词中的介词动词(动词+介词)和词组介词动词(动词+副词+介词)而言, 宾语一般放于动词之后。

Einstein cared little for money.

If you want to catch up with him, you should study very hard.

当谓语是词组动词(动词+副词)并且相当于及物动词时, 一般情况下, 如果宾语是一个名词, 通常把它放在整个词组动词之后, 也可将名词放在词组动词中间。例如:

You should put on your shirt.

You should put your shirt on.

We decided to carry on reform (改革) in this field.

The teacher will put the English contest off till next Friday.

如果宾语由人称代词充当, 人们一般都把人称代词放在词组动词之间。例如:

Please take it off.

We have to talk it over.

有时人们为了防止将词组动词误认为介词动词, 有意将宾语放在词组动词之间。例如:



The beautiful young woman refused to bring the children of her uncle's up.

如果宾语是较长的名词词组时，一般将名词词组放在词组动词之后。例如：

I have tried on a lot of pairs of glasses.

如果宾语是不定代词，那么它置于词组动词的中间或后面都可以。

The teacher will wake everybody up (wake up everybody) this time tomorrow morning.

对于带双宾语的及物动词而言，间接宾语一般都放在直接宾语的前面。当介词 to 或 for 用于间接宾语之前，在句子中间接宾语一般都放在直接宾语的后面。有关直接宾语和间接宾语在句中所处位置的详细情况可参考本章“直接宾语和间接宾语”部分的第②点“间接宾语”。

上面我们涉猎了直接宾语和间接宾语在句子中所处的常规位置，它揭示了在英语句子中宾语位置的概貌。而语言现象千变万化，并非所有的宾语都是如此。

在有些情况下，宾语通常放在主语的前面：

(1) 强调的目的。例如：

These two students I want to introduce to you.

Whether she will come here or not, I'm not interested in.

(2) 在特殊疑问句中，宾语由疑问词充当或被疑问词所修饰时。例如：

What are you looking for?

How many miles have they covered this week?

(3) 在感叹句中，当宾语由 what 修饰时。例如：

What noise you are making!

What a difficult situation we are in!

偶尔，在英语句子中也有出于强调其他目的，宾语并没有直接放在谓语动词之后，而是被其他成分分隔开。例如：

Suddenly the student took out of his schoolbag a book and gave it to his teacher.

I saw for the first time such a big diamond ring.

## (五) 定语

### 1. 定语的表现方法

定语用来修饰或限制名词或代词。定语主要由形容词或与之相当的其他词类、短语或从句来充当。关于定语的表现方法现分述如下：

(1) 形容词。例如：

He is a brave young man.

(2) 名词或名词所有格。例如：

Tom's father wants to buy a pair of cotton socks.

(3) 代词。例如：

Their school is a beautiful school.

(4) 数词。例如：

Five people died in the big fire.

(5) 副词。例如：

The students here are from Class One, Grade Three.

(6) 介词短语。例如：

The people in the room are about twenty.

(7) 词组及合成词。例如：

It was a man-made satellite.

(8) 不定式短语。例如：

The headmaster had an important meeting to attend this Saturday.



(9) 分词(短语)。例如:

The old man told us an exciting story.

The man standing there is our physics teacher.

Here are some written exercises to you.

This is a school built in 1958.

(10) 动名词。例如:

A swimming pool is being built in the factory.

(11) 从句。从句作定语即定语从句,它一般由关系代词或关系副词引导。例如:

Do you know the man who gave us the talk yesterday afternoon?

The school where her mother works is in the south of the town.

## 2. 定语的位置

总的来说,在英语句子中,定语的位置比较灵活,有时它居于所修饰的词的前面,有时在所修饰的词的后面,有时和所修饰的词保持一定距离。现分别叙述如下:

(1) 单词作定语,通常情况下都放在所修饰的词的前面。例如: a young man, a difficult problem, some useful tools, a terrible story 等。

在某些情况下,单词作定语却置于所修饰的词的后面:

① 单词作定语,而这个单词又带有自身的修饰语时。例如:

Alice is a girl about twelve years old.

They bought an iron tower over fifty metres high.

② 当定语修饰复合不定代词时,它常置于复合不定代词的后面。这些复合不定代词一般由 some-, any-, every-, no- 构成。

I found something unusual in the room.

Can you get someone reliable to go there?

③ 副词作定语时,一般都放在所修饰的词之后。例如:

The woman fell off her bike on her way home.

The buildings around were designed by him.

④ 某些形容词可以放在所修饰的词的后面。

We need some workbooks available on this subject.

⑤ 有些表语形容词作定语时,常放于所修饰的词之后。例如:

the students present (在场的)

the teacher responsible (应负责任的)

⑥ 有些分词可能带有较强的动词意义,当它们作定语时,常置于所修饰的词之后。例如:

I don't have any idea of the person involved.

(2) 短语作定语,通常情况下都放在所修饰的词的后面。例如:

The comrades in this room are Party members.

We need a lot of bricks (砖) made by their factory.

Who is the woman wandering up and down the road?

They need a room to put all these books in.

(3) 定语有时和所修饰的词中间有间隔。

There were a lot of students on the playground playing basketball.

I still remember one afternoon five years ago when I first saw him.

What was there to look at?

(4) 当一个词被多个定语修饰时,应当搞清楚它们之间的相互位置。

要搞清楚多个定语的先后顺序问题,先向大家介绍三类词:

第一类词: all, both, half, double, twice, three times, etc; one third, two thirds, etc; what, such (a), etc..



第二类词: the, a (n), zero; this, that, these, those; my, your, his etc; John's, the young man's, etc; some, any, no, every, each, either, neither, enough; what (ever), which (ever), whose, etc..

第三类词: one, two, three, etc; first, second, third, etc; next, last, (an) other, etc; many, much, (a) few, (a) little, fewer, (the) fewest, less, (the) least, more, most; several, plenty of, a lot of, lots of, a great (large, good) number of, a great deal of, a large amount of, etc..

当所修饰的词前有两个或两个以上的上述第一类、第二类、第三类词汇时,其固定顺序是:

第一类词+第二类词+第三类词。必须按照上述顺序,不能调换。如出现上述其中两类词共同作用于所修饰的词,则只能按:第一类词+第二类词,第一类词+第三类词,第二类词+第三类词的顺序应用。

**注意:**首先,第一类和第一类词,第二类和第二类词之间存在互斥现象;其次,第三类和第三类词之间的顺序应按其排列顺序应用,位置也比较固定,不能任意前后调换位置。这种修饰词顺序排列的思路来源于《新编英语语法》“限定词”一章,上述第一类词、第二类词、第三类词分别与前位限定词、中位限定词、后位限定词一一对应。为了减小讲解难度,增强这个问题的实用性,可操作性,尽量按成人高考英语学科的要求,不涉及太难的语法项目,又能让大家搞清楚这个问题,故采用这种讲法。

在引入上述三类词之后,一个词被多个词修饰的问题就易于说明了。一般情况下,当一个词被多个词修饰的排列顺序是:

第一类词+第二类词+第三类词+具有描绘性意义的形容词+表示大小、长短、高低的形容词+表示形状的形容词+表示年龄、新旧的形容词+表示颜色的形容词+表示国籍、地区、出处的形容词+表示物质、材料的形容词+表示用途、类别的形容词+被修饰的名词。

一般情况下,多个词的修饰顺序都按上述顺序排列。尽管实际应用中被修饰的词不可能带那么多的修饰语,可是它们的排列顺序的大趋势却一目了然。例如:

a big square yellow table, all other students  
those small black Chinese wooden chairs  
the dirty old brown jacket, the first three weeks  
a beautiful new green skirt, many more books

多个词修饰的排列如上,可以此类推。

多个从句之间有时也存在前后修饰顺序问题。例如:

He is the best man I can find who can finish the work in such a short time.

多个从句修饰一个词的大体顺序是:如果多个从句用并列连词连接共同修饰一个词(此时叫先行项),从句的先后顺序一般无所谓先后。如果多个从句共同修饰一个词,一般按和被修饰的词的关系由近及远排列顺序。

## (六) 状语

### 1. 状语的表现方法

状语用来修饰动词、形容词、副词或整个句子,状语一般由副词或与之相当的其他词类,短语或句子来充当。有关状语的表现方法现分述如下:

(1) 副词。例如:

I entirely agree with him.

(2) 介词短语。例如:

She was born in Xi'an in 1958.

(3) 形容词。例如:

Cruse stared at the footprint, full of fear.

(4) 词组。例如:



It is autumn and the peasants are working day and night.

Failure after failure, he succeeded in the end.

(5) 不定式短语。例如:

He drove to the school yesterday to visit his English teacher.

(6) 分词。例如:

Being ill, Adam couldn't go to work that day.

He came into the house, followed by his son.

(7) 从句。例如:

I will write to you as soon as I get to Guangzhou.

## 2. 状语的分类

如上所述,英语中可作状语的词、短语和从句很多,而它们所作的状语的种类也很多,且不同的词、短语以及从句所作的状语的种类又各有差异。概括起来讲,英语的状语可分为修饰性状语、评注性状语和连接性状语。

修饰性状语是谓语的一个组成部分,它由副词或副词短语、介词短语、名词短语、非谓语动词短语、形容词短语及从句等充当,它修饰谓语或谓语动词。修饰性状语从句按内容可分为:时间、地点、原因、结果、方式、程度、目的、条件、让步、伴随状况等状语。例如:

I was deeply moved by his words.

They have done the work fairly well.

Whatever happens, you should keep calm.

If she is not in the office, she must go home.

评注性状语是对整个句子进行说明或解释,表明说话人对话语的看法或态度,并一般不与所评说的句子在结构上紧密结合的状语。评注性状语不是修饰谓语或谓语动词,而是修饰整个句子。评注性状语常用于句首(有时也用于句中或句末),常用逗号与句子隔开。评注性状语常由某些副词或副词短语、介词短语、非谓语动词短语及某些从句充当。例如:

In their opinion, we are wasting our time on it.

To tell the truth, I forgot what you had said to me.

Honestly, I think you have done a very good job.

连接性状语是在句子或者从句之间起连接作用的状语,它不在句中起修饰作用或评注作用。连接性状语就词汇意义可分为如下情况:

(1) 表示列举或顺序意义,例如: firstly, secondly; one, two, three...; for one thing...for another; to begin with, to start with, next, then, finally, last 等。例如:

In a word, they decided to do it together.

(2) 表示增补或引申意义,例如: above all, besides, also, what is more, then 等。

(3) 表示等同意义,例如: equally, in other words, in the same way 等。

(4) 表示改变话题等意义,例如: by the way, incidentally 等。

有时还用到其他一些表达,例如: in a word, all in all, namely, for example, for instance, that is to say, thus, therefore, as a result, instead, anyhow, however, after all, all the same, meanwhile 等也可作连接性状语。

## 3. 状语的位置

总的来说,状语在句中的位置灵活多变,状语种类不同,位置也可能不同。有些还难以一概而论,这需要在实践中仔细观察,灵活运用,在不断总结中提高自身水平。

(1) 对于修饰谓语动词的修饰性状语而言,多数情况下放在这个谓语动词之后;如果谓语后面带有宾语,就放在宾语之后。例如:

The peasant went to the market early in the morning.

They stayed in the house because of the rain.

We should do it immediately.



对于有些修饰性状语如频度副词（若句中有情态动词、助动词或动词 to be 可放在这类动词的后面）、程度副词及有些方式副词所作的状语，一般都放在所修饰的实义动词的前面或系表结构的中间。例如：

She often goes to school at six in the morning.

The young man is seldom ill.

They always have a walk after supper.

Your parents don't quite agree with you.

疑问副词、连接副词、关系副词所作的状语和连接性状语常放在句子的开头。例如：

Where did you go yesterday?

Why he did it is still unknown.

Bob will never forget the day when he joined the army.

First of all, let me introduce Mr. Li to you.

Above all, you must learn English well.

(2) 如果有两个或两个以上的状语修饰同一个谓语动词，应当注意它们的先后顺序：

① 地点状语一般放在时间状语之前，这一点英汉正好相反。例如：

Please come here early next day.

The singer arrived in Xi'an this morning.

② 并列的时间状语或地点状语，小一点的在前，大的在后。例如：

Classes begin at 8 in the morning.

The poet stayed in Room 302, Shanghai Hotel.

③ 较长的状语在后，较短的状语在前。例如：

They came here to watch the football match.

④ 如果句中出现方式状语、时间状语和地点状语，一般都放在句末，其顺序是：方式状语 + 地点状语 + 时间状语。例如：

We did the work carefully in his house the day before yesterday.

(3) 当表示强调意义时，时间状语、地点状语、原因状语、条件状语等，可放在句子的前部。例如：

Yesterday morning, I went to Brown for some help.

In our school, a lot of students study very hard.

(4) 用来修饰整句的或说明整个句子的评注性状语，一般都放在句子的前部。例如：

Fortunately, the boy was not at home at the very moment.

Most probably, she has told them all that she knew about it.

As a matter of fact, I have never heard of it.

(5) 有时某些状语可能依据表达的需要放在主语和谓语的中间位置。例如：

My son, though very young, can operate the computer (计算机) freely.

Some students, led by their monitor, are cleaning their classroom now.

## (七) 补足语

### 1. 补足语的分类

众所周知，传统语法的补足语和新编语法的补足语有较大的差异。传统语法中的系表结构做谓语，而在新编英语语法中叫主语的补足语。由于前面已讲述了谓语和表语的有关知识，在此不



多做介绍。主语补足语中还有一种情况,它由主语+谓语+宾语+宾语补足语的被动态转化而成,例如:

Mr. Jackson was elected chairman of the meeting.

The bananas were picked ripe.

这种主语补足语在传统语法中叫主语补足语,在新语法中叫 S+V+passC 句型中的主语补足语。在这一点上两者又有共性。

不论传统语法或新语法都涉及了宾语补足语这个概念,所以讲补足语非讲宾语补足语不可。又因为上述第二种主语补足语是由主动态的宾语补足语转化而来,所以这两种补足语具有一定的共性,只不过使用的语态不同罢了。以下将以宾语补足语为例讲解补足语方面的知识,故将第二种情况下的主语补足语一笔带过。

## 2. 宾语补足语的表现方法

宾语补足语是指在主语+谓语+宾语+宾语补足语的句型中,谓语动词虽然有宾语,但句子意义仍不完全,需要对宾语的意义进行补足说明的这样一个句子成分。宾语+宾语补足语合在一起,在传统语法中称为复合宾语,复合宾语的两个成分在意义上存在着一种“主谓”关系。宾语补足语可由名词短语、形容词短语、副词短语、介词短语、不定式短语、分词短语等来充当。现在对宾语补足语的表现方法分别叙述如下:

### (1) 名词短语。例如:

They made Jane chairman of the Students' Union.

### (2) 形容词短语。例如:

We thought the story very exciting.

They proved the work worthy of doing.

### (3) 副词短语。例如:

She had the light on day and night.

I saw him out with your sister this morning.

### (4) 介词短语。例如:

Dick considered himself above the other workers in the workshop.

### (5) 不定式短语。例如:

Gessler had the boy stand in the distance.

### (6) 分词短语。例如:

The peasants had the tractors working all day long.

I found the box crowded with bottles.

## 3. 宾语补足语对于动词的要求

要用好宾语补足语的另一个关键就是要把握好动词。并非所有的动词之后都可带上宾语及它的补足语。后面能跟有这类宾语补足语的动词有以下几种情况:

①表示“使成”、“致使”意义的动词。

②表示感觉的动词。

③表示心理活动的动词。

④表示“呼为”、“称作”、“选为”等意义的动词。

⑤表示“保持”意义的动词。

这些动词诸如: make, get, have, keep, let, see, hear, feel, find, think, watch, notice, observe, turn, dye, name, prove, leave 等词。

同时还要注意能跟宾语补足语的动词范围随着后面的宾语补足语表现方式的不同而不断地发生变化,千万不可生搬硬套。



## 4. 宾语补足语的位置

不言而喻,在主语+谓语+宾语+宾语补足语这个句型中宾语补足语一般紧跟宾语成分之后。

## 5. 主语补足语的位置

在主语+谓语+宾语+宾语补足语的句型变被动态之后,原来的宾语变成主语,原来的宾语补足语变成主语补足语,其基本形式是:

① 主语+be 的时态形式+过去分词+主语补足语。

② S+Link-V+P

上述主语补足语在句中的位置一目了然。

### 例题解析

例 1. Shortly after the accident, two \_\_\_\_\_ police were sent to the spot to keep order.

A. dozen of      B. dozens      C. dozen      D. dozens of

解析: 本题考查数词作定语, 新编语法称之为限定词。类似 dozen, hundred, thousand, million 等词当其前为基数词时一般用单数形式。基数词之后用 dozen 常常省去 of。故本题的最佳选项为 C。

例 2. —Are the two answers correct?

—No, \_\_\_\_\_ correct.

A. no one is      B. both are not      C. neither is      D. either is not

解析: 本题考查不定代词作主语的情况。不定代词 no one 只用来指人, 很明显 A 项错误。B 项为部分否定。D 项不符合习惯用法。C 项 neither 为含有否定意义的不定代词作主语, 它的主谓语一致也正确。故正确选项为 C。

例 3. After living in Paris for fifty years, he returned to the small town \_\_\_\_\_ he grew up as a child.

A. which      B. where      C. that      D. when

解析: 本题考查关系副词引导的定语从句。本题应先着眼于定语从句所缺的成分。由于定语从句主要成分齐全, 因而从句缺乏状语, 排除选项 A 和 C。又因前面先行词指的是一个地点而非时间, 排除选项 D。故该题的正确选项为 B。

例 4. It is generally considered unwise to give a child \_\_\_\_\_ he or she wants.

A. however      B. whatever      C. whichever      D. whenever

解析: 本题重点考查宾语从句这个问题。从题中很明显可看到 give 后有间接宾语, 也有直接宾语, 但直接宾语从句缺乏引导词。再分析宾语从句中的及物动词 wants 缺少宾语, 那么只有由连接代词来充当, 可排除选项 A 和 C。又由于句中没有指出孩子的选择范围, 而且也不知道孩子的选择范围, 排除选项 C。故本题的正确选项为 B。

例 5. Every day when it became dark in winter, the old man had the fires \_\_\_\_\_ all night long.

A. burning      B. to burn      C. burn      D. burned

解析: 本题考查非谓语动词作宾语补足语的问题。英语中用来表达使动意义常见用到三个形式: have sb (sth.) doing sth., have sth. done 和 have sb (sth.) do sth. 分别表示“使某人(物)一直干某事”“使某事被干”和“使某人(物)干某事”。依据其意义, 本题正确选项为 A。



## 自我测试

1. He is one of Sue's \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. boy friend      B. boy friends      C. boys friends      D. boys friend
2. You must \_\_\_\_\_ the meeting on time.  
A. attend      B. attend to      C. attend at      D. attending
3. Something has \_\_\_\_\_ wrong.  
A. goes      B. come      C. got      D. gone
4. The telephone \_\_\_\_\_ dead yesterday.  
A. went      B. goes      C. grow      D. felt
5. His idea doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ reasonable.  
A. hear      B. listen      C. sound      D. see
6. The woman said the petrol (汽油) in the car was \_\_\_\_\_ out.  
A. going      B. feeling      C. getting      D. running
7. Her face \_\_\_\_\_ pale on hearing the man's words.  
A. turned      B. grew      C. become      D. went
8. Who is she? I \_\_\_\_\_ her before.  
A. never had seen      B. had never seen      C. would never seen      D. never saw
9. The task is \_\_\_\_\_ by Thursday.  
A. finish      B. finishing      C. to be finished      D. finished
10. This pair of shoes needs \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. mend      B. mending      C. mended      D. to mend
11. She will have her father \_\_\_\_\_ her watch.  
A. repair      B. to repair      C. repaired      D. to be repaired
12. Although my son \_\_\_\_\_ clever, he is \_\_\_\_\_ lazy.  
A. rather; fairly      B. fairly; rather      C. little; rather      D. fairly; much
13. The students are \_\_\_\_\_ young people between the ages of sixteen and twenty.  
A. much      B. almost      C. mostly      D. at most
14. The man is so \_\_\_\_\_ understand this play.  
A. stupid to as not      B. stupid as not to      C. not clever as to      D. clever not as to
15. The girl \_\_\_\_\_ long hair was talking to the old man who was all \_\_\_\_\_ black.  
A. on; of      B. at; in      C. with; in      D. in; with



## 第十三章 倒装结构和省略句

### 考试要点

1. 倒装结构的定义、成因、分类及各种情况。
2. 省略句的用法。



### 复习内容

#### 一、倒装结构

（参见视频 2-13-1）

就英语中主语和谓语的顺序而言，英语的基本语序是“主语+谓语”，又称自然语序（NATURAL ORDER）。如果将谓语的全部或一部分放在主语之前，这种语序叫作倒装语序（INVERTED ORDER），即所谓的倒装结构。

#### 二、倒装结构的成因

前面已经说过，英语句子的正常词序是主语在前，谓语在后。句首为主语的正常位置。那么，为什么又要用倒装结构呢？

要说清楚上述问题，常规情况下须从两个方面说起：

##### （一）语法结构的需要

一说到语法结构需要，大家的第一感觉就是英语中有些疑问句总是把谓语或谓语的一部分置于主语之前，这是为了构成疑问句。例如：

Where did you go yesterday?

What are you going to be when you grow up?

有时，由于句子的主语太长，为了遵循句末重心的原则不得已而将主语向后移动。其结果不仅保持了句子的平衡，句子结构匀称了，而且被后移的主语也收到了强调的效果。例如：

It took me three hours to do such a lot of work for him.

有时，为了强调表语或状语，或者使上下文紧密衔接而使用倒装结构。例如：

Nearby were two canoes in which the savages had come to the island.

Inside the pyramids are the burial rooms for the kings and queens and long passages to these rooms.

We arrived at a hill, on the top of which stands a white tower.

总而言之，由于语法结构需要引起倒装的情况较多，恕不一一再叙。

##### （二）强调的需要

强调是人们在语言交际中经常使用的一种重要手段。它能使人们有效地进行思想交流，使自己所要表达的思想被听者或读者恰如其分地理解，突出了所要表达的重要内容。因而强调这



种手段深得人们的重视和广泛应用。在现代英语中,强调的方法是多种多样的,具体表现在书面语中的方法之一就是倒装结构的实际运用。倒装结构的运用使得语言交际中的重要信息得到强调,促进了语言的交流。比如说为了强调状语,人们将状语置于句首并将主谓倒置。例如:

Only then did I realize the importance of English.

Hardly had I reached the railway station when the train started.

有时为了强调表语也使用倒装结构。例如:

On the other side of the factory is a large man-made lake.

Seated on the ground are a group of little boys from the village.

### 三、倒装的分类

倒装结构按所提前的谓语的全部或部分来划分,可分为全部倒装(FULL INVERSION)和部分倒装(PARTIAL INVERSION)。在全部倒装的句子中,整个谓语置于主语之前。例如:

Rushed the man with a book in his hand.

"What is it?" asked the guard.

在部分倒装的句子里,仅仅把谓语中的一部分(如助动词,情态动词,或系动词等)置于主语之前,其余部分依旧放于主语的后面。例如:

Never have I seen such a good film.

Little did the leader care about his health.

### 四、倒装结构与疑问句、祈使句、感叹句及陈述句的联系

#### (一) 倒装结构与疑问句

大多数疑问句都采用倒装结构。例如:

How long have you been in my army?

Did you do it yourself?

Shall I give you a hand or can you do it yourself?

You aren't using this computer, are you?

一般疑问句、特殊疑问句、选择疑问句、反意疑问句都有可能是倒装结构。但这并不意味着所有的疑问句都用倒装语序。如果句子的主语由一个疑问词充当或被一个疑问词修饰,它就置于谓语之前,此时的疑问句实则采用自然语序。例如:

Who went just now?

Whose book fell on the floor?

How many students joined the Youth League?

#### (二) 倒装结构与祈使句

祈使句一般都采用自然语序,且一般都省掉主语,不涉及倒装结构的情况。

#### (三) 倒装结构与感叹句

大多数感叹句都用陈述句形式,多采用自然语序。例如:

What a clever girl she is!

How difficult the work was at the time!

在英语中,尤其在非正式语体中,有少数感叹句采用疑问句的形式,这种感叹句使用倒装结构。例如:

Isn't it lovely!

— They have gone to Shanghai.

— Haven't they!



#### (四) 倒装结构与陈述句

在所有的英语句子中,绝大多数陈述句都采用自然语序。在有些情况下,句子往往出于语法结构的需要或强调的需要必须使用倒装结构。本章的后面部分将以陈述句为主线索,进一步论及英语的倒装结构的一些情况。

### 五、常见的倒装结构

常见的倒装句除上文所谈的由于语法结构需要并经常发生部分倒装的某些疑问句、少数感叹句之外,在陈述句中,由于某些因素的影响,还需要使用一些倒装结构。

#### (一) 状语前置时

##### 1. 以 there 开头的固定倒装结构

以 there 开头作形式主语或将其看作引导词的句子常含有客观存在的意义。这种句子的谓语动词通常是 be 或含有存在意义的动词的一定形式。处于谓语动词之后紧跟着句子的“真主语”,这种“真主语”往往由名词词组来充当。以 there 开头表示“存在”意义的句子在传统语法中叫 there be 结构;在新编英语语法中称之为存在句。这种特殊句型的主要交际功能是传达新的信息,它将“真主语”置于谓语动词之后,其本身就是倒装结构的一种实际运用。例如:

There isn't anything in the room.

Is there any difficulty in the work?

There aren't any apples in the basket, are there?

有时,这种结构的谓语动词是除 be 之外表示“存在”意义的其他动词或词组,照样使用倒装结构。常见的这类动词和词组有: come, enter, stand, occur, live, lie 以及 happen to be, seem to be, appear to be, be likely to be 等。例如:

Many years ago, there lived an old man by the sea.

There stand four teaching buildings in our school.

There happened to be Mr. Wang in the house.

2. 以表示方位的副词或拟声词置于句首时,谓语动词常用表示位置移动的动词如: come, go, follow 等词,同时主语又是比较长的名词词组,这种情况下,常用全部倒装,倒装的目的是出于强调的需要,主语的后置也符合新编英语语法中的句末重心原理。常见的方位意义的副词有: there, here, up, down, in, out, away 等词。例如:

There goes the bell.

Here comes the headmaster.

Away went the old man.

使用拟声词的情况:

Click! Goes there.

Bang! Came from a room on the second floor.

上面所讲的这种倒装情况,使用强调这种手段能够使所描写的情景更生动、更形象。

使用本点所讲的倒装结构时,需要注意的问题是:当主语是人称代词时,主语和谓语的语序应是自然语序,即不发生倒装的情况。例如:

Here it is. Away she went.

3. 以时间副词 now, then 引起的,以表示位置移动的动词作谓语的情况,也常用倒装结构。倒装的目的是强调,也采用全部倒装。例如:

Now comes Mr Smith, head of the department.

Then follows a teacher from another school.

此时,同样要注意的是:人称代词作句子主语,句子不倒装。此处不再给出例句。



4. 当句首状语用表示地点的介词短语来充当时, 常使用全部倒装。倒装的成因是为了达到强调的效果。例如:

South of the city lies a famous senior middle school of the province.

From the deep cave came a terrible cry.

Inside the workshop stood some giants.

5. only 所修饰的副词、介词短语, 或状语从句置于句首时, 常使用倒装结构。倒装的目的还是要强调状语, 并且采用部分倒装。例如:

Only in this way can you do the work well.

Only this afternoon did I see the writer.

Only when the First World War was over in 1918 was he able to get happily back to work.

在使用本语法点时需注意: 英语中有的句子虽然以 only 开头, 但如果 only 不是修饰状语, 而是作形容词, 限制句子的主语, 此时主语和谓语不发生倒装的情况。例如:

Only a skilled worker can finish the work well.

Only the teachers are allowed to enter the room.

6. 含有否定意义或半否定意义的副词或介词短语放于句首时, 一般引起部分倒装; 如果谓语动词为动词 be 的一般现在时或一般过去时, 则采用全部倒装。常见的带有否定意义或半否定意义的副词或介词短语有: never, little, rarely, nor, seldom, not, at no time, not once 等。例如:

Never have I seen such a beautiful mountain in the area.

Not a single mistake did he make in the written expression.

At no time will I say such words.

Little do I care about her past.

7. 含有否定意义的关联从属连词置于句首时, 只在含有否定意义的连词部分发生部分倒装, 其余部分用自然语序。本点所讲的语法点和上面的第 6 点所讲的倒装都属于部分倒装, 都出于强调的目的, 只不过部分倒装的位置上有差异, 引导词上有差异而已。常见的带有否定意义的关联从属连词有: hardly... when..., not only... but also..., not until..., no sooner... than..., barely... when..., scarcely... when... 等。例如:

No sooner had I got there than it began to rain.

Not until he was actually dying did he say "I can not work for the people any more."

Not only was everything that he had taken away from him, but also his German citizenship.

8. 当关联从属连词 so... that... 中的 so 位于句首时, 一般引起部分倒装; 如果谓语动词为 be, 则为全部倒装。例如:

So dangerous is the machine that no one dares to operate it.

So small was the sign that I could hardly see it.

So much does the mother worry about her son that she fell ill yesterday.

9. 将状态副词 so 放于句首时, 表示前面所说的肯定的情况也适用于另一人(或物)。其句型是: so + be (have, 助动词或情态动词) + 主语。

I went there yesterday. So did my wife.

You can drive a car. So can I.

在此, so 可译为“也是”。如果句首的 so 表示“是的, 确实”, 在简短回答中表示重复或同意对方的意见时, 则不引起倒装。例如:

I went there yesterday. So I did.

—It was too hot yesterday.

—So it was.



10. 将 neither, nor 放在句首, 表示前面否定的内容也适合于另一人(或物)。它的句型是: neither (nor) + be (have, 助动词或情态动词) + 主语。

I haven't seen Mary for a long time, neither has my friend Bob.

此时, 倒装句中的 neither 或 nor 可译为“也不”。

11. 当方式状语, 频度状语等提至句首时, 有时也可引起部分倒装, 其目的是强调。例如:

Often did I see him swimming in the lake when I was a little boy.

Well do I remember the place where I shook hands with comrade Li in 1983.

如果主语较长时, 也可全部倒装。例如:

With his words came a group of young men who had guns in their hands.

有时, 当说话人语气较弱时, 方式状语出现在句首时, 也可不用倒装语序, 例如:

Slowly and quietly he left the meeting room.

12. 倒装结构用于某些表示祝愿的句子中。例如:

May you succeed in the examination.

Long live the People's Republic of China.

13. 用于省去 if 的虚拟条件状语从句中。这种倒装结构与虚拟语气相结合, 实则是出于句子结构的需要。这种用法适于正式文体, 它使语言表达简洁明了。例如:

Had he seen you yesterday, he would have asked you about it.

Should it rain, the crops would be saved.

14. 倒装结构用于某些让步状语从句中。例如:

Try as he may, he will never succeed.

Say what you will, I will not believe in you.

## (二) 表语前置时

表语前置在某些情况下也可能引起句子倒装, 这种倒装结构通常情况不用于书面语中。它往往是因为主语较长或结构比较复杂或者使上下文紧密衔接等因素而形成的倒装结构。

1. 当表语是介词短语时, 可能形成倒装结构。例如:

Near the southern end of the town is a large chemical works.

On the other side of the building were rows of trees with some flowers.

2. 当表语是形容词时, 可能形成倒装结构。例如:

In the season of harvest, very important in the peasants' life is the radio weather report.

Present at the conference (会议) were some professors, leaders and many other guests.

有时, 为了使上下文联系紧密, 语言使用者有意将表语提前, 用以增强语言表达效果。例如:

What Mr. Smith did was important, but more important was the way he did things.

3. 有些副词作句子的表语时, 用倒装结构。例如:

Northernmost of the park is a company with three thousand workers.

4. 过去分词在句子中作表语时, 可能采用倒装结构。例如:

Located at the foot of the beautiful mountain is our university.

Seated on the bench over there is a naughty boy of our class.

5. 在 as 引导的让步状语从句中, 带使用倒装结构, 以部分倒装比较普遍。例如:

Young as he is, he can go to school himself.

Pretty as she is, she can do nothing well.

Difficult as these questions are, they are very interesting indeed.

Surrounded as we were by a group of people, we managed to escape.

如果 as 引导的让步状语从句中的主语比较长, 也可采用全部倒装的形式。例如:

Old as is the old man with a long white beard, he can run very fast.



如果用名词在 as 引导的让步状语从句中作表语时, 则该名词前一般不加任何冠词。例如:  
 Boy as he is, he has to make a living all by himself.  
 Teacher as she was, she was not a good teacher.

### (三) 谓语动词前置时

在有些情况下, 谓语动词前置也能使某些句子产生主谓语倒装的现象。不论是全部倒装还是部分倒装在谓语前置的情况下都有可能发生。以下将谈谈谓语动词前置时可能产生语序倒装的一些情况:

1. 如果直接引语的一部分或全部置于句首或句末时, 在直接引语之后或之前一般注明引语是什么人说的。这里必然涉及一些表示说话的动词, 诸如: say, ask, suggest, answer, reply, whisper, continue, cry 等许多词。如果上述动词所对应的主语是名词, 一般都采用倒装结构; 如果动词所对应的主语是代词时, 一般不用倒装结构。例如:

“You’d better do it at once.” said the teacher.

“What does your brother do in the summer holidays?” asked the father angrily.

在新闻题材的文章中, 还可见到表示说话的动词置于句首, 从而产生全部倒装的情况。例如: Said the chairman, “At present, the most important thing is to let the people there know the facts rather than the orders.”

Continued Mr Braveman, “More and more people are beginning to realize that pollution is a big problem and something should be done to stop pollution.”

2. 如果谓语动词是由情态动词+不定式(一般多见不带 to 的不定式即动词原形)构成时, 为了强调不定式所表示的动作, 常将其中的实义动词(有时连同宾语或补语)置于句首, 构成倒装结构。例如:

Give it to his enemy I dare not.

Sing a song I cannot; let me give you a dance.

He wants to show you around our city, do it he will.

3. 在英语语言交际活动中, 有时能见到这样的情形, 它把实义动词部分置于句首, 然后再跟上情态动词或助动词, 后面再接上句子的主语, 产生全部倒装结构。例如:

Willing to do this difficult and dangerous work are our police from this city.

Standing beside the minister (部长) is the president (校长) of their university.

在上面的例句中, 构成进行时的现在分词被置于句首, 形成倒装语序, 其目的是强调。

有时被动语态中的过去分词也能提至句首, 形成带有强调目的的倒装结构。

Shown together with these paintings are photos of their painter.

Given by Miss Green is a basin of eggs.

## 六、省略句 (Elliptical Sentence)

### (一) 简单句的省略

1. 主语

Have a seat please. 请坐!

Haven’t heard from him for decades. 几十年没有他的音信了。

Sounds like a bird. 听起来像是一只鸟。

Looks like snow. 好像要下雪了。

2. 谓语及谓语的一部分

Anything wrong? 有问题吗?

(Does) Anybody else want some? 还有人要吗?

(Are) you tired? 你累吗?



### 3. 宾语

What is your name? — I don't remember (it) now. 你叫什么名字? — 我现在想不起来。

I love literature, she loves too. 我爱好文学, 她也爱好。

### 4. 省掉主语或谓语, 只剩下表语、宾语、状语或其他成分

— Do you want to go with me? — Why not? 你想和我一块去吗? 为什么不?

— Will you have time to go on business? — Afraid not. 你有时间去出差吗? 恐怕没有。

— How much money have you brought? — 300 dollars. 你带了多少钱? 三百美元。

— Where will be the 2000 Olympic Games held? — In Sydney.

2000 年奥运会在哪儿举办? 在悉尼。

### 5. 不定式

Would you like to work at weekends? — I'd like to (work). 你想周末加班吗? 我想。

— Are you going to get married on National Day? 你打算国庆结婚吗?

— I hope to (get...). 我希望。

## (二) 并列句中的省略

I work in Xi'an and she (works) in Shanghai. 我在西安工作, 她在上海工作。

O stands for oxygen; H (stands for) hydrogen and N (stands for) nitrogen.

O 代表氧气, H 代表氢气, N 代表氮气。

Of all my students, some are sent to America by our government and some (are sent) to Japan. 在我的学生当中, 一些被政府派往美国, 一些被派往日本。

## (三) 宾语从句中的省略

在 that 引导的宾语从句及形容词后的从句中, 可以省掉引导词 that。这些动词有 think, believe, know, wonder, suppose, say, hope, wish, regret 等; 形容词有 glad, happy, pleased, sorry, surprised, certain, sure, satisfied 等。

I believe you can persuade him from committing suicide. 我相信你能够劝他不要自杀。

She doesn't think we know how to get rid of this bad habit.

她认为我们不知道如何摆脱这个坏习惯。

I suppose you want to borrow money from me again. 我想你又想向我借钱吧。

I am sure he will keep his word and help you to apply for it.

我想他会遵守诺言并帮助你申请它。

They were surprised the young couple were both killed in the air crash.

他们很惊讶这对年轻夫妇在飞机坠毁中都丧生了。

She was sorry she didn't go to the station to see us off. 她很遗憾没能去车站给我们送行。

## (四) 定语从句中的省略

1. 限制定语从句中, 关系代词在从句中做动词宾语或介词宾语时, 关系代词可以省掉。

The problem we are thinking over is not practical. 我们正在考虑的问题不现实。

The few points the professor stressed in his lecture were not ignored.

教授在讲座中强调的那几点确实不容忽视。

He is the student they have elected monitor of the class. 他就是当选为班长的学生。

2. 当先行词为 all, everything, nothing 等不定代词及形容词最高级、序数词或 only 作先行词定语时, 关系代词在从句中做宾语也可省略。

The first thing you should do before starting the computer is to insert the plug in a socket.

打开计算机前要做的第一件事就是要先把电源插上。

All you do can't arouse people's interest. 你所做的一切引不起人们的注意。

She is the only girl the director is looking for. 她正是导演在找的那种女孩。



3. 先行词为 the first time, the moment, the way, the distance 等时, 引导词也可省略。

The first time I saw you, I was deeply impressed by you.

我第一次见你时, 你就给我留下了很深的印象。(the first time 后省略 when)

We are going to the direction Tom goes.

我们正向汤姆走的方向走去。(the direction 后省略 in which)

I like the way you have done your hair.

我喜欢你头发的样子。(the way 后省掉 in which 或 that)

### (五) 状语从句中的省略

When in Rome, do as the Romans do. 入乡随俗。(时间状语从句 When 后省略 you are)

While in Beijing, I usually went to the Great Wall.

我在北京期间经常去长城。(While 后省略 I was)

Fill in the brackets with the given words where necessary.

用所给的词在必要处填空。(where 后省掉 they are)

If in Xi'an, he would help me win the lawsuit.

如果他在西安, 就能帮助我打赢这场官司。(If 后省掉 he were)

If fine tomorrow, they will go out for a picnic.

如果明天天气晴朗, 他们将出去野餐。(If 后省略 it is)

Although retired, the old man is in charge of cleaning this street every day. 虽然退休了, 这位老人每天都要负责把这条街打扫干净。(Although 后省略 he is)

He shut the door loudly as if (as though) a bit angry.

他砰地把门关上似乎有点生气。(as if 后省掉 he was)

Light travels more slowly than sound. 光比声音传播得慢。(sound 后省略 travels)

注意: 有时 so 这个词可用来代替一个从句或从句的一部分。

—Is there a meeting this afternoon? —I think (guess) so.

今天下午开会吗? 我认为(想)会开的。

If so, we won't be in such a hurry. 如果那样, 我们也就不用这么着急。

### 例题解析

例 1. —Can you tell me where my father is?

—Yes, of course. \_\_\_\_\_.

A. Here your father comes

B. Comes here your father

C. Your father comes here

D. Here comes your father

解析: 由 here, there 或副词 in, away, down, back in, over, up 等作状语置于句子开头时, 谓语动词是 go, come, follow, rush, run 等不及物动词, 且主语通常是名词时, 采用全部倒装结构。如果此时的主语是人称代词, 则采用自然语序。由于本题合乎上述条件, 又属于主语是名词的情况, 故本题的正确选项是 D。

例 2. Not until all the fish died in the river \_\_\_\_\_ how serious the pollution was.

A. did the villagers realize

B. the villagers realized

C. the villagers did realize

D. didn't the villagers realize

解析: 由 not until 引起的句子属于含有否定意义的关联从属连词引起的部分倒装的情况。这种倒装只发生于主句部分, 从句部分仍用自然语序。基于上述理由, 排除 C 和 D 两项。在 A 和 B 两个选项中, 因为 B 项中并未发生倒装, 所以 B 项错误。只有 A 项合乎倒装的要求, 故本题的正确选项为 A。



例 3. \_\_\_\_\_, he couldn't lift the heavy box.

- A. As try he might                      B. As he might try  
C. Try as he might                      D. Try though he might

解析：当 as 作“虽然”讲时，引导让步状语从句，比 though 的意义要强。在这种从句中，要把表语、状语，或实义动词提到句首，再加上 as，再加其他成分，从而形成倒装结构。基于上述理由，该题的正确选项为 C。

例 4. So fast \_\_\_\_\_ that it is difficult for everyone to imagine its speed.

- A. light travels                      B. travels the light  
C. does light travel                      D. do light travels

解析：在 so...that 中的 so 位于句首时，一般在主句部分发生部分倒装，又因 light 为物质名词，可排除 A 和 B 选项。选项 D 中发生时态错误，排除 D。本题正确选项为 C。

例 5. "I found it difficult to learn Chinese than to learn English."

"\_\_\_\_\_."

- A. I notice so                      B. So notice I  
C. So I notice                      D. Did I notice so

解析：当用 say, believe, notice, tell, hear 等动词时，将 so 置于句首，表示重复意义时，后面的语序用自然语序。其目的在于强调。本句句意为“我也注意到了”。故正确选项为 C。

例 6. Through long waterpipe underground, the waste water can be drained to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. where they were far away from the city  
B. where it is being away from the city  
C. where far away from the city  
D. where being far away from the city

解析：water 为不可数名词，不能用 they 代替；be 系动词不用进行时态，在 where 引导的从句中，为了避免重复可以省略主语、谓语（或谓语的一部分），因此选 C。

例 7. \_\_\_\_\_ I am pleased to go to his birthday party and I will bring him a very beautiful present.

- A. If invited                      B. If he were invited  
C. If he invited                      D. Being invited

解析：这是一个带有 if 引导的真实条件状语从句的主从复合句，B, C, D 都不符合要求，在 if 从句为了避免重复，可以省略 I am，因此选 A。

例 8. Would you please go out for dinner with me? \_\_\_\_\_, but I am afraid not.

- A. I'd love                      B. I'd love to do  
C. I'd love for dinner with you                      D. I'd love to

解析：从句上分析，love 后的宾语应该是“to go out for dinner with me”这个不定式短语，从语法角度看，为了避免重复，可以省略这一部分，但不能全部省略，比如 A；也不能用 to do 代替，比如 B；不定式符号“to”不能省略，因此选 D。

## 自我测试

1. Only when you have acquired a good knowledge of grammar \_\_\_\_\_ write correctly.  
A. you will                      B. you can                      C. can you                      D. can't you



2. On the ground \_\_\_\_ a toy dog.  
A. was                      B. is                      C. were                      D. are
3. \_\_\_\_ that he didn't hear the knock at the door.  
A. So absorbed he was                      B. So he was absorbed  
C. So absorbed was he                      D. So was he absorbed
4. \_\_\_\_ the doctor right away, he might be alive today.  
A. Should he go to                      B. If he went to  
C. Were he to go                      D. Had he gone to
5. Not until the year of 1949 \_\_\_\_ the liberation and independence.  
A. China achieved                      B. did China achieve  
C. when China achieved                      D. did when China achieve
6. Only recently \_\_\_\_ to realize the benefits Internet might bring to our health.  
A. that we began                      B. have we begun  
C. we have begun                      D. that did we begin
7. "Does your mother write to you very often?"  
"Yes, my mother writes about once a week and \_\_\_\_."  
A. so my brother does                      B. my brother does so  
C. so does my brother                      D. does so my brother
8. \_\_\_\_ she realized it was too late to go home.  
A. No sooner it grew dark than                      B. Hardly did it grow dark that  
C. Scarcely had it grown dark than                      D. It was not until dark that
9. The organization had broken no rules, but \_\_\_\_ had it acted responsibly.  
A. neither                      B. so                      C. either                      D. both
10. We have been told that under no circumstances \_\_\_\_ the telephone in the office for personal affairs.  
A. may we use                      B. we may use                      C. we could use                      D. did we use
11. She is not going to Beijing this summer, \_\_\_\_\_. Because it is very hot.  
A. Neither was he                      B. He is not too  
C. Neither is he                      D. So is he
12. I didn't catch as much fish as she \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.  
A. was catching                      B. did                      C. catch                      D. was
13. — "Who's taken my book away?"  
— "I guess \_\_\_\_\_."  
A. Xiao Wang does                      B. Xiao Wang took  
C. Xiao Wang has taken                      D. Xiao Wang has
14. — "Did you work out the word puzzle?"  
— "\_\_\_\_\_."  
A. No, I haven't work it out                      B. No, I didn't work  
C. Yes, just now                      D. Yes, I did it
15. — "Do you think the situation in the Middle East is under control?"  
— "\_\_\_\_\_."  
A. I think so                      B. I think the same  
C. I think yes                      D. So I think



16. She'd like to have a Chinese-English dictionary and I'd like to have \_\_\_\_\_ too.  
A. that                      B. it                      C. the one                      D. one
17. She often loves to count on others to help. But \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. neither do I                      B. I don't  
C. so do I                      D. nor I do
18. \_\_\_\_\_ attack the neighboring country with the nuclear weapons.  
A. Never will China                      B. At no time China will  
C. Will China never                      D. Never China will
19. Under no circumstances \_\_\_\_\_ to lend my car to others.  
A. am I willing                      B. I am willing  
C. I am not willing                      D. am I not willing
20. \_\_\_\_\_, who looked worried.  
A. After Tom stood an old lady  
B. After Tom did an old lady stand  
C. An old lady stand after Tom  
D. After Tom and old lady standing



## 第十四章 主谓一致

### 考试要点

主谓的一致关系。

### 复习内容

#### 一、主谓一致在一致关系中的地位和作用

英语中的一致关系有多种多样，其中包括数的一致 (concord of number)，性的一致 (concord of gender)，时态的一致 (concord of tense)，主谓一致 (subject-verb concord)，意义一致 (notional concord)，就近一致 (又叫就近原则 principle of proximity) 等多种一致关系，但最主要的还是主谓一致，这是全部一致关系中最根本的规则。它在其中处于主导地位并起着决定性的作用。

#### 二、主谓一致的原则 (Subject-verb concord)

主谓一致的原则就是谓语动词和主语在单复数形式上保持一致。一般说来，主语为单数形式，谓语动词也采用单数形式；主语为复数形式，谓语动词亦用复数形式。例如：He likes dancing. We like dancing. 这种一致关系又叫语法一致 (grammatical concord)。

##### (一) 意义一致的原则 (Notional concord)

意义一致的原则从意义的角度着手来处理主语和谓语之间的一致关系。也就是说，谓语动词的单数或复数要取决于主语所表达的意义，而不能简单地从主语的语法形式决定谓语动词的变化形式。常用的词有：family, group, class, team 等，当这些词指的是一个整体时，谓语动词单数，如果是指成员时，则用复数形式。例如：

Twenty kilometres is not a short distance to me.

Sons and Lovers is a name of a famous book.

Mary's family are well.

##### (二) 就近原则 (Principle of proximity)

就近原则要求谓语动词的数与其邻近的主语保持一致。常用结构有：There be..., not only... but also..., either... or..., neither... nor, 例如：

Not only his sons but also he himself likes reading the book written by Jack London.

Either my wife or I am going to Beijing.

There are seven chairs and a table in the back room.



### 三、实际应用中常涉及的一些有关主谓一致的规则

#### (一) 集体名词作主语

1. 有些有生命意义的集体名词作主语时, 谓语动词常只按复数形式处理。这些词如: people (人们, 人民), police (警察), cattle (牛), fashion (名流), folk (人们), chorus (合唱团) 等。例如:

The cattle are gazing over there.

The police are searching for Mary.

Several people were hurt yesterday.

Some folk are never satisfied.

(《现代高级英汉双解辞典》P415)

2. 有些具有生命意义的集体名词作主语时, 如将其看作一个整体, 则谓语动词用单数形式; 如将其看成构成该集体的一个组成成员时, 则谓语动词用复数形式。此类词如: group (组), team (队), public (公众), party (一行), gang (一帮人), class (班级), army (军队), committee (委员会), company (公司), crowd (人群) 等。例如:

The class has been divided into five groups.

{ The class are having a long discussion about the question.

The team are full of enthusiasm.

{ The team is the best in the league. (《现代英语用法词典》P4676)

3. 当主语表示某一国的“人民”或某一个民族、种族的“人”时, 对应的谓语动词常用复数形式。例如:

The Welsh are well known for their singing. (《英语交际语法》P54)

Japanese belong to the Mongolian race (黄种人)。 (《远东英汉大辞典》P1546)

The Chinese are brave and working people.

4. 有些有生命意义的集体名词作主语时, 它后面的谓语动词只能用单数形式。常见的这类词有: school (全校师生), village (全体村民), world (全世界人民), college (全院师生), city (全体市民), country (全国人民), town (全镇人们), factory (全厂工人), mankind (人类), cast (演员角色) 等。例如:

The whole school hopes that its football team will win the match. (《现代高级英汉双解辞典》P965)

The town was talking about the emperor's new clothes.

The play's cast was given a warm welcome by the people in the city.

注意: 这类词作主语时, 词前常带有定冠词 the。

5. 有些非生命意义的集体名词, 常常用来表示某类东西的总称。如果利用它们作主语, 对应的谓语动词多见到用单数形式, 而且它们的前面不能放置不定冠词。常见的一些词有: furniture (家具), clothing (衣服), baggage 或者 luggage (行李), machinery (机器), poetry (诗歌) 等。例如:

Poetry does not translate easily. (《远东英汉大辞典》P2229)

There is some beautiful furniture in the room upstairs.

#### (二) 专有名词作主语

1. 有些表示集体意义的专有名词, 当它们用来指公司、俱乐部、球队、企业等并用它们作主语时, 谓语动词多见用到复数形式。这种现象随着英语的发展, 越来越普遍的使用于英语语言中。例如:

Guoli (国立队) have beaten a lot of famous teams in the country.

Air Canada (加拿大航空公司) are being modernized these days.



2. 有些专有名词作主语时, 谓语动词则对应单数形式。这类名词多表示一个事物。

Beijing is the capital of our country.

The New York Times is printed here every day.

这类作主语的专有名词常常是一些表示书名、报纸名、地名、国名、建筑群名、组织机构名等的名词, 可能以复数形式出现, 但因它们表达单数意义, 按照意义一致的原则, 故对应单数的谓语动词形式。

3. 有些专有名词指群岛、山脉、湖泊群、瀑布群、大型运动会等, 当它们作主语时, 一般对应复数形式的谓语动词。例如:

The Philippines are in the Pacific Ocean.

The Olympic Games are held once in every four years.

(《现代英语习惯用法词典》P319)

### (三) 常以复数形式结尾的名词作主语

1. 以-ics 结尾的表示“学科”的名词作主语时, 谓语动词一般采用单数形式。常用的这类名词有: mathematics (数学), physics (物理), politics (政治学), atomics (原子学), electronics (电子学), linguistics (语言学), phonetics (语音学) 等。例如:

Mathematics is taught in all schools.

Politics is a branch of science.

2. 以-s 结尾表示疾病的名词作主语时, 谓语动词常规上采用单数形式。例如:

Mumps (腮腺炎) is a kind of disease.

3. 以-s 结尾表示游戏的名词作主语时, 对应的谓语动词一般采用单数形式。例如:

Hearts (红心牌) is one of the difficult games.

但极个别名词也可能用复数动词形式。

Cards are played everywhere in China.

(《英语知识》)

4. 由两部组成的物体的名词, 其后的谓语动词常用复数形式的谓语动词。常用的这类名词有: trousers (裤子), shoes (鞋), shorts (短裤), socks (袜子), slippers (拖鞋), boots (靴子), jeans (牛仔裤), glasses (眼镜), gloves (手套), scissors (剪刀) 等。例如:

Where are my glasses? I'm looking for them.

The shoes are over there.

但当这类名词前有 pair of 时, 需要具体问题具体分析, 即单数的 pair 对应单数的谓语动词形式; 复数形式的 pair 对应复数形式的动词。

These two pairs of trousers need cleaning.

5. 当表示时间、距离、长度、价值等的名词作主语时, 表面上它们是复数形式, 可是实际语言运用中常将它们看作一个个整体, 采用意义一致的原则, 谓语动词一般都采用单数形式。例如:

Twenty years in prison is not a short time to him.

Fifty miles is a short way to drive.

Two hundred dollars was too much to the man like me at that time.

偶尔我们也不难发现利用语法一致的原则的情况, 即把以上复数名词看作独立的个体, 与复数形式的谓语动词相结合。例如:

Twelve inches make one foot.

(《远东英汉大辞典》P1249)

Two tons are too heavy for me to carry.

6. 有些以-ings 形式结尾的名词作主语时, 谓语动词一般采用复数形式。常见的名词有: findings (调查结果), earnings (收入), savings (存钱), surroundings (环境), belongings (所有物), bookings (订票) 等。



Bookings are easy to get in these days.

Our findings prove to be correct.

7. 以复数形式结尾的一个人名作主语时, 对应的谓语动词须用单数形式。例如:

Charles Dickens was a great nineteenth century English novelist (小说家).

James is going to Japan this week.

但是当专有名词转化为普通名词指某姓的一家人。夫妻俩或同名或者同姓的若干人时, 谓语动词必须采用复数形式, 这时在主语之前一般都有定冠词 the。

Are the Browns coming here this afternoon?

The two Smiths have already finished their work.

8. 当主语是带引号的词句时, 有可能其在形式和意义上都是复数, 习惯上把带引号的词句作为一个整体看待, 则谓语动词应当用单数形式。例如:

"Children" is the plural form of "child".

"Women and men are equal" was their cry.

9. 单复数同形名词作主语时, 谓语动词应按照意义一致的原则决定单、复数。常见的这类词有: deer (鹿), sheep (羊), means (方法), works (工厂), species (物种), series (系列), 以-ese 或-ss 结尾的语言民族名称, 汉语英译的度量衡单位、币制等名词。例如:

A sheep is running over there.

Some sheep are running over there.

The chemical works was set up in 1999.

These chemical works are near a river.

10. 特殊情况下的主谓一致。

(1) 有些名词常以复数形式出现, 可是谓语动词却用单数形式。例如:

The news spreads from one town to another.

(2) 有些名词既可用单数形式, 也可用复数形式, 有时意义不变, 而有时意义变化。例如:

A lot of duck (复数, 野鸭) were caught by me yesterday.

A duck (单数, 家鸭, 复数形式用 ducks) is raised by my granny.

The wages (代价) of sin (罪恶) is death. (《远东英汉大辞典》P2382)

When wages (工资) are high, prices are high. (同上)

(3) 有些名词作主语时, 谓语动词一般只用复数形式。例如:

The goods have been loaded onto a truck.

Riches have wings. (财富无常) (谚语)

Sports make people healthy.

**(四) 当名词所有格之后的名词被省略, 表示店铺、教堂、学校、公司、工场、住宅等并作主语时, 动词一般用单数**

例如:

St. Paul's is on the other side of the street.

My uncle's deals with beautiful flowers.

**(五) 并列主语用 and 连接时**

一般情况下, 由 and 连接的两个或两个以上单数形式的名词或词组作主语时, 利用语法一致的原则, 谓语动词采用复数形式。例如:

A pen and a book are on the desk.

Meat and eggs have gone up in price.

在实际语言交际活动中, and 连接的并列主语的主谓一致关系相当复杂, 需要具体问题, 具体分析, 以下是其使用过程中的一些特殊情况。现分别叙述如下:



1. and 连接的并列主语指同一人或物(个别为复数), 谓语动词要用单数形式。例如:  
The singer and writer has come to our school.

The young man and winner is going to visit our factory tomorrow morning.

2. 当 and 连接的并列主语表示同一概念时, 谓语动词也用单数形式。例如:

The husband and wife is very warm-hearted.

Bread and butter is a daily food in the west. (《英语语法手册》P361)

Science and technology is developing very fast in our country.

以上三例表达三个不同的概念, 即夫妻、黄油面包、科学技术。

有时, 由 and 连接的表示同一概念的东西可能是成对配套的东西, 如: a cart and horse (一辆马车), the fork and knife (刀叉), a needle and thread (针线), the hammer and sickle (铁锤镰刀), salt and water (盐水) 等。当它们作主语时, 对应的谓语动词同样用单数形式。例如:

The knife and fork has been given to Sue.

A cart and horse is coming towards us.

有时, 表示同一概念的一个不可数名词或可数名词被几个并列的形容词修饰或被几个序数词所限定, 这种名词作句子的主语时, 要根据具体语境, 结合意义一致的原则来决定谓语动词的数的形式。例如:

Simple and plain living satisfies her most.

Chinese and Japanese wine are better than Australian.

A yellow and white dog was caught in the yard yesterday.

Clever and dull students are treated alike in this senior middle school.

The second and last chapter of the book was written by Mr. Smith.

试比较: The second and the last chapter of the book were written by Mr. Smith.

3. and 连接的两个并列单数名词作主语时, 如果两者之中有一个名词前有 not 时, 谓语动词应当用单数形式。例如:

A man of words and not of deeds is like a garden full of weeds.

光说空话啥不搞, 就像花园尽长草。 (《常用英语谚语》P37)

4. 当 and 连接两个或以上的单数名词, 且前有 every, no 或 each 等限定词修饰, 作句子主语时, 谓语动词应当用单数形式。例如:

No student and no teacher is allowed to go into the room.

Each boy and each girl wants to be invited to the party.

Every man and every woman in the room was present for the trial (审讯).

5. 当 and 连接两个或以上的并列的短语或分句充当句子主语时, 谓语动词的单复数形式由表达的意义决定。例如:

Drinking and smoking too much is harmful to your health.

Laughing and joking are immoral (不道德) at a funeral.

What he says and does has nothing to do with me.

6. 由 both... and 并列连词连接的主语, 谓语动词一般都采用复数形式。例如:

Both Wei Fang and Li Bin are needed in the game.

**(六) 有些并列关联连词连接的并列主语的主谓一致通常情况下利用就近原则处理**

这类连词常见的有: or, either... or..., neither... nor..., not only... but also... 等。而并列关联连词 both... and 前已述及采用意义一致的原则。

Either he or I am to attend the meeting.

Neither the pupils nor the teacher knows anything about it.

A leader or some of his comrades are to do the work this afternoon.

Not only Norman but also his daughters are coming tonight.



可是,在非正式语体中,neither...nor...连接的并列主语在意义一致的原则下可采用复数动词形式。例如:

Neither his teacher nor he were there that morning.

Neither you, nor I, nor anyone else were awarded the prize.

### (七) 对于名词+某些介词短语作主语的情况,谓语动词不受介词短语的干扰

如介词短语前的主语是单数,则谓语动词用单数形式;如其前的主语是复数,那么谓语动词就用复数形式。常见的介词或介词短语有:with, along with, together with, in accompany with, except, but, like, as well as, as much as, rather than, more than, no less than, besides, including, in addition to 等。例如:

The mother as well as her daughters has been to Guilin twice.

Nobody but the Turners was there.

The chairman, more than anyone else is responsible for the accident.

The room with its furniture was sold to a man from Zhejiang.

在非正式语体,尤其在口语中,处理上面情况时,也可能用到意义一致的原则或就近原则来决定谓语动词的形式。例如:

The professor together with some college students were asked to do the work.

### (八) 表示数量意义的短语作主语

1. 当主语是 many a+单数名词时,虽然这种形式表示“很多”的意义,但其后面的谓语动词必须用单数形式。因为 many a 之后为单数名词,强调个体,这也符合就近原则。例如:

Many a student has passed the exam.

Many a beautiful flower was seen in the park.

2. 当主语是 a great (good) many+复数名词时,对应的谓语动词应当用复数形式。例如:

A great many animals are warm-blooded animals.

A great many stars are twinkling in the sky.

3. 当主语是 more than one+单数名词时,虽然它表达的是复数意义,但谓语动词一般却用单数形式。例如:

More than one student has made the mistake.

More than one person was hurt in the traffic accident.

4. 当主语是 more+复数名词+than one 时,谓语动词须采用复数形式。例如:

More leaders than one have been sent to work in Tibet.

5. 当主语是 more than+复数名词时,谓语动词一般用复数形式。例如:

More than three thousand students are learning in this junior middle school.

6. 当表示数量的 one (a) +and+a half+复数名词作句子的主语时,谓语动词应当用单数形式。例如:

One and a half year is a long time to us.

(九) 如果两个或两个以上的并列主语中包含有肯定和否定两种形式时,谓语动词在数上必须和肯定形式的主语保持一致

例如:

Not the students but I was wrong at that time.

John, not I is to carry out the work.

### (十) 代词作主语

1. 名词性物主代词作主语,谓语动词的单复数形式取决于它所代替的词的单复数。例如:

Your books are new. Mine are old.



Ours (Our city) is a beautiful city.

2. 疑问代词 who, what, which 作主语时, 需要按照说话人所指对象决定谓语动词的单复数形式。例如:

Who is standing over there? It is Tom.

Which are your bottles?

3. 关系代词 who, which, that 作主语时, 定语从句中谓语动词的数应当和先行词保持一致。例如:

Who is the student that is reading on the playground now?

The workers who work in the factory are on strike.

在 one of + 复数名词 + who/which/that 引导的定语从句的结构中, 先行词是复数名词而非 one, 定语从句中的谓语动词必须是复数形式。例如:

He is one of the famous people who have finished the research work.

但 one 之前有修饰词语 the only 时, 此时的先行词是 one, 而并非是靠近它的复数名词, 故从句做谓语动词应当用单数形式。例如:

He is the only one of the famous people who has finished the research work.

4. 指示代词作主语时, 一般按所指内容决定谓语的单复数形式。例如:

This is a small box. Those are bigger ones.

Such was Albert Einstein. Such are his words.

5. 不定代词作主语, 因词而异, 现分述如下, 以供参考。

(1) all 作主语或定语时, 谓语动词按主语所指对象的单复数发生对应的单复数变化。例如:

All is well that ends well. (谚语)

结果好就一切都好。

(《新英汉词典》P29)

All have become college students.

All other students are from Guangdong.

(2) Some, any 可用来指代可数或不可数名词, 当它们用作主语时, 应按照所指对象的单复数决定谓语动词的单复数形式。

Some of them have given up smoking.

Any is better than none. 有总比无好。

(《远东英汉大辞典》P100)

(3) none 作主语时, 在正式语体中, 对应的谓语动词依据主谓一致的原则一般用单数形式; 在非正式语体中, 有时也采用意义一致的原则或就近原则, 谓语动词也用复数形式。前者较正式, 后者却符合习惯用法。例如:

None of the books is (are) easy to understand.

(4) either, neither 作主语时, 在正式语体中, 其后的谓语动词用单数; 反之, 则用复数。

Either of the answers is right here.

Neither of them cares for new clothes.

(5) each 用作主语时, 谓语动词必须用单数形式。例如:

Each of them has been given a book.

用 each 作定语, 谓语用单数形式; each 作同位语, 谓语动词的数的形式取决于其前面成分的单复数。例如:

Each girl has been given a book.

The girls each have been given a book.

(6) both 用作主语时或定语时, 对应的谓语动词一般按意义一致的原则采用复数形式。例如:

Both answers are right.

(7) 以 -one, -body 构成的复合不定代词指人, 以 -thing 构成的复合不定代词指事物, 当它们作主语时, 对应的谓语动词一般用单数。例如:



Is everybody in?

Something is better than nothing. (谚语)

有总比没有好。

**(十一) 如果是 rest, most, last, more, enough, half 等词作主语时, 主谓一致采用意义一致的原则**

即单数意义主语对应单数形式的谓语动词; 同理可得复数的情况。

Most of them are diligent.

The rest are still working in the field.

Enough has been said about it.

**(十二) 如果主语是 number, variety 等时, 其前是不定冠词时, 形式上是单数, 意义上表示“很多”, 按意义一致的原则, 谓语动词应用复数形式**

如前面是定冠词, 表示数量的总和, 谓语一般用单数形式。例如:

A number of chairs were missing because of their carelessness.

The number of the workers in the factory has reached four thousand.

The variety of flowers on display shows that the gardeners have done their best.

**(十三) 分数、百分数作主语**

分数、百分数在名词词组中和名词一起作主语时, 谓语动词的单复数形式一般以其主语的意义来决定。单数意义的主语对应单数形式的谓语; 同理而得复数的情况。

Fifty percent of the work has been finished.

Three sevenths of them are Party members.

one+in (of, out of 等) + 名词词组这个结构作主语时, 表面上类似于分数词, 可是习惯上一般把谓语动词处理成单数形式, 这是语法一致原则的实际应用。例如:

One out of twenty was badly damaged.

(《新编英语语法》P901)

Only one in ten has given up their hope.

**(十四) 当 the+形容词或过去分词作主语时, 谓语动词数的形式一般取决于主语所表达的意义, 它遵循意义一致的原则**

如果主语指一类人, 动词用复数; 如果指个人或抽象概念, 那么动词用单数。例如:

1. 表示一类人, 常用词有: rich, poor, old, young 等。例如:

In these years, the rich become richer and richer.

The old are taken good care of there.

2. 表示个别人

The accused (被告) was a friend of mine.

The departed was Jim's grandfather.

3. 表示抽象概念, 常用词有: best, beauty 等。例如:

The best is yet to come. 最好的在后头。

The original was difficult to understand.

**(十五) 加、减、乘、除运算中谓语动词的数的变化**

1. 加法

加法运算中, 谓语动词习惯上采用单数形式。例如:

Three plus six is nine.

如果由 and 连接两个数词, 谓语可能用复数形式。例如:

Two and five make seven.

两个以上数目相加时, 常在最后一个数目前加 and, 谓语之前加上 added together, 谓语



动词常用复数。例如:

87 and 121 added together make 208.

## 2. 减法

一般情况下,在减法中,谓语动词用单数形式。例如:

20 minus 7 leaves 13.

## 3. 乘法

对于乘法,谓语动词的单复数都可以,只不过以单数居多。例如:

Five times seven is (are) thirty-five.

Five multiplied by seven equals thirty-five.

## 4. 除法

除法运算中,谓语动词常规定用单数形式。例如:

Forty divided by four is ten.

## (十六) 表示人或事物个体性的名词词组(新语法称之单位词 UNIT NOUN)

十复数名词或代词作句子的主语时,谓语动词应当用单数

但当把它们看作独立的个体时,谓语动词也可以用复数形式。常见的词组有: a (the) team of (一队), a (the) set of (一套), a (the) series of (一系列), a (the) group of (一组), a (the) pile of (一堆), a (the) crowd of (一群), a (the) gang of (一帮), a (the) troop of (一群), a (the) nest of (一窝), a (the) flight of (一群) 等等。例如:

A piece of bread is found on the desk.

The group of students is (are) playing basketball on the playground.

There are scores of trees around the square.

Five pieces of cake are equal.

## (十七) 不定式、动名词在句中作主语

当不定式或动名词作主语时,谓语动词一般用单数形式。例如:

To see once is better than to hear a hundred times. (谚语) 百闻不如一见。

To go there means death.

Getting up early is a good habit.

Talking mends no holes (谚语) 空谈无济于事。

用 and 连接的并列的不定式、动名词作主语时,谓语动词数的形式的选择取决于主语所表达的意义。如果并列的不定式、动名词表示同一类性质的活动,谓语动词采用单数形式;如果表示它们表示不同性质的活动,则谓语用复数形式。例如:

Weeping and sobbing (哭泣) is no use towards solving this problem.

Lying and stealing are bad manners.

To do that once again and to tell him the truth are to say "I'm a fool".

## (十八) 主语从句在句中作主语

当主语从句作主语时,谓语动词应当用单数形式。例如:

What they are after is profit (利润).

(《实用英语语法》P403)

When the leader will come hasn't been decided yet.

以 what 引导的主语从句的谓语动词可能应用复数形式的情况如下:

1. 当 what 引导主语从句时并且表语是复数时,谓语动词常用复数形式。例如:

What we need are facts.

2. 当 what 引导的主语从句的表语和谓语动词都是复数形式时,主句的谓语动词按语法一致的原则应采取复数形式。例如:

What appear to be large windows in the second story are glass heat collectors (玻璃集热器).



(《新编英语语法》P910)

3. 如果 what 引导的主语从句带有并列结构时, 谓语动词的数应遵循意义一致的原则。例如:

What he says and does do not agree.

(《现代英语实用句法》P364)

What she does and thinks are none of your business.

**(十九) 倒装句中, 谓语动词的数的形式一般都和它后面的主语的数保持一致**

这也是语法一致原则的实际应用, 即不论倒装与否, 主谓一致是不容改变的。例如:

Seldom do we go home because we are busy.

So frightened was the girl in the darkness that she did not dare to move an inch.

Between the two windows hangs a slogan.

there be 结构的主谓一致一般取决于动词之后的“真主语”即名词词组, 这在传统语法看来从属于倒装句的范畴。例如:

Is there a taxi here?

There were dozens of eggs in the box.

在上述结构中, 如果处于动词之后的名词词组是并列结构时, 谓语动词数的形式一般按就近原则变化。例如:

There were six people and a car in the garage.

There was a car and six people in the garage.

### 例题解析

例 1. The class \_\_\_\_\_ an English lesson when I came into the classroom.

A. is having      B. was having      C. were having      D. are having

**解析:** 选择答案前应先明确 class 在此是一个集体名词, 这类词作主语时, 谓语动词单复数形式均有可能成立。按全句意义分析, 本句话是说“我进教室时, 学生们正在上英语课”。class 指学生们, 因而谓语动词应用复数形式, 排除 A 和 B 两项。又因上课是过去某一时间的动作, 排除 D 项。故正确答案选 C。

例 2. All but one \_\_\_\_\_ here just now.

A. is      B. was      C. has been      D. were

**解析:** all 作“全部总和”讲时, 谓语动词用单数形式; 作“全体(人)”讲时, 谓语动词应用复数形式。本句中的 all 指“所有人”, 谓语动词应为复数形式, 排除 A、B、C 三项, 故正确的选项为 D。

例 3. The singer and dancer \_\_\_\_\_ our evening.

A. is attended      B. are to attend  
C. is to attend      D. were to attend

**解析:** 该句主语意思为“一位歌唱家和舞蹈家”, 指同一个人, 谓语动词要用单数形式。如句子的主语是 the singer and the dancer, 指两个人, 其后的谓语动词用复数形式。结合 be + 不定式表将来动作, 故正确选项为 C。

例 4. Two fifths of sand \_\_\_\_\_ moved away.

A. are      B. is      C. were      D. has been

**解析:** “百分数或分数 + of + 名词或代词”作主语时, 谓语动词的单复数形式应和名词或代词的单复数保持一致。本句中 sand 为不可数名词, 所以谓语动词应为单数形式, 排除 A 和 C 项。又因本句中的动作发生于过去, 对现在造成影响, 即“沙子已搬走了”, 排除 B, 故本题的正确选项为 D。



**例 5.** Something \_\_\_\_\_ gone wrong with the machine.

A. have                      B. has                      C. is                      D. are

**解析：**当以 -thing, -one, -body 等构成的复合不定代词作主语时，谓语用单数。又因本句所指“机器已经出了问题”，故正确选项为 B。

### 自我测试

- \_\_\_\_\_ of the money \_\_\_\_\_ used by my son.  
A. Second fifths; is                      B. Two five; are  
C. Two fifths; have been                      D. Two fifths; has been
- To play football and to go hunting \_\_\_\_\_ both interesting.  
A. is                      B. are                      C. was                      D. were
- Fifty percent of the students in our school \_\_\_\_\_ from the countryside.  
A. comes                      B. is                      C. are                      D. has come
- Thirty miles \_\_\_\_\_ a long distance to cover.  
A. are                      B. were                      C. is                      D. seem
- He, not you, \_\_\_\_\_ chosen to sing some songs at the party.  
A. am                      B. has                      C. are                      D. is
- A basin of tomatoes \_\_\_\_\_ placed on the floor.  
A. are                      B. has                      C. have                      D. is
- A black and white cat \_\_\_\_\_ found in the street yesterday afternoon.  
A. are                      B. were                      C. was                      D. has
- There \_\_\_\_\_ two dictionaries, a book, a notebook and a pen in her schoolbag.  
A. are                      B. is                      C. seems                      D. has
- In the distance \_\_\_\_\_ a tree and two boys.  
A. were seen                      B. are seen                      C. was seen                      D. saw
- Here \_\_\_\_\_ three workers.  
A. comes                      B. come                      C. goes                      D. is coming
- It is Xiao Zhang who \_\_\_\_\_ going to give us a talk this Friday.  
A. was                      B. were                      C. is                      D. are
- No one but his parents \_\_\_\_\_ about it.  
A. is knowing                      B. knows                      C. know                      D. are knowing
- Tom, together with three boys, \_\_\_\_\_ for having broken the school rule.  
A. punished                      B. were punished                      C. was punished                      D. punishing
- A group of professors \_\_\_\_\_ decided to accuse (控告) the man.  
A. are                      B. have                      C. had                      D. has



## 第十五章 日常交际用语

### 考试要点

1. 交际用语概况。
2. 交际用语考查重点。
3. 交际用语考查对策。
4. 日常交际用语介绍。

### 复习内容

#### 一、交际用语概论

英语交际用语范围广，形式多样，成人英语是以培养学生语言运用能力和交际能力为目的的。学生学习必要的语法知识，其目的是更好地把握英语语言规律，进而获得驾驭这门语言的能力。目前学生所使用的新教材的内容与交际联系密切，每个单元都有交际功能的训练，所以学生对这一部分不会感到太困难。考查学生交际能力的题目范围很广，内容涉及邀请、建议、答谢、约会、道歉、购物、问路、祝贺、就餐、看病、打电话等各个方面。即使是语法选择题，也尽量避免考查学生机械地记忆语法规则，而将语言知识置于一个特定的情景中，增加语境化因素，最大限度地减少机械记忆的成分，突出语言的交际功能。

日常交际用语基本上可分为两大部分：

##### （一）功能意念部分

其中包括：问候，介绍，告别，感谢和应答，祝愿，祝贺和应答，道歉、遗憾和应答，邀请和应答，提供（帮助等）和应答，约会，意愿和希望，请求，允许和应答，同意和不同意，喜好和厌恶，决断和坚持，判断和意见，能力，肯定和不肯定，禁止和警告，可能和不可能，预见、猜测和相信，请求，劝告和建议，许诺表示焦虑，表示惊奇，表示喜悦等三十余项。

##### （二）情景场所部分

其中包括：谈论天气，购物，问路和应答，问时间，日期和应答，就餐，打电话，传递信息，看病，求救，语言困难等十余项。

#### 二、交际用语考查重点

考查交际英语的目的不是通过对话来考查语法规则的运用，而是考查在特定的交际场景下，人们所习惯使用的一些表达方式。常考的有：

（一）介绍 主要是考查别人自我介绍之后会不会用正确的答语。介绍时的几种不同称呼，有时也能成为考查的一个项目。

（二）感谢和应答 表示感谢的方法很多，特别是许多中国人不必感谢的场合，英美人都



要有礼貌的感谢一番。感谢的答语也多种多样, 中国人与英美人表达自己心情和情绪的方式也各不相同, 这些都可能成为考查的热点。

(三) 表示请求的交际用语 对请求的答语要紧扣题干提供的信息, 做到语言地道, 恰到好处, 切忌生硬, 合乎英美人的说话习惯。

(四) 祝愿及节日祝贺, 生日祝贺等都有一些“套话”。这些套话都已约定俗成, 更改一字都会显得别扭。

(五) 打电话 英美人打电话时, 有一些惯常用语, 这些习惯和中国人不同。这也常常是考查的一个重要内容。

(六) 同意和不同意 英美人表示自己同意还是不同意时, 语气很委婉。因此, 会不会用正确而得体的英语来表达自己的意见, 也会成为考查的一个重要方面。

(七) 交际用语的考查也常和省略句的考查联系在一起 句中哪些成分可以省略, 哪些成分不能省略, 哪些成分省略后意思会变, 这些都要予以足够的重视。

### 三、交际用语考查对策

#### (一) 克服惯有的思维定式, 培养灵活运用知识的能力

学习英语固然需要多记单词, 句型, 语法。但任何语法规则, 句型结构都不是绝对的, 切忌用死板的语法教条对待活的题目。解答交际用语方面的测试题, 既不需要什么特别的语法知识, 也不需要深奥的词语知识。由于语境不同, 表达也就多种多样, 千万不要只记其一而忽略其他。首先要弄清题干句子的语境条件, 充分利用语境所给予的信息, 或根据已知条件, 理解备选答案中的词语意思, 从中选出符合题干要求的词句来。

#### (二) 认真审题, 善于捕捉关键信息

交际型题目的特点是让学生将学过的知识运用到活的语言环境中去。命题人在提供有效信息的同时, 也插入一些干扰信息, 目的是为了迷惑考生, 使题目趋于综合化, 复杂化, 这就要求考生将选项逐一代入题干, 从语义, 语法, 语感, 语境, 逻辑诸方面加以考虑, 逐一排除干扰信息, 抓住关键信息点, 巧妙运用关键信息, 找出正确答案。

#### (三) 注意对话场合, 遵循英语的表达方式及习惯用法

交际测试要考查的是学生实际运用英语的能力, 考生必须掌握在不同的场合使用的日常用语。如: 在图书馆, 在商店, 在医院, 在车站和在飞机场等等。尤其注意英语的表达习惯, 必须熟练掌握英语中表示问候, 告别, 感谢, 询问, 邀请, 请求, 允许, 道歉, 征求意见, 打电话, 购物, 问路等口语句型和习惯的表达方法。

#### (四) 勤于积累, 掌握英美人的生活、文化习惯

有些交际用语与英美人的文化背景、风俗习惯有较大的联系。像这类交际性考查题, 从语法角度很难找出所给选项中的毛病, 但实际上主要在考查说英语国家的表达习惯。做这类题必须排除母语表达的影响, 所选答案必须符合英美的文化生活习惯。中国学生由于语言环境的限制, 对西方文化语言背景知之甚少, 做这类题目往往感到困难。如果学生对这些背景知识有所了解, 对掌握某些习惯用语会有好处。有选择地了解一些英美人的风俗, 既有必要, 也可进一步激发起学习的兴趣。

### 四、日常交际用语介绍

#### (一) 问候 Greetings

1. Good morning/afternoon/evening! Hello! /Hi!
2. How are you? Fine, thank you, and you? Very well, thank you.



## (二) 介绍 Introductions

1. This is Mr/Mrs/Miss/Ms/Green.../Comrade Li. Let me introduce you to my parents.  
May/Shall I introduce Wu Dong to you?  
I'd like you to meet Mr Wu.
2. —How do you do?  
—How do you do?  
Nice/Glad/Pleased to see/meet you.  
Nice meeting you, Mr Green. (多用于分手时)
3. My name is Wu Dong.  
I'm a student/teacher/worker/doctor.
4. I am Chinese.

## (三) 告别 Farewells

1. I'm afraid I must be leaving now.  
I think it's time for us to leave now.  
I'd like to say goodbye to you.
2. Good-bye! Bye-bye! Bye!  
See you later/tomorrow/soon.  
See you.  
Good night.

## (四) 感谢和应答 Thanks and Responses

1. Thank you (very much).  
Thanks a lot.  
Many thanks.  
Thanks for listening.
2. It's very kind of you to help me.  
Not at all.  
It's/That's all right/Don't mention it/That's OK.  
You're welcome.  
It's a pleasure.  
No problem at all.
3. It's most thoughtful of you.  
I don't know how I can thank you enough.  
Thank you all the same.

## (五) 祝愿、祝贺和应答 Good wishes, Congratulations and Responses

1. Good luck/wishes/journey/success.  
Congratulations.  
I wish you good luck/success.  
Have a nice/good time/trip.  
Good luck in the exam.  
Congratulations on your success.  
I'd like to congratulate you on your success.
2. Thank you  
The same to you.



## 3. Happy New Year!

Merry Christmas!

Happy birthday to you.

## (六) 道歉、遗憾、同情和应答 Apologies, Regrets, Sympathies and Responses

## 1. Sorry/Pardon.

I'm sorry.

I'm sorry for/about that.

I'm sorry to hear that.

## 2. Excuse me. /Pardon.

Excuse me for having kept you waiting for a long time.

I'm afraid of hurting his feelings.

I'm afraid that I can't help you.

What a pity/shame!

It's a pity that you could not come.

## 3. That's all right.

It doesn't matter.

That's nothing.

Don't let it worry you.

Forget it.

Don't think any more about it.

I didn't really mean that at all.

## (七) 邀请和应答 Invitations and Responses

## 1. Will you come to have dinner with me?

Would you like to come to my birthday party?

I'd like to invite you to our house/attend our meeting.

## 2. Yes, I'd love to.

Yes, I'd like very much. Thank you.

Yes, it's very kind/nice of you.

That would be very nice/fine.

With pleasure.

## 3. I'd love to, but I am too busy to go.

I'm afraid I can't come.

I'm sorry I can't go.

## (八) 提供(帮助等)和应答 Offers and Responses

## 1. Can/Could/Shall I help you?

Is there anything (else) I can do for you?

Do you want me to help you with your English?

What can I do for you?

Let me give you a hand with your lessons.

Why don't you let me help?

Let me carry the heavy box for you.

Would you like some help?

## 2. Thanks. That would be nice/fine.

Thank you for your help.



- That's very kind of you.  
 Yes, please.  
 Here, take this/my seat.  
 That'll be a big help. Thanks a lot.  
 Great! /Lovely!
3. No, thanks/thank you.  
 Thank you all the same.  
 That's very kind of you, but I believe I can manage.  
 It's all right. /I can manage. /No, thanks. I can manage it myself.

#### (九) 约会 Making Appointments

1. Are you/Will you be free this afternoon/tomorrow?  
 Do you happen to be free this evening?  
 How about tomorrow morning/afternoon/evening?  
 Shall we meet at 4 : 30 at the school gate?  
 Do you mind if I call on you this coming Sunday?
2. Yes, that's all right.  
 Yes, I'll be free then.  
 Yes, what's it?  
 Yes, I'll be waiting for you at seven in my house.  
 All right, see you then.
3. No, I won't be free then. But I'll be free the next day.  
 I'm sorry I have no time.  
 I'm sorry I won't be free then.  
 Sorry, I'm afraid I'm busy this evening.
4. Have you got anything to do tonight?  
 What time can I call on you?
5. Let's make it 9 o'clock.  
 That'll be fine, thank you.  
 Do try to come.

#### (十) 意愿和希望 Intentions and Wishes

1. I'm going to visit her tomorrow.  
 I will never do that again.  
 I feel like staying in the hotel. /I feel like a walk.  
 I'd like to take a boat on the River Nile.  
 I would rather not do that.  
 I don't want to go there.
2. I want/hope/wish to travel with you.  
 I wish that I could fly in the sky one day.  
 I hope to see you again.  
 I would do it if I should have the chance.  
 If only I would see him.

#### (十一) 请求、允许和应答 Asking for Permission and Responses

1. May I ask you a question?  
 Can/Could I borrow your knife?



I wonder if I could smoke here.

Would /Do you mind if I open the door?

注意答语：“同意打开”要用“No”、“Not at all”等表示“不介意”；“不同意打开”要用“Yes”表示“介意”。

2. Yes/Sure/Certainly/Ok/of course.

Yes, (do) please.

Go ahead, please.

That's OK/all right.

Just help yourself.

Not at all.

3. I'm sorry you can't.

I'm sorry, but you can use my dictionary tomorrow.

You'd better not.

I'm sorry, that's not allowed.

#### (十二) 同意和不同意 Agreement and Disagreement

1. Certainly/Sure/Of course.

No Problem.

Yes, please.

Yes, I think so.

OK/All right.

That's a good idea.

I agree. /I agree with you. /We agree (with you).

I agree to your plan.

I agree to help you.

2. No, I don't think so.

I'm afraid not.

I'm afraid I (really) can't agree with you.

I wouldn't say that.

There is no doubt about it.

#### (十三) 喜好和厌恶 Likes and Dislikes

1. I like/love the coat (very much).

I like/love to read English in the morning.

I like/love singing.

Dancing is very enjoyable.

Swimming is one of my favorite pastimes.

2. I don't like the food.

I don't like to stay in this hotel.

I hate that person.

I hate to go there with you.

I don't like asking for help.

I can't bear that woman.

He may be all right but I don't like him.

#### (十四) 决断和坚持 Determination, Decision and Insistence

1. I will arrive tomorrow.

I will go to your house this evening.



- I have decided to see my aunt.  
 I have decided that I will go there with you.  
 I am determined to work hard.  
 I've made up my mind to help you with your English.
2. I insist on seeing her off.  
 I insisted that I was correct.

#### (十五) 判断和意见 Judgement and Opinion

1. He may be right.  
 It certainly is.  
 It's correct to do it at once.  
 Well done/Good work!
2. In my opinion, he is right there.  
 So far as I know, twenty students will go there.  
 It seems that nobody knew what had happened.  
 It seems to me that he will not come.

#### (十六) 能力 Ability

1. I can do it.  
 I know how to mend the bike.  
 She is able to go.  
 We will be able to get there on time.
2. Yes, it's very easy.  
 Yes, no problem.

#### (十七) 肯定和不肯定 Certainty and Uncertainty

1. I am sure (of that).  
 I am sure that you locked the door.  
 I am sure smoking hurts you.  
 He must be there.  
 She must have lost the book.
2. I can't be sure.  
 I'm not sure (of that).  
 I'm not sure whether/if he will come.  
 There is no question about it.
3. May be / Perhaps.  
 Perhaps so.  
 It's hard to tell.

#### (十八) 禁止和警告 Prohibition and Warnings

1. You can't / mustn't do that.  
 If you don't hurry up, you'll miss the first bus.
2. You'd better not do it.  
 Don't smoke! / Don't be late!
3. Look out!  
 Take care!  
 Be careful!  
 Let it alone!



Watch your step!

Mind your own business.

(十九) 可能和不可能 Possibility and Impossibility

1. He may be in the classroom.

It is possible that he will attend the meeting on time.

It is likely that our team will win.

2. He can't be at home.

He may not be right.

He is not likely to help me.

(二十) 预见、猜测和相信 Prediction, Conjecture and Belief

1. He will come.

He must be at home.

I guess that he will help you.

She must have done the housework.

2. It seems that you are right.

You seem to be laughing at me.

The book seems to be quite interesting.

3. I believe that he is right.

I believe what he said.

(二十一) 请求 Requests

1. Can / Could you do me a favour?

Will / Would you please close the window?

May I have your attention!

2. Please give / pass me book.

Please wait here a moment.

Please wait for your turn.

Please stand in line / line up.

Please hurry.

Make sure that you will come here in time please.

Make sure of the time and place.

3. Don't rush / hurry / crowd.

No noise, please.

No smoking, please.

(二十二) 劝告和建议 Advice and Suggestions

1. You'd better have a rest.

You'd better not do such a thing.

You should / ought to finish your homework first.

You need some help.

You need (to have) a walk.

I suggest that he (should) study hard.

2. Shall we do it for you?

Let's go home together.

What / How about a cup of tea?

Why not wear a flower instead?



- Why don't you buy a new dress?
3. Would you like to have a try?  
What do you say to have a walk?
- (二十三) 许诺 Promises  
I promise her to buy a dictionary for her.  
I promise you that I'll be there at 9: 30.  
You shall have the bike tomorrow.  
I will give my pen to you.

- (二十四) 表示焦虑 Expressing Anxiety  
What's wrong (with you)?  
What's the matter (with you)?  
Is there anything the matter?  
He's/She's/I'm worried about you.  
We were all anxious about your health.  
Oh, what shall we / I do?

- (二十五) 表示惊奇 Expressing Surprise  
Really?  
Oh dear! I've lost my bag.  
Is that so?  
Good heavens!  
My goodness!  
Dear me!  
What a surprise!

- (二十六) 表示喜悦 Expressing Pleasure  
I'm glad to meet you.  
I'm pleased to know you.  
I'm happy to hear the news.  
That's nice / wonderful / great.  
Pleasure. / Joy.

- (二十七) 谈论天气 Talking about The Weather
- What's the weather like today?  
How's the weather in Xi'an?
  - It's fine / cloudy / windy / rainy / sunny.  
It's getting cold/warm/hot.  
It's rather warm/hot/cold today, isn't it?  
It's a beautiful day today.
  - What a lovely day!  
How do you like the weather?  
I do hope it will keep fine.

- (二十八) 购物 Shopping
- What can I do for you?  
May/Can I help you?  
Is there anything I can do for you?



2. I want/I'd like to buy a pen.  
How much is it?  
That's too expensive, I'm afraid.  
That's fine, I'll take it.  
Let me have this one.
3. How many/much do you want?  
What colour/size/kind do you want?  
Do you have any other colour/size/kind?
4. Will you show me something different?  
That's just what I want.  
I want something like this.  
What's the price of that shirt?  
How much is that altogether, please?  
That's all. Thank you.  
I am afraid I've given you so much trouble.

#### (二十九) 问路和应答 Asking the Way and Responses

1. Excuse me, where's the men's/ladies' room?  
Excuse me, can you tell me the way to the park?  
Excuse me, how can I get to the zoo? I don't know the way.  
Is this the right way to the No. 108 Middle School?  
How long will it take me to walk there?
2. It's over there.  
Go down this street.  
Turn right/left at the first/second crossing.  
It's about one hundred metres from here.  
It's only ten minutes' walk/a long way off.  
Go straight ahead till you see a river.  
It's just across the street.
3. I am sorry I don't know. You'd better ask somebody else.

#### (三十) 问时间、日期和应答 Asking the Time, Date and Responses

1. What day is (it) today?  
What's the date today?  
What month is it now?  
What time is it? = What's the time, please?  
Excuse me, what time is it by your watch?  
Could you tell me the time?
2. It's Monday/Tuesday/Wednesday.  
Today is Friday/Saturday/Sunday.  
It's May 10th/It's the tenth of May.  
It's five o'clock.  
It's five thirty/half past five.  
It's a quarter past six.  
It's a quarter to seven.  
It's time for supper.



It's time for us to have supper.

(三十一) 就餐 Taking Meals

1. What would you like to have?

Would you like something to eat/drink?

Are you hungry?

What about some beef?

2. I'd like a glass of milk.

May I have some chicken?

Bring me two beers, please.

Two eggs, please.

3. Would you like some more coffee?

Help yourself to some fish.

Help yourself to anything you like.

4. Thank you, I've had enough.

I'm full, thank you.

Just a little, please.

No more, thank you.

With pleasure!

(三十二) 打电话 Making Phone Calls

1. Hello! Is Tom in?

May/could I speak to Jane?

Hello! I'd like to speak to Mr Green.

Is that Lucy speaking?

2. Hold on/A moment please.

Hello, who is it?

He/she isn't here right now.

I'll just see if she's in.

Can I take a message for you?

Any message for him?

3. Hello, this is Mary speaking.

May I know/ask who's calling?

Who is that speaking?

Is that Mr Green?

I called to tell/ask you to come to my house this evening.

Hello, 8828726.

Good bye.

(三十三) 传递信息 Passing on a Message

1. Will you please give this note/message to Mr. Wu?

Can I take a message for him?

Will you please give the message to my brother?

2. Mary asked me to give you this note.

I can take a message for you from your mother.

3. It's very kind of you.

Thanks for the message.



## (三十四) 看病 Seeing the Doctor

1. What's the matter/wrong/the trouble?  
Is there anything wrong with your arm?  
How long have been like this?  
There is nothing serious with you.  
There is something wrong with me.  
Something is wrong with my head.  
I've got a headache/a fever/and a cough.  
I feel terrible/bad.  
I've got a bad cold.  
This place hurts.  
I've got a pain here.  
I don't feel well.  
I hurt my leg.
2. Take this medicine three times a day.  
Drink plenty of water and have a good rest.  
You'll be all right/well soon.

## (三十五) 求救 Calling for Help.

1. Help!  
Thief!
2. What's the matter?

## (三十六) 语言困难 Language Difficulties

1. Pardon? /I beg your pardon. /Beg your pardon.  
Would you please say that again/more slowly?  
Please say it again/more loudly/more clearly.  
I am sorry I can't follow/catch you.  
I am sorry I knew a little English.
2. What do you mean by this word "ticket"?  
What does that word mean?  
What's the meaning of that word?  
What's the English for "黑板"?

### 例题 析

例 1. —I'd like to invite you to dinner this saturday, Mr Smith.

- \_\_\_\_\_ .
- A. Oh, no. Let's not
  - B. I'd rather stay at home
  - C. I'm very sorry, but I have other plans
  - D. Oh, no. That'll be too much trouble

**解析:** 此题考查被邀请时应答的用语。婉言拒绝可用 "I'm sorry"。注意: I'm sorry 可以接 but 引导的句子, but 之前要有逗号, but 后面是句子, 要有完整的主谓结构, but 可以不译出, 但不能换成其他连词, 答案为 C。



—

- Yes, .

- 

- 

- 

- 解析：**本题考查别人提供帮助时的应答语。英美人在别人提出帮助时，无论自己接受与否都要表示感谢。题中一方愿意提供茶水与咖啡，另一方虽然不想喝茶也不想喝咖啡，但也要对这种盛情表示感谢。A、B、C 三项都不含谢意，答案为 D。



例 8. ——You seem to get lost, need help?

—— .

- A. Yes, would you please help me with the bag
- B. Help me find my key, please
- C. Yes, give me a hand, please
- D. I'm looking for Zhong Shan road

解析: A、B、C 三项都出现了“帮助”的有关词语,看起来与题干“need help?”相呼应,而且这些答语都正确。其实这些都是干扰信息。题目中的“get lost”意思是“迷路”,这是该题所提供的有效信息,选项 D 就是问路,和 get lost 相呼应,答案为 D。

例 9. ——Can I get you a cup of tea?

—— .

- A. That's very nice of you
- B. With pleasure
- C. You can, please
- D. Thank you for the tea

解析: With pleasure 是别人请你办事时你应允的答语; C 项语气生硬; D 项是饮完茶后道谢的用语。A 项是主人主动提供服务或招待时,客人表示感谢的用语,答案为 A。

例 10. ——Thank you ever so much for the book you sent me.

—— .

- A. No thanks
- B. I'm glad you like it
- C. Please don't say so
- D. No, it's not so good

解析: 对别人赠送的礼物,无论轻重,都要表示感谢。对这种感谢的回答,中国学生一般采取一种谦逊的态度,表示不值一提。而英美人常常以迎合对方的方式,来表达自己的高兴情绪。A、C、D 三项含有浓厚的中国色彩,只有 B 项能反映出英语国家人的习惯心情,答案为 B。

例 11. ——Hi, haven't seen you for ages. You look fine!

—— . You look well too.

- A. Great
- B. Thanks
- C. Not at all
- D. Oh, no, just so so

解析: 当对方说你身体好时,英美人会很高兴,说声:“Thanks 或 Thank you”表示感谢。不像中国人往往以“自谦”的方式来否认。如果选 D 项英美人听了反而不快。C 项是对 Thank you 的回答。A 项与答语中的 You look well too 相矛盾,答案为 B。

例 12. ——Would you do me a little favour?

—— .

- A. Glad to meet you
- B. It's pleased
- C. With pleasure
- D. I'll be pleased

解析: 此题考查表示请求的交际用语。题干中的关键信息词是 do a favour, C 项 with pleasure 正是答应为人帮忙的用语。答案为 C。







5. —Do you think I could borrow your dictionary?  
— \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. Yes, you may borrow                      B. Yes, you could  
C. Yes, go on                                  D. Yes, help yourself
6. —Thank you for your wonderful meal.  
— \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. I'm glad you enjoyed it                      B. The same to you  
C. Not really. It's all right                      D. Thank you all the same
7. —How could you say that?  
— \_\_\_\_\_ . I didn't mean to hurt you.  
A. Excuse me                                  B. I won't regret  
C. I'm really sorry                                  D. That's all right
8. —If you need me, just let me know.  
—I will. \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. That's all right                                  B. Thank you  
C. All right                                      D. Not at all
9. — \_\_\_\_\_ , Tom?  
—I fell off my bike and hurt my legs.  
A. What's the matter                                  B. What's going on  
C. What did you do                                  D. What have you done
10. — \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
—A little.  
A. Shall we speak German                                  B. What language do you speak  
C. Do you speak German                                  D. Would you mind speaking German
11. —May I use your dictionary?  
— \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. Yes, here you are                                  B. No, you won't  
C. Never mind                                      D. Sorry, here it is
12. —May I move your bag a little and take this seat?  
— \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. I don't mind                                      B. It doesn't matter  
C. You do it, please                                      D. Go ahead
13. —We're sure of winning the match.  
— \_\_\_\_\_ . We'll meet at the match.  
A. So are we                                      B. I think so  
C. Don't be so sure                                      D. It's out of question
14. —Would you mind if I use your car?  
—Of course not. \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. I'm sorry I can't                                      B. I'm afraid not  
C. It's over there                                      D. I have no car

15. — This is Mr Green and this is Mr Brown.  
— \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. How do you do  
B. How are you  
C. Fine, thank you  
D. Hi, how are you getting on
16. — You speak very good English.  
— \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. No, not at all  
B. My English is not good  
C. Thank you  
D. No, you speak better than I
17. — Hi, I'm glad to see you.  
— \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. Thank you  
B. Me, too  
C. My name is Mary  
D. I'm glad to hear that
18. — Hello! May I speak to Jane, please?  
— \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. Speaking  
B. I'm Jane speaking  
C. This is Jane speaking to you  
D. I'm Jane
19. — Why not go and have dinner in a restaurant?  
— \_\_\_\_\_ . It's too expensive  
A. Why not  
B. I agree  
C. I'm afraid not  
D. I'm sure
20. — "Hello, may I speak to Zhao Hua?"  
— \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. My name is Zhao Hua  
B. I'm Zhao Hua  
C. This is Zhao Hua speaking  
D. Zhao Hua is me
21. — You have a good voice.  
— \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. Thank you  
B. Not at all  
C. Just so so  
D. My voice isn't good
22. — \_\_\_\_\_ .  
— Very well, thank you, And you?  
A. Good night  
B. How do you do  
C. How do you like Chinese  
D. How are you
23. — Would you go to the concert with me?  
— \_\_\_\_\_ , but I'm very busy now.  
A. I'd like to  
B. Sure  
C. No problem  
D. Certainly
24. — I'll be away on a business trip. Would you mind looking at my cat?  
— Not at all. \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. I've no time  
B. I'd rather not  
C. You can leave  
D. I'd be happy to
25. — You haven't been to Beijing, have you?  
— \_\_\_\_\_ . How I wish to go there!  
A. No, I haven't  
B. Yes, I have  
C. No, I have  
D. Yes, I haven't



26. —I can't work the maths problem out, what shall we do?  
— \_\_\_\_\_ Peter, I'll help you out.  
A. Take it away                      B. Don't lose your heart  
C. Don't be afraid                      D. Take it easy
27. —How about going fishing?  
— \_\_\_\_\_, I have no patience for that.  
A. Excuse me              B. Sorry              C. Pardon              D. Apologize
28. —Congratulations!  
— \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. Glad to hear that                      B. Don't mention it  
C. The same to you                      D. Thank you
29. —How are you? You look nice!  
— \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. Thanks, so are you                      B. Thanks, so do you  
C. Yes, I do                      D. Yes, you are too
30. —Would you like some more rice?  
— \_\_\_\_\_, but I'm quite full.  
A. That's very kind of you                      B. Certainly not  
C. I need no more                      D. I like some
31. —Has Alice had an accident?  
— \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. I don't hope so                      B. I hope no  
C. I hope not                      D. She didn't say to
32. —Do you happen to have twenty dollars with you?  
— \_\_\_\_\_.  
—I want to buy a notebook.  
A. How much                      B. What for  
C. Why do you want it                      D. When will you pay me back
33. —May I take the afternoon off?  
— \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. Yes, it's very nice                      B. No, it's raining  
C. Yes, please                      D. Yes, of course
34. —What do you think of my new dress?  
— \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. It's on sale                      B. It's a birthday present for you  
C. You really need one                      D. It looks very good on you



(参见视频 3-1)

## 第三部分 完形填空

### 考试要点

1. 题型特点。
2. 解题方法与技巧。

### 复习内容

#### 一、题型特点

完形填空通常是在一段难度适中的短文中，多数情况下，留出 20 个空白。它是目前成人考试中很重要的题型，也是对英语知识综合能力的一个测试。

#### 二、解题方法与技巧

##### (一) 通读全文

考生在做完形填空时，切忌在没有看完全文的情况下，看一题就做一题。首先要快速、认真地浏览短文一至两遍，看懂大意，注意文章所提供的情景和主旨及某些带启示性的词、句。

##### (二) 运用各种判断方式填空

###### 1. 常识判断

常识判断就是根据文章大意，运用已有的常识性概念进行选择 and 判断的一种方法。例如一篇谈沙粒的文章，文中有一句 “It is known that a sand is \_\_\_\_\_. A. tiny, B. big, C. large, D. fat.” 这属于常识性判断题，明白题意后，很容易就选出了正确答案 A。

###### 2. 语法判断

语法的考查历来是英语考试的一个重点，在各项考题中都渗透着对它的测试。例如前文讲到一个男孩，后文再提到时就要用 he，而不能用 she。相应的谓语就有对应的表达。因此，语法学习时必须对它的各个方面要清楚明白，这样做起来才能得心应手。

###### 3. 搭配判断

在应试完形填空时，考生要从语篇的上下文中注意词语的四个搭配关系：逻辑搭配、结构搭配、惯用搭配和语义搭配，例如单词 persist in 是一种固定搭配，亦称结构搭配，不能用其他的介词。再如 meet the need, meet 就不能换成 finish 等等。

###### 4. 逆转判断

完形填空里有些空白处的答案就是后文或者前文出现的同一词语，常常是那些不能一下子选择出的答案就隐藏在文中的某个角落，等到你读完全文，自然而然地就明白该选哪一个了。例如文章开始有一句 One day I went to the theatre with \_\_\_\_\_. A. my brother, B. my sister, C. my mother, D. my father. 这样突兀的句子你自然不好自行抉择，但其答案必定在后文中能找到。

##### (三) 检查

做完以后，最后一道工序就是检查全文。仔细再阅读一遍，很有把握的答案可以少花些时



间，个别需要推敲的搭配再进行仔细考虑，认真回想，力求做到完全正确。

### 例题 析

#### 例 (一)

Here is a story which I heard from my father yesterday evening over tea. One of his friends had 21 been to the Himalayas, the famous mountain range in the world. While he was 22 along the mountain paths, he came 23 a few other visitors. 24 the visitors were an old lady and her grandson. The small child 25 the beautiful mountains and snow-covered peaks (山峰). He said to his grandmother: "How 26 these mountains are! Can we take them 27, grand ma?" The old woman 28 and said. "Dear, if some child like you had taken them away 29, would you have had a 30 to see them? Now if we take these mountains away today, then tomorrow, 31 child will not have the chance to 32 these beautiful things. Don't you 33 they are so nice that everyone should see and 34 them?"

What a noble 35! Our lives become 36 only when we learn the 37 of everything and give up our 38 to have everything for ourselves. Just as the saying goes, "The rich man is not the one who has the 39, but one who 40 the least."

- |                   |               |               |              |
|-------------------|---------------|---------------|--------------|
| 21. A. nearly     | B. already    | C. almost     | D. recently  |
| 22. A. marching   | B. walking    | C. following  | D. running   |
| 23. A. across     | B. to         | C. for        | D. around    |
| 24. A. Besides    | B. About      | C. Between    | D. Among     |
| 25. A. discovered | B. recognized | C. admired    | D. attracted |
| 26. A. cold       | B. nice       | C. wide       | D. far       |
| 27. A. home       | B. together   | C. down       | D. off       |
| 28. A. worried    | B. agreed     | C. smiled     | D. cheered   |
| 29. A. once       | B. tomorrow   | C. sometimes  | D. yesterday |
| 30. A. day        | B. chance     | C. time       | D. moment    |
| 31. A. each       | B. other      | C. another    | D. that      |
| 32. A. show       | B. take       | C. own        | D. see       |
| 33. A. think      | B. guess      | C. mean       | D. say       |
| 34. A. take       | B. have       | C. welcome    | D. enjoy     |
| 35. A. thought    | B. language   | C. lesson     | D. feeling   |
| 36. A. useful     | B. successful | C. meaningful | D. helpful   |
| 37. A. price      | B. value      | C. nature     | D. result    |
| 38. A. reasons    | B. desires    | C. struggle   | D. purpose   |
| 39. A. time       | B. position   | C. most       | D. best      |
| 40. A. needs      | B. has        | C. collects   | D. helps     |

#### 参考答案:

21. D 22. B 23. A 24. D 25. C 26. B 27. A 28. C 29. D 30. B  
31. C 32. D 33. A 34. D 35. A 36. C 37. B 38. B 39. C 40. A

#### 解析:

21. 此题考查考生对词汇意义的使用。这四个词均为副词，recently “最近”，根据上下文的意思，选项 D 为正确选项。

22. was walking along the mountain paths, 正沿着山路走。其他选项均不符合题意。

23. come across 表示“遇见”，指正沿着山路走时，他偶然遇见了其他的几个游客。



24. among, between 都含有“在……中间”的意思。较正式、标准的用法是：among 用于“三者或二者以上之间”，如：

He is sitting among the students.

他坐在学生中间。

而 between 则用于“两者之间”，如：

I sat between them.

我坐在他们两人之间。

between 有时也可用于“三者或二者以上之间”，指每个人/物与别的每个人/物分别发生联系，如：

trade agreement between Great Britain, France and the United States

英国同法国、美国分别有贸易协定。

25. admire 为“赞美，钦佩，羡慕”，这里指赞美山的美景。而 attracted 为“吸引”，但应该用被动语态。其他选项不合文意，故 C 为正确选项。

26. How nice these mountains are! 这些山多美！

27. take them home 指把山带回家。

28. 根据孩子所提的问题，老人认为天真好笑，所以正确选项为 C。

29. 这是一个虚拟句，表示“如果昨天有些孩子把山带回了家，你明天还能有机会看见山吗？”

30. chance 为“机会”，其他选项均不符合文义。

31. 此题考查考生对代词的使用。another 指“又一个，另一个”，而 other 表示“其他的，别的”。这里指另一个孩子。

32. 根据上下文的意思故选项 D 为正确选项。

33. Don't you think they are so nice that everyone should see and enjoy them?" 难道你不认为它们是那么的美以至于每个人都应该来看和欣赏吗？

34. enjoy 表示“享受……的乐趣，欣赏”。根据上下文的意思，选项 D 为正确选项。

35. What a noble thought! 多么好的想法！根据上下文的意思其他选项均不符合文意。

36. meaningful 表示“意味深长的”。

37. value 表示“价值”，price “价格”；nature “自然界”，result “结果”。根据上下文的意思，选项 B 是正确选项。

38. desires 表示“欲望”，struggle “斗争”，reasons “原因”，purpose “目的”。这里 give up our desires 指放弃我们的欲望。

39. 根据上下文的意思选项 C 为正确选项。

40. “The rich man is not the one who has the most, but one who needs the least.”

富人不是拥有最多的人，而是需要最少的人。

### 例 (二)

We do not know how the first fire was 1. Early fires on the earth were certainly caused by 2, not by Man. Some were caused by lightning in a storm; 3, perhaps, by the hot material which came out of a volcano. Quite possibly, at times, the heat of the sun set light 4 some dry grass or leaves. At first Man, like other animals, 5 probably afraid of fire. 6 great was the power of fire that he feared it and worshipped it. Gradually, however, with his better power of thinking, he overcame his fear. Probably he overcame most of his fear when he 7 how to make fire for himself. Throughout the ages he has learned more about fire, how to control it, and how to use it 8 many ways. Now fire is no longer a master of a god; it is a 9.

We can only guess how 10 first learned that a fire was useful and what uses he made



11 it. By 12 a burning stick from fire which had been started naturally, he could make a fire at his own "home". He could 13 the fire burning by adding more dry grass, leaves and wood. The fire 14 the chief purpose of frightening animals away. He discovered, by some accident, that flesh roasted in front of a fire 15 better. Then he found that roasted flesh would keep longer, without 16 bad, 17 uncooked flesh. It must have been much later that Man learned to cook food by heating it with 18 water or with steam. He could not use such methods 19 he had learned how to make pots 20 holding water.

- |                 |               |             |            |
|-----------------|---------------|-------------|------------|
| 1. A. made      | B. produced   | C. given    | D. opened  |
| 2. A. god       | B. nature     | C. sun      | D. animals |
| 3. A. some      | B. other      | C. others   | D. another |
| 4. A. at        | B. to         | C. towards  | D. on      |
| 5. A. were      | B. was        | C. are      | D. is      |
| 6. A. Such      | B. So         | C. That     | D. And     |
| 7. A. invented  | B. discovered | C. saw      | D. known   |
| 8. A. by        | B. in         | C. with     | D. on      |
| 9. A. servant   | B. employee   | C. workmate | D. kid     |
| 10. A. Man      | B. the man    | C. he       | D. men     |
| 11. A. in       | B. of         | C. by       | D. on      |
| 12. A. bringing | B. taking     | C. carrying | D. holding |
| 13. A. make     | B. keep       | C. let      | D. get     |
| 14. A. meet     | B. served     | C. did      | D. took    |
| 15. A. tasted   | B. ate        | C. much     | D. is      |
| 16. A. going    | B. getting    | C. becoming | D. being   |
| 17. A. than     | B. when       | C. after    | D. before  |
| 18. A. boiled   | B. unboiled   | C. boiling  | D. cold    |
| 19. A. before   | B. until      | C. when     | D. after   |
| 20. A. to       | B. for        | C. in       | D. with    |

#### 解析:

1. make (a) fire “生(一堆)火”为语言的习惯搭配。open fire “开火”，其余的搭配不对，故选 A。

2. 此句意思是说，“地球上早期的火是自然引发的，而不是人类。”人与自然总是相对而言，故选 B。

3. others “其余的，其余所有的”。another “另一个”，some “一些”。仅表部分情况，没有比较而言之意。other 仅表“别的”单纯的形容词，不能作主语，故选 C。

4. set light (fire) to “纵火”，set something on light (fire) “使……着火”为习惯搭配用法，故选 B。

5. 此句的主语“Man (人类)”决定句子的谓语。“like many animals”是插入语，插入语不决定句子的主语，故选 B。

6. 此句为 so... that... 句型。so 提前，句子倒装。其余三项在语法及意义上都不合适，故选 B。

7. invent “创造”，discover “发现”(以前存在但没有被人们所了解的东西，有形或无形的东西) known “知道的”，see “看到”，选 B。

8. in many ways “通过许多方式”。in 和单词 way 搭配，例如 in this way “用这种方式”，in no way “决不”，故选 B。

9. 此句意是“火不再是统治人类的神，而是为人类服务的一仆人”，master “主人”其对



应的应是“servant”, employee 雇工, kid 小子, workmate 工友。故选 A。

10. Man “人类”不带冠词。故选 A。

11. 此句考查短语 make use of “利用”、“使用”, use 承前省略。故选 B。

12. take “拿走”, bring “带来”, carry “携带”, hold “持着”。故选 B。

13. keep sb/sth. doing. “使某人(某物)一直干某事”。

get sb to do sth. “说服某人干某事”。

make/let sb do sth. “让某人干某事”, 有时 let sb doing 也可, 但 letted 错。故选 B。

14. 本题考查习惯搭配问题。answer/serve one's purpose “令人满意的, 适合目的” meet one's need “满足某人的需要”。故选 B。

15. 感官动词后用形容词作表语。系动词 be 用在这里, 虽然语法上没有错误, 但语义上不妥, 故选 A。

16. 习惯搭配。go bad “变坏”, go hungry “挨饿”, go shopping “买东西”, 故选 A。

17. 此句是比较句。longer... than... 结构。大意是说: “人类发现烤过的肉比未烤过的肉保存的时间长, 且在这期间不会变坏”。故选 A。

18. boiling water “沸水”, boiled water “开水”, unboiled water “生水”, 故选 C。

19. 此句大意是说“直到他学会怎样制作盛水用的水容器的时候, 他才能够使用这些方法”。为 not... until... 句型。余者都不妥, 应选 B。

20. for holding water 用作定语。全句展开时可以是 which was used for holding water, 选 B。

### 例(三)

Mary 1 her brother cutting 2 a coconut 3 his knife. She hoped that he would give her some. So she walked 4 to him. She came up behind her brother 5, her bare (光的) feet 6 no noise on the sandy ground. As she did so, John swung (向后摆) his knife 7, ready to strike a hard blow 8 the tough (粗糙的) husk (果皮) of the nut. Instantly there was a 9, and John felt his knife hit something behind him. He turned round to see his sister 10 to the ground, clutching (抓) her face with her hands. The knife slipped from his hands as he looked at his sister 11 horror.

As 12 as possible, John carried his sister into their house. His father was at work, but an elder brother 13 a neighbour's car and rushed Mary to hospital. She stayed there 14 several weeks, lucky to be alive. When she left, she was blind in her right eye.

This story is a true one, and there are many more like it. Perhaps you know of some yourself. In a 15 case, a small boy had part of his hand 16 off by his elder sister. He tried to snatch (取、拿) a piece of coconut just as his sister was going to cut with a chopper. It was an 17, but one which the boy can never forget.

These 18 stories are not very nice to read about, but if we think and talk about 19, we may be able to 20 more accidents.

1. A. watched

B. looked at

C. looked for

D. heard

2. A. openly

B. open

C. opened

D. opening

3. A in

B. at

C. with

D. on

4. A. near

B. nearer

C. nearly

D. close

5. A. quiet

B. quietly

C. silent

D. silence

6. A. making

B. doing

C. to make

D. make

7. A. backwards

B. forewards

C. eastwards

D. towards

8. A. at

B. to

C. against

D. into

9. A. shout

B. cry

C. scream

D. hum



- |                 |             |             |               |
|-----------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|
| 10. A. fall     | B. to fall  | C. rise     | D. to rise    |
| 11. A. in       | B. as       | C. during   | D. for        |
| 12. A. quick    | B. quickly  | C. slowly   | D. hurried    |
| 13. A. lent     | B. borrowed | C. offered  | D. bought     |
| 14. A. for      | B. in       | C. during   | D. at         |
| 15. A. same     | B. similar  | C. better   | D. good       |
| 16. A. to cut   | B. cut      | C. cutted   | D. cutting    |
| 17. A. incident | B. event    | C. accident | D. something  |
| 18. A. happy    | B. pleasing | C. sad      | D. dark       |
| 19. A. it       | B. them     | C. itself   | D. themselves |
| 20. A. prevent  | B. keep     | C. hold     | D. protect    |

### 解析:

1. watch “观看 (某个正在动的东西)” 例如 watch TV, watch the moving train, look at 表动作 “看”, look for 寻找, hear “听到”, 都不妥。故选 A。

2. open “开的”。在句中作宾语补足语, 只是位置提到宾语 a coconut 之前。cut a coconut open = cut open a coconut。openly, “公然地、公开地”, 故选 B。

3. 表工具时介词用 “with”, 故选 C。

4. near 在此用其副词词义, 而用其比较级更适合原文的意思。nearly “几乎”。应选 B。

5. 副词修饰谓语。故选 B。

6. make noise 是习惯搭配, C、D 语法均是错误的。故选 A。

7. 文中的意思是说约翰向后挥起刀欲砍坚果的外壳。故选 A。

8. strike a hard blow at, 意思是 “朝……猛击下去”。故选 A。

9. shout “大喊”, cry “哭喊”, scream “尖叫”, hum “轻声哼唱”, 故选 C。

10. see sb doing “看见某人正在干……”

see sb do “看见某人干了……”

文中的意思是约翰转过身, 看见妹妹倒在了地上, 正用双手抓她的眼睛, 故选 A。

11. in horror = horribly, 故选 A。

12. 在此应用一个副词。因为 as 后的这个词所修饰的对象应该是谓语, 而 slowly 又与原文意义不通。故选 B。

13. borrow “借来”, lend “借出”, offer “主动提供” 与句义相符合的, 故选 B。

14. 表某动作持续的时间段用 “for”。故选 A。

15. same 用作形容词时, 必须与 the 连用。similar 相似的, 从上下文意义看, 只有 B 最恰当。故选 B。

16. 此用作 have sth. done 句型。have 作 “遭遇、遇到” 讲, 此句意思是说, 在相似的情形下, 一个小男孩的手指被他的姐姐削掉了。故选 B。

17. incident “小事件”, event “重大事件”, something “某事”, accident “意外事故”。故选 C。

18. 其余三项与语义不符, 只有 C 符合语义, 故选 C。

19. 指代前文的 stories, 故选 B。

20. prevent “防止”, keep “保持”, protect “保护”, hold back “阻止”, 而 hold “握有”。故选 A。



## 自我测试

## (一)

Jack was born in a very poor family. At seven, he had to pick coal in a deserted (荒弃的) mine near his home, then he 1 what he had picked and earned a few coins to help his parents. He had 2 schooling, for being so 3, how could they afford school fees.

When he was fifteen, he worked 4 a servant in a school. Looking at other 5 studying in the classroom, he felt 6 for himself. How he wished to have the same 7! He decided to study by himself. From then on, in the day time, he would stand by the window 8 trying to catch what the teacher said. 9, he tried his best to remember what he had learned during the day. He worked so hard at the 10 that he sometimes had just three or four hours' sleep. The more he learned, the greater 11 he felt. A maths teacher discovered him and came to like this diligent (勤奋的) boy and 12 him to sit at the back of the class. In one exam, he was the 13 one in the whole school who reached the highest grade. He would have been given the scholarship if he had been a regular 14 of the school.

Jack 15 through six long years with his study of maths and wrote several articles which captured (引起) the attention of some university 16. They appreciated (欣赏) his talent (才能) 17 his diligence. To give him a better chance they hired him 18 a librarian and 19 him guidance (指导). Jack was very happy. For he felt that there was a bright future 20 him.

- |                      |                |                     |               |
|----------------------|----------------|---------------------|---------------|
| 1. A. sold           | B. burned      | C. carried          | D. bought     |
| 2. A. some           | B. much        | C. more             | D. no         |
| 3. A. rich           | B. poor        | C. pleasant         | D. young      |
| 4. A. as             | B. at          | C. for              | D. to         |
| 5. A. sons           | B. children    | C. girls            | D. boys       |
| 6. A. angry          | B. ashamed     | C. sorry            | D. interested |
| 7. A. family         | B. chance      | C. parents          | D. classroom  |
| 8. A. side           | B. outside     | C. inside           | D. in         |
| 9. A. In the morning | B. At night    | C. In the afternoon | D. At noon    |
| 10. A. job           | B. lesson      | C. task             | D. work       |
| 11. A. difficulty    | B. power       | C. interest         | D. taste      |
| 12. A. persuaded     | B. allowed     | C. pushed           | D. refused    |
| 13. A. only          | B. better      | C. student          | D. worst      |
| 14. A. girl          | B. servant     | C. boy              | D. teacher    |
| 15. A. learned       | B. struggled   | C. listened         | D. mastered   |
| 16. A. students      | B. booksellers | C. librarians       | D. professors |
| 17. A. about         | B. as good     | C. as well as       | D. except     |
| 18. A. as            | B. like        | C. to               | D. for        |
| 19. A. taught        | B. offered     | C. sent             | D. made       |
| 20. A. after         | B. until       | C. before           | D. inside     |



## (二)

The elephant is the only animal in 1 with a trunk. It uses its trunk in many 2. It pulls leaves off 3 with its trunk and then puts them into its 4. It can even use its trunk when it wants to make 5 through the forest. It also uses its trunk to get 6. The trunk can hold a lot of water, as an elephant needs to 7 more than three hundred pints of water every day. When the elephant is 8, its tusks can be very dangerous. The tusks of an elephant are really its front 9. People pay a lot of 10 for the ivory (牙质) of an elephant's tusk. In America men have hunted elephants 11 their tusks. The ivory from the tusks is made 12 many beautiful things.

It has been easy for men to 13 elephants in Asia. They use elephants to carry heavy things for long 14.

Many people say that the kings of Asia 15 to give white elephants to people whom they did not like. These white elephants were sacred (神圣的) and they could not be made to 16. They could not be killed or given 17. A person who owned 18 had to pay a lot of money to keep it properly. After a certain time, he usually became very 19. Now people in England call 20 thing "a white elephant."

- |                         |                     |
|-------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. many countries    | B. Africa and Asia  |
| C. the world            | D. most countries   |
| 2. A. fields            | B. times            |
| C. ways                 | D. methods          |
| 3. A. trees             | B. grass            |
| C. plants               | D. vegetables       |
| 4. A. mouth             | B. tusk             |
| C. nose                 | D. trunk            |
| 5. A. a path            | B. a house          |
| C. a tent               | D. known            |
| 6. A. food              | B. fruit            |
| C. water                | D. leaves           |
| 7. A. drink             | B. breathe          |
| C. eat                  | D. sleep            |
| 8. A. pleased           | B. angry            |
| C. sorry                | D. sad              |
| 9. A. teeth             | B. nose             |
| C. ear                  | D. mouth            |
| 10. A. money            | B. attention        |
| C. energy               | D. time             |
| 11. A. for              | B. by               |
| C. with                 | D. on               |
| 12. A. into             | B. up of            |
| C. with                 | D. by               |
| 13. A. catch            | B. train            |
| C. receive              | D. get              |
| 14. A. roads            | B. time             |
| C. distances            | D. trees            |
| 15. A. used             | B. didn't want      |
| C. were able            | D. had              |
| 16. A. learn            | B. work             |
| C. play                 | D. sell             |
| 17. A. presents         | B. away             |
| C. up                   | D. money            |
| 18. A. an elephant tusk | B. an elephant      |
| C. a brown elephant     | D. a white elephant |
| 19. A. rich             | B. young            |
| C. poor                 | D. old              |
| 20. A. a useless        | B. a useful         |
| C. a necessary          | D. an important     |



## (三)

No one 1 much attention to a young Swiss gentleman 2 was travelling in Italy in 1859. He was quiet and polite. In both dress and manner he had the 3 of one born to wealth and position. But something that happened in the midst of his travel 4 young Heri Dunant.

Italy and France 5 at war with Austria. Heri Dunant came upon one of their battle fields. It was Solferina, at the close of a day of 6. 7 the first time in his life, Dunant saw 8 heartless war could be. All round him 9 suffering men, wounded and left to die 10 they fell.

Heri Dunant went to work at once. 11 by several peasant women, he formed an ambulance service (救护队). He set up head quarters in a little church not far away. He made use of anyone who came along. He himself helped to bind up the wounds of Frenchmen, Italians, and Austrians alike.

Someone 12 Dunant why he cared for Italy's enemies. His answer showed a spirit of humanity that was not 13 in those days. "We are all brothers. A wounded enemy is an enemy 14."

15 his band of assistants (助手), Dunant helped to 16 many lives. Water and medicine were bought. Beds of straw (干草) were smoothed 17 the wounded could 18 in comfort. Those 19 despaired (绝望) were given hope. The last prayers of the church were said for the dying. The "gentleman in white" (as Dunant was called because he wore a white suit) was looked upon by hundreds of wounded men 20 a little angel.

- |                   |              |              |                |
|-------------------|--------------|--------------|----------------|
| 1. A. paid        | B. pay       | C. show      | D. spoke       |
| 2. A. which       | B. he        | C. who       | D. she         |
| 3. A. air         | B. form      | C. face      | D. expression  |
| 4. A. was changed | B. changed   | C. change    | D. charged     |
| 5. A. were        | B. be        | C. was       | D. are         |
| 6. A. fighting    | B. fighter   | C. fought    | D. arguing     |
| 7. A. In          | B. For       | C. At        | D. On          |
| 8. A. how         | B. what      | C. when      | D. so          |
| 9. A. lie         | B. lied      | C. lay       | D. laid        |
| 10. A. where      | B. what      | C. the place | D. how         |
| 11. A. Helping    | B. Helped    | C. To help   | D. Hold        |
| 12. A. told       | B. said to   | C. asked     | D. spoke to    |
| 13. A. common     | B. formal    | C. ordinary  | D. informal    |
| 14. A. indeed     | B. no longer | C. no less   | D. not more    |
| 15. A. With       | B. Under     | C. During    | D. In          |
| 16. A. save       | B. saved     | C. kill      | D. killed      |
| 17. A. so         | B. so that   | C. so as to  | D. in order to |
| 18. A. lie        | B. walk      | C. run       | D. travel      |
| 19. A. they       | B. who       | C. them      | D. whose       |
| 20. A. as         | B. at        | C. to        | D. was         |



## (四)

It was probably around 3, 000 years 1 that people first began making things to help them 2 the passage of time. Having 3 that shadows move around trees as the sun 4 across the sky, Someone 5 a circle and put a stick in the center. As the sun passed overhead, he marked even divisions on the circle as the shadow of the stick crossed it. Then people could 6 which part of the day it was 7 noticing which mark on the circle the shadow fell across. These circles were called “sundials” (日晷仪). Later, 8 were made of stone and metal to last longer.

Of course, a sundial did not work at night or 9 cloudy days, so men kept 10 other ways to 11 time. One invention was a striped (有条纹的) candle. Each strip took the same amount of time to melt. If each strip melted in about an hour, about three hours have 12 when 13 strips melted.

A 14 clock was another way to tell time. A container had a line with a number beside it for every hour. It also had a tiny hole in the bottom. The container was filled 15 water that dripped (滴) 16 the hole. When the water level reached the first line, people knew that an hour had passed. Each time the water level 17 to another line, one 18 hour had passed.

Candles and water clocks helped people know how much time had gone by. But candles had to be remade, and water clocks had to be 19. So after glass blowing was invented, the hour-glass came into 20.

- |                      |                   |                       |                   |
|----------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
| 1. A. ago            | B. before         | C. later              | D. old            |
| 2. A. kill           | B. enjoy          | C. measure            | D. divided        |
| 3. A. noticed        | B. seen           | C. observed           | D. looked at      |
| 4. A. move           | B. moves          | C. moved              | D. has moved      |
| 5. A. wrote          | B. drew           | C. under-lined        | D. recorded       |
| 6. A. tell           | B. told           | C. telling            | D. be told        |
| 7. A. in             | B. by             | C. at                 | D. during         |
| 8. A. it             | B. they           | C. which              | D. Those          |
| 9. A. on             | B. in             | C. with               | D. by             |
| 10. A. to invent     | B. invented       | C. inventing          | D. doing          |
| 11. A. keep track of | B. move away from | C. keep in touch with | D. keep away from |
| 12. A. passing       | B. passed         | C. been passed        | D. spent          |
| 13. A. one           | B. two            | C. three              | D. four           |
| 14. A. water         | B. wooden         | C. candle             | D. metal          |
| 15. A. of            | B. with           | C. at                 | D. in             |
| 16. A. through       | B. across         | C. though             | D. cross          |
| 17. A. rose          | B. fell           | C. rise               | D. fall           |
| 18. A. another       | B. more           | C. the                | D. such           |
| 19. A. filled        | B. remade         | C. refilled           | D. refill         |
| 20. A. power         | B. use            | C. being              | D. office         |



## 第四部分 阅读理解

### 考试要点

1. 题型特点。
2. 解题方法与技巧。

### 复习内容

#### 一、题型特点

阅读理解题型为选择题。是向考生提供四篇短文。题材包括日常生活、史地、文化、科技常识、人物传记等。每篇短文后有四五个关于短文内容的问题或不完整的句子。要求考生在仔细阅读短文之后，从每个问题或不完整的句子下面的四个选择项中，选出可以用来回答问题或补全句子的正确或最佳的一项。阅读理解是对考生理解能力的一个全面测试。

#### 二、解题方法与技巧

1. 先看问题，后读文章。具体做法如下：先看第一道题，再开始读文，直到找到其答案；停止读文，看第二道题，再接着读文，直到找到其答案；如此循环，直到读完全文。这样做比先读完全文再逐道做题要省时间，尤其当问题的先后与文章内容的顺序相吻合时，解题又快又顺手。

2. 抓住文章的第一段和每一段的第一句。一般文章的第一段是提纲挈领的关键段，每一段的第一句则大多是统领这一段的关键句。因此，开始阅读全文时，要抓住第一段的内容，这对预测和理解全文很有好处；而在阅读每一段时，要抓住其第一句，这对领会全段很重要，这样的话，全文的内容和脉络就很清楚了。

3. 抓住每个句子中的关键词。句子中的关键词主要是动词，尤其是谓语动词。抓住了谓语动词，就抓住了句子的主谓结构，也就抓住了句子的脉络。

4. 特别要注意文中的人名、年龄、时间、日期、年代、地点、数字等等。阅读时，有意留心这些地方，在下面画线，甚至特别加以记忆，待后面的阅读理解题涉及时，就可以很快作出判断。

5. 通过阅读，掌握每篇短文的主旨大意，主要事实，有关细节以及上下文的逻辑关系。在成人考试英语考题中，阅读理解能力是一个重点考察的内容，约占全题总分的30%。因此在做这一题时，要认真理解领会文章的要旨大意，通常指的是文章的主题、中心思想、作者的写作意图与目的。主要事实通常是文中所述的某个具体事实或细节，阅读中一定要思路清晰，这样在答题时就不会因为重新去文中找原文而浪费时间。至于上下文的逻辑关系，考生要特别注意文中过渡句使用的意义。

6. 既要看懂短文的字面意思，又要推论出短文的隐含意思。考生阅读理解的能力是综合



运用英语知识进行判断推理过程的能力,英语中生动的短语、动词等的恰当运用,会使文风顿然生辉。考生在理解词语的基本含义亦即字面含义以外,应根据上下文进行推断其在该文中的意思。这样才能对文章词句的理解入情入理,恰如其分。

7. 既能回答就文章的局部细节提出的问题,又能回答就文章的总体内容提出的问题。考生阅读文章时要有的放矢,针对题目要求,带着问题看每段文章,快速搜索题目要求的信息。回答就局部细节提出的问题时,要注意选项中哪一项与段落中所给的信息相对应,思慎行断,做出抉择。这类题其实就是语言表达的灵活性与多样性的具体运用。对于就文章总体内容提出的问题,则属于综合归纳、逻辑推理的题,要根据段落或文章的语篇意思加以去粗取精、去伪存真、由此及彼、由表及里地思考判断。对于就作者态度、意图提出的问题,则要注意带有意向性的启示性字眼的内涵。例如,若有 hate、criticize 等同类词,则作者持否定态度;若是暖色调词语如 praise、glad 等词,显而易见,作者持肯定态度。

### 三、注意

应试阅读理解时一定要弄清题意。切忌在未清楚题意的情况下进行选择。切勿草率答题。

#### 例题 析

Nothing was going right for Doctor Turner at the hospital. He made a mistake while operating on a patient (病人). He felt sure he was no longer trusted and decided to change his job. One day he learned from the paper that a doctor was looking for a partner (合作者). The doctor, whose name was Johnson, lived in Thorby, a small town in the north of England.

A few days later Dr Turner went to Thorby, and arrived at Dr Johnson's home early in the afternoon. Though old and a little deaf, Dr Johnson still had a good brain. He kept talking to the visitor about the town and its people. When they turned to the question of partnership, it was already seven in the evening. Dr Johnson invited Dr. Turner to have dinner with him in a restaurant before catching the train back to London. Dr Turner noticed that Dr. Johnson was fond of good food and expensive wines. They had an excellent meal. When the bill was brought, Dr Johnson felt in his pocket. "Oh, dear," he said "I've forgot my money."

"That's all right," Dr Turner said, "I'll pay the bill." As he did so, he began to wonder whether Dr. Johnson was worthy of trust.

1. Dr. Turner decided to leave his present job because \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. he had never been trusted  
B. it demanded too great skills  
C. he believed it offered little hope for his future.  
D. he thought the hospital would like him to leave.
2. The two doctors spent most of the afternoon talking about \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. things of no interest to Dr. Johnson  
B. things of no importance to Dr. Turner  
C. health matters  
D. food and drink
3. The story suggests that \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. Dr Johnson did not like Dr. Turner  
B. the two doctors would become friends



- C. the two doctors would not work together  
D. Dr. Turner decide to stay at the present job
4. The words "did so" in the last sentence mean \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. caught the train back to London  
B. felt in his pocket  
C. paid the bill  
D. said those words

#### 解析:

1. 题意: 泰勒先生决定离开现在的工作是因为\_\_\_\_\_。A 意“他从来没有受到信任”是错误的, 因为在这之前他受到院方信任而给病人动手术。B 意思是说他的工作要求技术很高, 文章中没有这个意思。D 意思是说院方想让他离开, 文章中也没有此意。而 C 意思大致与文中意思相符合。他由于手术出错, 得不到院方的信任, 加薪晋级就希望渺茫了。故应选 C。

2. 题意: 这两个医生下午都在谈论\_\_\_\_\_。

上题考查句意理解。本题考查段落大意的理解。泰勒拜访约翰逊, 是想谈论与他合作的事, 但一个下午约翰逊只顾谈论与主题无关的琐事。这些琐事当然是约翰逊感兴趣的。所以 A 排除外, CD 文章就没有提到, 故应选 B。

3. 题意: 这个故事暗示\_\_\_\_\_。

此题考查对作者意图的理解。从一个下午的谈话和就餐看, 在作者的笔下约翰逊医生是一个庸俗不堪的人, 最后用泰勒的内心活动结束全文...whether Dr. Johnson was worthy of trust (约翰逊是否值得信任) 表明泰勒不会与这样的人物合作。但不与约翰逊合作并不就是决定留在现有的工作岗位上, 因而排除 AB 和 D。正确应选 C。

4. 题意: 最后一句中 did so 的意思是\_\_\_\_\_。

此题考查常用句式的含义。句式 do (does, did) so 常用来指代上文所提到的要做的事。上文是 "I'll pay the bill" (我来付账), 因此 As he did so = As he paid the bill, 由此可以排除 AB 和 D, 正确应选 C。

### 自我测试

#### (一)

It is natural that young people are often uncomfortable when they are with their parents. They say that their parents don't understand them. They often think that their parents are out of touch with modern ways; that they are too serious and too strict with the children; and that they seldom give their children a free hand.

It is true that parents often find it difficult to win their children's trust and they tend to forget how they feel when young.

For example, young people like to act on the spot without much thinking. It is one of their ways to show that they have grown up and they can face any difficult situation. Older people worry more easily. Most of them plan things ahead at least in the back of their minds, and do not like their plans to be upset (打乱) by something unexpected.

When you want your parents to let you do something, you will have better success if you ask before you really start doing it.

Young people often make their parents angry with their choices in clothes, in entertainment and in music. But they do not mean to cause any trouble. It is just that they feel cut off



from the older people's world, into which they have not yet been accepted. That is why young people want to make a new culture of their own. And if their parents do not like their music or entertainment or clothes or their way of speech, this will make the young people extremely happy.

Sometimes you are so proud of yourself that you don't want your parents to say "yes" to what you do. All you want is to be left alone and do what you like. It is natural enough, after being a child for so many years, when you are completely under your parents' control.

If you plan to control your life, you had better win your parents over and try to get them to understand you. If your parents see that you have a high sense of responsibility (责任), they will certainly give you the right to do what you want to do.

1. This article is particularly written for \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. parents  
B. both parents and their children  
C. young people  
D. teachers
2. According to the passage, young people tend to \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. do things without thinking carefully ahead  
B. ask for advice before they really begin to do anything  
C. be very strict with themselves  
D. think that their parents are always correct
3. Older people tend to \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. act on the spot without thinking very carefully  
B. plan things before they act  
C. seldom worry about something  
D. remember how they themselves felt when they were young
4. According to the text, young people want to make a new culture of their own, because \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. They want to show they have grown up  
B. They think they are cleverer than the older people  
C. They don't feel they belong to the world of the older people  
D. They want to show respect to the older people
5. If a young man plans to control his own life, it is better for him to \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. do everything according to his own wish  
B. do everything under his parents' permission  
C. do everything with a high sense of responsibility  
D. do everything carelessly

## (二)

Australia, the last continent, was discovered by ships belonging to some European nations in the seventeenth century. These nations were less interested in changing it into a colony than in exploring (勘探) it. As in the early history of the United States, it was the English who set up the settlements (新拓居地) in Australia. This history and the geography of these two British colonies have some other things in common as well.

Australia and the United States are about the same in size, and their western lands are both not rich in soil. It was the eastern coast of Australia and America that the English first



settled, and both colonies soon began to develop towards the west. However, this westward movement took place more because the English were searching for better land than because the population was increasing. Settlements of the western part of both countries developed quickly after gold was discovered in America in 1849 and in Australia two years later.

Although the development of these two countries has a lot in common, there are some striking differences as well. The United States gained its independence from England by revolution while Australia won its independence without having to go to war. Australia, unlike the United States, was firstly turned into a colony by English prisoners and its economic development was in wheat growing and sheep raising. By 1992, for example, Australia had fifteen times more sheep than it had people, or almost half as many sheep as there are people today in the United States. Yet, in spite of these and other main differences, Australia and the United States have more in common with each other than either one has with most of the rest of the world.

1. Who turned Australia into a colony?
  - A. Several European nations.
  - B. British government.
  - C. The United States of America.
  - D. British prisoners.
2. In the early history of America and Australia, both colonies developed towards the west firstly for the reason that \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. the population was increasing rapidly in the east
  - B. gold was discovered there
  - C. fewer people lived there
  - D. the land there is richer than that in the east
3. When was gold discovered in the west of Australia?
  - A. in 1849.
  - B. by 1992.
  - C. in 1851.
  - D. in 1847.
4. Australia, unlike the United States, \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. won its independence by peaceful means
  - B. didn't discover gold until the late 1840s
  - C. was not rich in gold in its western part
  - D. was the last and biggest continent to be discovered
5. The last sentence in the last paragraph "... Australia and the United States have more in common with each other than either one has with most of the rest of the world" means \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. The United States and Australia have much more in common than they have with other countries
  - B. Australia and the United States do not have any main differences
  - C. The United States and Australia have nothing in common with the rest of the world
  - D. In common with the rest of the world, the United States and Australia have a lot of differences



## (三)

Macao is only forty miles from Hong Kong and it is easy to reach. You can get there by sea. It is an interesting place and it has a long history. Macao is part of China and most people living there are Chinese.

The first Europeans to go to Macao came from Portugal. More than four hundred years ago the Portuguese went there to trade with China. Some settled and made their homes there. They built strong forts (城堡) to guard the city and the harbour (港口). They also built churches, schools, hospitals and other places. Slowly the city grew. People from many countries came to live and work in Macao.

Today many people visit Macao. Some only go there to watch dog-racing or motor-racing or to gamble (赌博) with their money. But Macao is a quiet and peaceful place. It is pleasant just to walk around and look at the old buildings and forts. You feel you are back in the old days. Of course, some of the buildings are now in ruins (废墟). The church of St. Paul has only the front wall with many steps leading up to it. But it is still interesting to see.

When you are hot and tired, there are small cool gardens to rest in. When you are hungry, there are good restaurants with many kinds of food. Nearby are some islands, which are also nice to visit and are easy to get to. There is certainly a lot to see and to do in Macao.

1. Macao is easy to get to because \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. it is part of China and most people there are Chinese
  - B. it is an interesting place
  - C. it is very fast and cheap by sea
  - D. it is not far away from Hong Kong
2. Which of the following is Not True?
  - A. People there set up strong forts to defend the city.
  - B. Some Portuguese settled in Macao, and made their homes nearly a century ago.
  - C. The city Macao grew slowly.
  - D. Portuguese were the first to go to Macao.
3. You feel in Macao you are back in the old days because \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. some of the buildings are now in ruins
  - B. you can watch dog-racing or motor-racing
  - C. you go about and look at the old buildings and forts with pleasure
  - D. it is a peaceful place
4. Where will you have a rest when you feel worn out?
  - A. In good restaurants.
  - B. In small cool gardens.
  - C. On some islands.
  - D. On the beach.
5. The writer's idea seems to be that \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. people from other countries came to live and work in Macao
  - B. Portuguese were unwilling to do business in China
  - C. good foods are served in Macao
  - D. Macao is a quiet and interesting place with a lot to see and to do



## (四)

New Zealand is made up of two large islands and some small islands. Its two large islands, the North Island and the South Island, are separated by "Cook Strait".

Its position in the belt (带子) of westerly winds gives New Zealand a climate (气候) similar to that of the northwestern coast of North America. Summers are mild. Winters are cool and rather stormy. Temperatures do not often fall below freezing in the lowlands. The pastures (牧场) stay green all year, and people spend much time outdoors. The uplands of both main islands have permanent (永远的) snow fields, providing fine ski areas. The greatest rainfall occurs (发生) on the South Island. More than 7,600 millimeters fall in Fiordland each year. Farms are irrigated (灌溉) in summer.

New Zealand has several large cities of more than 100,000 people, and a number of other cities each have more than 25,000 people. Wellington, the Capital of New Zealand, stands on hills surrounding Port Nicholson at the south end of the North Island. Cable cars run from the business district up to Victoria University. More people live in Wellington's nearby suburbs than in the city. Auckland is the largest port city in New Zealand. The city has two harbors, Waitemata on the Pacific side and Manukall on the Tasman Sea. Besides, there are three other cities on the North Island.

The largest city on the South Island is Christchurch. The city's parks and gardens remind many visitors of England. Christchurch is known for a large number of bicycles used by its residents (居民). Rail and automobile connect Christchurch to its port at Lyttelton. Lyttelton handles (处理) exports (出口产品) of wool and frozen meat and receives shipments of machinery and other manufactured (生产的) goods.

1. New Zealand is made up of \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. many islands  
B. two islands  
C. two large islands and some small islands  
D. many uplands and lowlands
2. New Zealand has a climate which is \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. similar to that of North America.  
B. stormy in summer.  
C. mild in summer, cool and stormy in winter.  
D. cold all year round.
3. Which of the following is New Zealand's capital city?  
A. Auckland  
B. Christchurch  
C. Wellington  
D. Waitemata
4. Which of the following is Not True?  
A. Christchurch is the largest city on the South Island.  
B. Auckland has two harbours.  
C. There are three cities on the North Island including the Capital city Welliongton.  
D. The parks of the city are similar to those of England.



5. The title of the passage should be \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. New Zealand                      B. Cities of New Zealand  
C. Climate of New Zealand          D. An island country

(五)

A recent discovery by scientists at the U. S. Geological Survey (地质研究) shows that animal's strange behaviour (行为) might help forecast (预测) the earthquake to come. Scientists found such proves in a ten kilometers radius (半径) of the center of a fairly recent quake. Some birds called and flew about wildly; dogs barked (狂吠) and ran around uncontrollably.

Scientists believe that animals can sense (感觉) these environmental (环境的) changes as early as several days before the quake.

The Chinese were able to forecast a terrible quake in 1976 after observing animal behaviour. Although hundreds of thousands of people were killed, the government was able to evacuate millions of people and thus keep the death rate (比率) at a lower level.

- By observing animals' behaviour, what can we know?  
A. An earthquake is about to happen.  
B. Some changes have appeared in the surrounding (周围环境).  
C. Many animals will die.  
D. Many people will die.
- Animals can sense these changes because \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. animals are cleverer than the Human  
B. animals have certain instincts (本能) that the Human don't have  
C. the Human don't know where to find the quake  
D. they can feel the changes by running around the house
- The word "evacuate" in the last sentence most probably means \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. remove                      B. leave                      C. destroy                      D. punish
- Which of the following is Not true?  
A. Some animals may be able to sense a coming earthquake.  
B. Scientists perhaps can forecast earthquakes by observing animal behaviour.  
C. All birds and dogs in a ten kilometers radius of the centre went wild before the quake.  
D. The Chinese have forecasted an earthquake in time and saved many people's lives.



## 第五部分 补全对话

### 考试要点

1. 题型测试目标。
2. 题型特点。
3. 考查重点。
4. 考查对策。
5. 解题方法。

### 复习内容

#### 一、题型测试目标

“补全对话”试题是英语成考的一项考查内容，它标志着成考命题对考生交际能力提出了更高的要求。此题设置的目的在于考查学生所具有的在一定语言环境中把语言知识转化为语言技能，并使这种技能发展为语言的交际和语言的衔接能力。该题型能最大限度地增强学生的语感，既能提高学生用英语进行口语交际的能力，又是提高学生阅读理解能力的一个好题型。所以考生必须认真研究“补全对话”这个题的解题方法，力求提高应试能力。

#### 二、题型特点

补全对话题型为自由应答题。本题向考生提供一段不完整的对话，对话不长，共有十来句，对话中只有一个人的讲话而缺少另一个人的讲话的全部或一部分。对话中留出五个空句，这五个空句是整个句子，标点符号原文已给出。这些句子与上下文有密切关系，可以从上下文提供的信息推测出来。要求考生在通读对话全文，充分理解谈话内容和谈话者意图的基础上，根据试题说明中交代的背景和情节，把缺少的部分补写出来，使对话意思通顺，前后连贯，同时符合英美人口头交际习惯。

#### 三、考查重点

- (一) 考查考生对整段话的理解。
- (二) 重点考查学生对整段对话上下文之间逻辑关系的理解。
- (三) 考查学生的英语交际能力。

#### 四、考查对策

- (一) 考生要掌握对话的主旨、大意、中心内容。
- (二) 考生着重理解对话的上下文之间的逻辑关系。
- (三) 要注意对话所处的情境：在什么时候，对什么人讲话，谈什么内容。
- (四) 既要理解对话中的表面意思，也要理解其深层含义，包括谈话双方的态度、意图等。
- (五) 根据对话中提供的信息，结合生活中和学习中的常识进行推理和判断。



(六) 考生除应掌握必要的词汇、语法知识外, 还要熟悉英语中有关日常生活的某些表达方式, 例如: 问候、告别、介绍、感谢、道歉、邀请、提议、命令、请求、愿意不愿意、同意不同意等。

## 五、解题方法

### (一) 略读全文, 把握大意。

考生在做题时, 首先应略读全文, 了解 A、B 双方在谈论什么。对话双方总是围绕某一话题, 各抒己见, 或赞同或反对, 有问有答, 一来一往。考生在弄清谈话的主要内容后, 在头脑中形成整个对话的语篇框架, 为下一步推理奠定基础。切忌不通读全文就拿起题目边看边做, 这样, 势必脱离语境, 造成理解偏差, 导致答题不当。

### (二) 综合考虑, 补写答案。

A、B 双方对话过程是思想交流的过程, 在解答补全对话题时, 至关重要的是要把握对话双方在谈话时的思想发展过程及其表现形式。掌握对话的开始与结尾很重要, 而对话中间则是思想交流的高潮发展过程。在对答过程中要掌握深层次语义的连贯, 就是要注意上下句的有机接合, 根据短文空缺处的行文需要, 联系相关的交际要点, 特别要注意说英语国家的文化习俗、表达方式、不同的场合所使用的日常用语, 从语义、语感、语境、行文逻辑, 承上启下, 综合考虑, 将自己认为最合适的句子填写在空白处, 使整个对话语意通畅, 合乎情理。

### (三) 重读对话, 调整答案。

做完题后, 完整地将对话连同答案认真重读一遍, 根据文意、逻辑关系、习惯表达、语境, 检查所填答案是否准确地表达对话者的思想情感, 主题思想是否明确, 对话发展过程是否合乎情理, 全文是否完成了对话者的表达意图。发现错误, 及时纠正。

## 例题解析

根据中文提示, 将对话中缺少的内容写在线上。这些句子必须符合英语表达习惯。打句号的地方, 用陈述句; 打问号的地方, 用疑问句。

**例 1.** 提示: 星期五晚上有音乐会, Chris 得到两张票, 打电话给 Linda, 问她是否有空一同前往, 并约她音乐会后一道吃饭。Linda 听了非常高兴, 俩人相约六点四十五分在入口处见面。

Linda : Hello! This is Linda speaking.

Chris : Hello, Linda, this is Chris. \_\_\_\_\_ 1 \_\_\_\_\_ this Friday evening?

Linda : Yes, why?

Chris : There's a good concert, and I've got two tickets. I wonder \_\_\_\_\_ 2 \_\_\_\_\_.

Linda : That's great! \_\_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_\_?

Chris : 7'o clock. But how about \_\_\_\_\_ 4 \_\_\_\_\_ at 6 : 45? Linda : OK. I think I can make it.

Chris : After the concert, \_\_\_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_\_\_, shall we?

Linda : Wonderful! Why don't we go to a Chinese restaurant?

Chris : Why not? OK, see you Friday.

Linda : See you then. Bye!

**解析:** 根据提示, Chris 打电话给 Linda 约她一起去听音乐会, 并且音乐会后一起吃饭, 依照这个框架, 将对话中缺少的内容逐一写在线上。



1. 根据下文“星期五晚上有音乐会”可以推断 Chris 询问 Linda 是否有空。答案为 Are you free/Do you have time.

2. 上文 Linda 回答说“有空”，下文 Linda 流露出非常高兴的情绪，可推断 Chris 询问 Linda 是否愿意和他一同前往。答案为 if you can go (to the concert) with me.

3. 下文答语“7 o'clock”表明上文询问时间，答案为：What time (/when) does it start (/begin)

4. 由 7 o'clock 与“at 6:45”可知两人相约碰头的地方。答案为：meeting at the entrance.

5. 下文“Wonderful! Why don't we go to a Chinese restaurant?”表明 Chris 邀请 Linda 一道吃饭。答案为：we'll go to a restaurant for supper/ we'll eat at a restaurant/ we'll have supper in a restaurant.

**例 2.** 提示：John 和 Fred 相约课后去看电影或看戏等，Fred 未能按时到达，John 询问 Fred 迟到原因，原来是 Fred 的数学老师拖堂了。

John: Oh, hi, Fred! 1. Why are you so late?

Fred: 2. She always keeps us in class until ten past ten.

John: Doesn't she know that you are supposed to get out at ten?

Fred: 3. But she never looks at her watch. She just keeps talking.

John: Don't the students complain (抱怨) about it? 4.

Fred: No. 5.

John: Well, you could try and talk to her.

Fred: Maybe.

**解析：**1. 根据下文“Why are you so late?”可以推断出说话人流露出不满情绪。“我不知道是否给你留座位”与下文“你为什么这么晚才来？”语气相呼应。答案为：I didn't know whether to save you a place or not.

2. 下文“She always keeps us in class until ten past ten.”(她总是把我们留在班上一直到 10 点 10 分)可推断上文为“是我们的数学老师”。答案为：It's our maths teacher.

3. 由后面的 But 可以判断出此句与后一句是对立的。再由上文“Doesn't she know that you are supposed to get out at ten?”这个问句可推断出下文是回答这个问题的，而对老师的推测语气不能太生硬。因此，“我猜想她知道，可她从不看表，一直谈着”，符合这里的情景。答案为：I guess so.

4. 上文说“学生们不抱怨吗？”下文表明 John 本人的看法。下文“well, you could try and talk to her”可推断上文 John 的看法为：我想说点什么(我可能会说点什么了)。答案为：I would say something.

5. 由 No 这一信息可知道，大家对老师拖堂没有抱怨，进一步可推断同学们出于礼貌而没有抱怨。这里有无礼貌最适合此时的场景。答案为：Everybody is too polite/They are too polite.

## 自我测试

根据中文提示，将对话中缺少的内容写在线上。这些句子必须符合英语表达习惯。打句号



的地方，用陈述句；打问号的地方，用疑问句。

(一) 提示：这是售货员 A 与顾客 B 关于购物的一段对话。

A : \_\_\_\_\_ 1 \_\_\_\_\_ ?

B : I'm going to buy a coat.

A : \_\_\_\_\_ 2 \_\_\_\_\_ ?

B : I'd like a green one, please.

A : \_\_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_\_ .

B : May I try it on?

A : Of course.

B : Oh this fits me perfectly, I think \_\_\_\_\_ 4 \_\_\_\_\_ . What does it cost?

A : Two hundred yuan.

(Giving him two hundred yuan)

B : \_\_\_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_\_\_ .

A : Thank you.

(二) 提示：A 是新来的，向 B 打听图书馆在哪里，B 刚好要去图书馆，非常乐意与 A 共同前往。A 对 B 表示感谢。

A : \_\_\_\_\_ 1 \_\_\_\_\_ . I wonder if you could tell me where the library is?

B : Well, I'm on my way there. \_\_\_\_\_ 2 \_\_\_\_\_ ?

A : \_\_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_\_ .

B : You are now there, aren't you?

A : Yes, I am. By the way, how many reading rooms are there?

B : Two. One is for teachers, the other for students.

A : Does the library have many newspapers?

B : Yes, it has both national and local newspapers. \_\_\_\_\_ 4 \_\_\_\_\_ .

A : Thank you for all your help.

B : \_\_\_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_\_\_ . Nice to have met you. See you!

(三) 提示：晚上有电影，Mary 得到两张票，打电话给 Allen，问她是否有空一同前往。Allen 因明天有考试，没有时间去，她告诉 Mary 如何去电影院。

Allen: Hello!

Mary: Hello! \_\_\_\_\_ 1 \_\_\_\_\_ ?

Allen: Yes, this is Allen speaking. Who's that?

Mary: This is Mary. Allen, what are you doing now?

Allen: \_\_\_\_\_ 2 \_\_\_\_\_ . I'll have a test tomorrow.

Mary: Would you like to go to see an English film this evening? I have two tickets.

Allen: Sorry, I have no time.

Mary: Never mind, by the way, \_\_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_\_ ?

Allen: Yes, Go down the East street, and then turn left at the second crossing. At the end of the road, you'll find the cinema.

Mary: \_\_\_\_\_ 4 \_\_\_\_\_ ?

Allen: No, it's about a quarter's walk.

Mary: Thank you. See you next week!

Allen: \_\_\_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_\_\_ !



## 第六部分 书面表达

### 考试要点

1. 题型特点。
2. 解题方法和技巧。

### 复习内容

#### 一、题型特点

成人高考试卷中的“书面表达”题是考查考生运用所学到的知识和所掌握的技能来表达思想的书面语言表达能力的试题。要求考生根据所给情景（而非随意）用英语写一篇 100 个单词左右的短文。情景包括目的、对象、时间、地点、内容等，要按要求体裁来进行写作。本题满分为 30 分，所需时间为 40 分钟左右。

#### 二、解题方法和技巧

解答“书面表达”试题，首先要求考生必须具有一定的语言表达能力，还需要通过大量的写作实践来提高水平。写作前，要认真阅读题前的中文提示。写作时，开头一定要明了，以便一开篇就打动阅卷人；文章的主体要紧紧围绕主题展开，行文自然流畅；结尾要有力，且首尾照应，令人回味。特别要注意以下几点：一、不要漏掉所给的内容要点；二、符合英语表达习惯；三、不要将所给的内容逐项翻译，而要行文自然流畅；四、要注意卷面整洁，不要乱改，书写要工整，以免因印象不佳而失分。

“书面表达”从体裁讲，可分为：记叙文、说明文、应用文等。

##### 1. 记叙文

即记录和叙述人物或事情，如：人物介绍、故事、报道、日记等。记叙文具有以下六大要素：时间、地点、人物、事件、原因、结果。记叙文写作要注意叙述的时间着眼点：叙述过去的人和事要以一般过去时为基点，之前的用过去完成时，之后的用过去将来时；叙述现在的人和事要以一般现在时为基点，之前的用一般过去时或现在完成时，之后的用一般将来时。

例：写一篇记叙文：学生们参观一个山村，看了庄稼、羊和蔬菜，进行了野餐，还拜访了农家。

注意：(1) 所提供的要点不要遗漏，但不可逐字翻译。

(2) 词数为 100 左右。

参考范文：

Last Saturday our class went to visit a small village. It was located in beautiful mountains. The villagers gave us a warm welcome. An old man showed us around. They planted many apple trees outside the village. And the old man picked some apples and gave one to each of us. They tasted delicious. We saw a lot of sheep on the hillsides, too. There were crops and vege-



tables growing everywhere. At noon we had a picnic lunch. Then we visited some of the villagers' houses and had a happy talk with them. Soon it was time for us to say goodbye to the farmers. We had a good time that day.

## 2. 说明文

即介绍事物或人物（情况、简历、特征等），解释事理，具有知识性，文字简洁明了。说明文通常以一般现在时为基点，并且多用一般现在时。

例：你的外国朋友 Jackson 写信问你有关我国的体育运动，你写回信给他做介绍，内容如下：

- (1) 对运动的认识：运动很重要，是保健的最好方式，很普及。
- (2) ①老年人早晨练太极。  
②中年人晚上跳舞。  
③青年人游泳、滑冰等。
- (3) 最普遍的运动是乒乓球，其他有篮球、排球、足球、羽毛球等。

参考范文：

Jan. 20, 2005

Dear Jackson,

You asked about sports in China in your letter. Now I'll tell you about it.

Sports are very popular in China. Almost all the people have realized that sports are very important as taking parts in sports is the best way of keeping healthy.

People in cities play a lot of sports. Old people get up early in the morning and practise shadow boxing in parks. A lot of middle-aged people dance together in squares in the evening. Young people go swimming in summer and skating in winter.

Table tennis is very popular in China. People play table tennis everywhere. There are other popular sports, such as basketball, volleyball, football and badminton.

What about sports in your country?

Yours,  
LiLi

## 3. 应用文

应用文是日常生活中使用的一种应用文体，包括书信、日记、通知、便条、请柬、电报等。应用文文字简洁，具有一定的格式，写作时要特别注意。

(1) 信件格式：

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |  |                                                    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|----------------------------------------------------|
| <p>Receiver's Address (收信人地址)</p> <p>Solution: (称呼)</p> <p>Letter</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Body (正文)</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Complementary Closing (结束语)</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Signature (签名)</p> |  | <p>Sender's Address<br/>发信人地址</p> <p>Date (日期)</p> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|----------------------------------------------------|

(2) 日记格式：左上角写具体日期，星期几，右上角写明天气状况。正文是一般文章的格式。句子一般用一般过去式。

|                                                                        |              |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| <p>21st June, 2003, Saturday</p> <p style="text-align: center;">正文</p> | <p>Sunny</p> |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|



(3) 通知: 分为口头通知和书面通知。书面通知(布告)的格式为标题(如 NOTICE 或 ANNOUNCEMENT) 每个字母都大写以便醒目; 发布单位通常放在正文后面的右下方, 也可放在标题上面; 发布日期通常放在正文后面的左下方。

### 例题解析

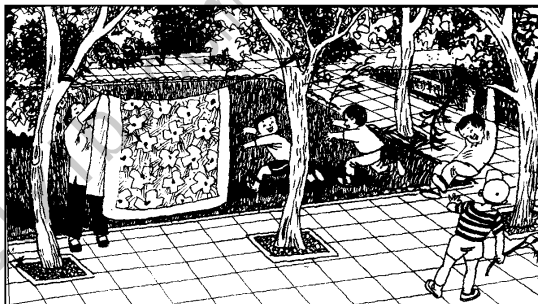
#### 例 1

假设你是中学生汪林, 看到图中的现象, 写信给报社编辑, 发表看法, 提出建议。

注意: ①图示内容应全部包含, 还可适当补充细节;

②观点积极、正确;

③地址可自己编, 词数 100 左右。



### 参考范文

No. 4-205, Hot Spring Apartment Building  
Tianshang Road, 563259

May 25, 2001

P. O. Box 3042  
Binhai Daily

Dear Editor,

I'm a middle school student named Wang Lin. I live in a very beautiful neighborhood. On both sides of the streets there are young trees planted this spring and nice lawns.

To my surprise, some people hang their quilts on lines tied between trees, which bend down under the heavy burdens. Other people, especially children, often hang themselves from the branches to strengthen their arms. I also see people break branches off the trees. Many people even walk across the lawns though there are signs: "Keep off the grass". I feel very sorry for the trees, lawns and those people. I think the local government should take measures to stop the bad behaviour.

Best regards,

Yours honestly,  
Wang Lin

#### 例 2

原定周六下午要召开的班会推迟召开, 改为举行英语讲座 (lecture)。  
请根据要求写一个字数为 100 字左右的通知。

1. 时间: 周六下午 2 点。

2. 地点: 本班教室。



3. 讲演人：Thomas 教授。
4. 内容：“如何学好英语口语”。

## 参考范文

Boys and Girls,

The meeting which will be held on Saturday afternoon will be put off. Instead, we shall have an English lecture at two o'clock on Saturday afternoon. The lecture, which will be given by Professor Thomas, will be held in our classroom. The title is "How to Learn Spoken English Well." You may take notes while listening to the lecture. Please get everything ready and be in the classroom on time. That's all. Thank you very much.

### 例 3

请根据下列图画内容写一篇 100 字左右的短文。

参考词汇：

1. 动作粗暴 play rough
2. 赔偿损失 pay for the damage

## 参考范文

One day, three boys were playing football in front of an apartment building. They were playing so rough that one of the boys kicked the ball against a glass window. The glass was broken. Seeing this, the boys ran away, fearing to be scolded. After Xiao Dong, the boy who kicked the ball against the window, got home, he began to think and soon regretted for what he had done. At dinner he told his mother about it. His mother encouraged him to go and say sorry. So after dinner, he went to pay for the damage.



### 自我测试

一、根据下列要求写一篇通知。

1. 事由：欢迎美国学生来我校参观。
2. 时间：2003 年 6 月 22 日下午 9:00 至 13:00。
3. 人数：约 35 人。
4. 具体安排：

| 时间          | 地点               | 事项        |
|-------------|------------------|-----------|
| 8:40        | 校门口              | 集合欢迎队     |
| 9:00—10:30  | 接待室              | 开欢迎会，互赠礼物 |
| 10:30—11:30 | 校园、图书馆、实验室和语言实验室 | 参观        |
| 11:30       | 学生食堂             | 午餐        |
| 13:00       | 校门口              | 送别        |

二、根据要求写一篇日记，字数 100 字左右。

1. 时间：2000 年 6 月 15 日，星期六，雨天。



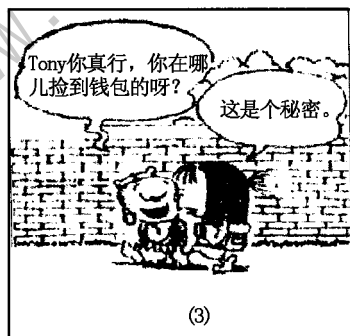
2. 班级下午开了一个班会, 因为美籍教师 John 执教一年后要回国了。
3. John 先生为人诚恳热心, 助人为乐, 课上得学, 他的课生动有趣。
4. 他对你学习英语的帮助及你取得的成绩。

三、下列图画描述的是关于 Tony 的一个小故事。请以此写一篇 100 词左右的短文。

生词: 热烈鼓掌 applaud loudly

注: (1) 短文必须包括图画所表现的主要内容。不必按图示翻译, 可以适当增加细节, 使其逻辑一致, 连贯完整。

(2) 适当加上自己的观点或评论。





### 全国各类成人高等学校招生考试教材——高中起点升本、专科

| 序 号 | 书 名              | 开 本  | 定 价   |
|-----|------------------|------|-------|
| 1   | 语文               | 16 开 | 38.00 |
| 2   | 英语               | 16 开 | 39.00 |
| 3   | 数学（文史财经类）        | 16 开 | 35.00 |
| 4   | 数学（理工农医类）        | 16 开 | 38.00 |
| 5   | 史地综合             | 16 开 | 39.00 |
| 6   | 文科合订本 [语、数（文）、英] | 16 开 | 62.00 |
| 7   | 理科合订本 [语、数（理）、英] | 16 开 | 65.00 |

### 全国各类成人高等学校招生考试教材——专科升本科

| 序 号 | 书 名     | 开 本  | 定 价   |
|-----|---------|------|-------|
| 1   | 政治      | 16 开 | 36.00 |
| 2   | 英语      | 16 开 | 38.00 |
| 3   | 大学语文    | 16 开 | 38.00 |
| 4   | 教育理论    | 16 开 | 35.00 |
| 5   | 高等数学（一） | 16 开 | 33.00 |
| 6   | 高等数学（二） | 16 开 | 30.00 |
| 7   | 医学综合    | 16 开 | 45.00 |

### 全国各类成人高等学校招生考试全真模拟试卷——高中起点升本、专科

| 序 号 | 书 名              | 开 本  | 定 价        |
|-----|------------------|------|------------|
| 1   | 语文               | 16 开 | 16.00      |
| 2   | 英语               | 16 开 | 20.00      |
| 3   | 数学（文史财经类）        | 16 开 | 15.00      |
| 4   | 数学（理工农医类）        | 16 开 | 15.00      |
| 5   | 文科合订本 [语、数（文）、英] | 16 开 | 58.00（全两册） |
| 6   | 理科合订本 [语、数（理）、英] | 16 开 | 58.00（全两册） |

### 全国各类成人高等学校招生考试全真模拟试卷——专科升本科

| 序 号 | 书 名     | 开 本  | 定 价   |
|-----|---------|------|-------|
| 1   | 政治      | 16 开 | 16.00 |
| 2   | 英语      | 16 开 | 18.00 |
| 3   | 大学语文    | 16 开 | 18.00 |
| 4   | 教育理论    | 16 开 | 20.00 |
| 5   | 高等数学（一） | 16 开 | 15.00 |
| 6   | 高等数学（二） | 16 开 | 15.00 |
| 7   | 医学综合    | 16 开 | 22.00 |